The Elsevier DTD 5 Family of XML DTDs
Tag by Tag

The Elsevier DTD 5 Family of XML DTDs

Content and Data Architecture, Elsevier B.V.

Version 1.9.7.2

August 22, 2019
Correspondence to:
Jos Migchielsen
Elsevier
Radarweg 29
1043 NX Amsterdam
Netherlands
Email: j.migchielsen@elsevier.com

The Tag by Tag was created by Elsevier’s DTD Development & Maintenance Team, the team responsible for development, maintenance and support of the Elsevier DTDs and XML schemas. Former members of the team have contributed to the current documentation. Comments about the DTDs and their documentation, as well as change requests, can be sent to the above-mentioned address. Change requests will be considered for implementation in a future DTD.

The Journal Article, Serials Issue, Book and Enhancement Fragment DTDs described in the current documentation are open access material under the CC BY license (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

The Elsevier DTDs, schemas, and a fully clickable PDF file of this documentation are available via http://www.elsevier.com/locate/xml.

Elsevier, a Reed Elsevier company, is an integral partner with the scientific, technical and health communities, delivering superior information products and services that foster communication, build insights, and enable individual and collective advancement in scientific research and health care.

http://www.elsevier.com

© 2003–2019 Elsevier B.V. All rights reserved. This document may be reproduced and distributed in whole or in part in any medium, physical or electronic, so long as this copyright notice remains intact and unchanged on all copies. It may not be redistributed, wholly or in part, under terms more restrictive than those under which it has been received.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, neither the authors nor Elsevier assume responsibility for errors or omissions.

Many of the designations used by the manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the authors were aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been marked.

This document was typeset using pdfTeX and the MiKTeX2.9 distribution.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong></td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong></td>
<td>Technical aspects</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The setup of the DTD family</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The XML file</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entities and the DOCTYPE declaration</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An XML file's DTD version and catalogs</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Namespaces in the XML file</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elsevier’s additional glyphs</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strip-in images</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong></td>
<td>Journal Article DTD</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PITs: Journal article publication item types</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4</strong></td>
<td>Serial Issue DTD</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5</strong></td>
<td>Book DTD</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PITs: Book publication item types</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6</strong></td>
<td>Enhancement Fragment DTD</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7</strong></td>
<td>The Common Element Pool</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Versions of the common element pool</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cross-references and the ce:label element</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text effects</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter entities</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ISO 639 list of language codes</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Views</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8</strong></td>
<td>The Elements of the CEP</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alphabetical listing of all elements</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9</strong></td>
<td>Structured affiliations</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10</strong></td>
<td>Structured bibliographic references</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bibliographic references — Examples</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alphabetical listing of all elements</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11</strong></td>
<td>MathML</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Usage of MathML elements and attributes</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12</strong></td>
<td>(Extended) CALS tables</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CALS tables — Examples</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CALS table elements</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ornament types and styles</td>
<td>555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>How to read the DTD</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1

Introduction

This is the documentation of the family of Elsevier’s DTD 5 family of XML DTDs. This family is centred around the common element pool (CEP). In this version of the documentation, the following members of the family are described:

- the journal article (JA) DTD versions 5.0.1, 5.0.2, 5.1.0, 5.2.0, 5.4.0 and 5.5.0;
- the serials issue (SI) DTD versions 5.1.0, 5.2.0, 5.4.0 and 5.5.0;
- the EHS Book DTD versions 5.1.0 and 5.1.1;
- the Elsevier Book DTD versions 5.2.0, 5.2.1, 5.3.0, 5.3.1, 5.4.0 and 5.5.0;
- the Enhancement Fragment DTD 5.0.0;
- the common element pool (CEP) versions 1.1.0–1.1.6, 1.2.0, 1.4.0 and 1.5.0.

Historical remarks

Elsevier has a long tradition of using SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language) for its products. In the 1980s, the CAPCAS DTD (Document Type Definition) was created to capture article frontmatters. In 1992, the first DTD for full-length scientific articles was developed [2].

CAP (Computer-Aided Production) started as a project in the 1990s, and is now the regular production method for Elsevier’s more than 2000 STM (science, technology and medical) journals and an increasing number of books, including all major reference works and book series. The consequence of CAP is that journal articles and book chapters are produced as full-text XML, and XML drives both the printed journals and books as well as the online versions on Elsevier platforms such as ScienceDirect (http://www.sciencedirect.com), Clinical Key (https://www.clinicalkey.com/) and MDConsult (http://www.mdconsult.com), as well as many other platforms. Abstracts are extracted from the XML and find their way to destinations such as Scopus (http://www.scopus.com) and PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov).

Large-scale implementation of the “SGML-first workflow” began with the release of the full-length article DTD 3.0 in November 1995 and continued with the implementation of DTD 4.1, released in November 1997. Updates followed in February 2000 (DTD 4.2) and January and March 2001 (DTD 4.3). As from June 2005, SGML for journal articles was replaced by XML.

The DTDs 4.1–4.3 were described in the previous edition of the Tag by Tag [5].

DTD 5.0

The next generation of DTDs are XML DTDs. These were developed in 2001 and 2002. The business reasons for developing a new family of DTDs were as follows.
Chapter 1 – Introduction

- The DTDs should cover all types of content, not just journal articles, but also book content, secondary publishing content, etc. They should be accompanied by new transport formats in the form of W3C schemas.
- The DTDs should be in XML.
- The DTDs should adopt Unicode. Unicode has become the standard for character sets. In the STIX project, Elsevier participated in order to ensure that the characters in the Elsevier Grid were represented in Unicode, although the chemical symbols were left out.
- The DTDs should incorporate MathML. The previous DTDs possessed their own, bespoke fragment for mathematical formulae. Some modifications were needed.
- The DTDs should incorporate CALS tables. CALS tables are widely used in other DTDs and software components for it are available. We have chosen the OASIS Exchange Format, and “extended CALS” tables had to be developed so that all tables occurring in STM articles can be captured.
- The DTDs should follow other XML standards. Where possible, and deemed useful, we have adopted the XLink standard, and we have used standard attribute names such as xml:lang.
- The DTDs should be more restrictive (in other words, more precise). The DTD has traditionally been very loose, meaning that it allowed constructs such as tables within footnotes within the first name of an author. Such constructs were prevented by semantic rules, enforced by the SGML quality control tools.

Adopting common international standards has not been without problems. Unicode contains a wealth of symbols, but at the time of introduction of the DTD, it lacked a number of symbols such as the chemical symbols present in the Elsevier Grid. MathML does not allow any parametrization. In particular, text portions appearing in displayed formulae cannot be structured — they must be plain characters. CALS tables turned out to be too poor for all varieties of tables encountered in scientific articles. Our desire to retain an “SGML/XML-First” workflow, i.e., a workflow in which the SGML/XML file is used to create all the products, be it print or electronic (see below), necessitated the introduction of table extensions. The fact that the CALS table model has no provision for namespaces complicated matters. In all these cases we were forced to modify the standards, with the risk of losing the benefits of adopting those standards.

The name “full-length article DTD” has been replaced by the more accurate name “journal article DTD”.

In order to maintain a consistent set of XML DTDs, the concept of a common element pool was introduced, described in more detail later. The individual DTDs make use of this pool.

Additionally, a distinction is made between input and output DTDs, where “input” and “output” relate to Elsevier’s Electronic Warehouse. The input DTD is geared towards supplying XML documents, whereas the output DTD facilitates rendering using stylesheets — the latter features, for instance, information about height and width of figures.

The project to create and implement the DTD 5 family of DTDs was called “Hawaii 5.0”.

How to read this documentation

This documentation is not intended as an introduction into XML. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with XML terminology, and can read XML fragments.

This documentation alone is not sufficient to describe electronic deliveries to and from Elsevier. It should be read together with
Chapter 1 – Introduction

• the Guide for MFC activities, containing copy-edit instructions;
• the Typographic Standardization and the journals’ typesetting instructions, containing the default rendering of the SGML/XML files on paper;
• Electronic Warehouse input and output specifications, detailing the structure of electronic datasets.

CAP, CAPLite, CAPLitePlus

A CAP delivery of an item contains a PDF file (Portable Document Format from Adobe) and an XML file capturing the full item as well as all external files ("assets") referred to from the XML file.

For some types of content, e.g. camera-ready journals, delivery of full-article XML is not a viable alternative. For these types of content, the full-article PDF file is required, but only the head and the tail are captured in XML (the definition of “head” and “tail” are given in later chapters). In total, four varieties of XML capturing are distinguished:

• CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY. Only the title and authors are captured, also known as “ultralight” deliveries.
• HEAD-ONLY. Only the head is captured, also known as “CAPLite” deliveries.
• HEAD-AND-TAIL. Only the head and the tail are captured, also known as “CAPLite-Plus” deliveries.
• Full CAP: the whole article is captured.

The DTDs support these different “XML manifestations”, and they are also dealt with in this documentation. Fortunately, these manifestations limit themselves to a small number of publications.

There is a difference between a HEAD-ONLY document and a full CAP document that only contains a head. In the latter case, one can be sure that the document is nothing more than the head. In the former case a body and a tail may or may not have been present. Interpreting the XML file and concluding the file is HEAD-ONLY is therefore wrong. It must be concluded from the manifestation type indicated by the dataset description.

SGML/XML First

The core principle of the CAP workflow has always been “SGML/XML First”. This means that all products, be it online or in print, are derived from the same source SGML/XML file. The PDF files used for print are as much derived from the XML as the online product.

If one would define XML First as “Give a valid XML file to any supplier, then each supplier will produce the same PDF file”, one can say that XML First is achieved for the majority of journal titles. For some nonstandard titles, and for some book projects, the layout requirements are so important that full compliance to the XML First Principle is not always possible.

For PreCAP, where printed journal issues are scanned and delivered electronically, the principle obviously does not apply.
This chapter contains technical details of the Elsevier DTD family and the XML files that are structured according to these DTDs.

- The first section, The setup of the DTD family (p. 8), describes the general set-up of the DTD 5.0 family, with several DTDs calling in the common element pool, which in turn uses the MathML and CALS DTDs.
- The second section, The XML files (p. 12), explains general rules for each XML file, such as its UTF-8 encoding and whitespace rules.
- Each XML file structured according to one of the Elsevier DTDs begins with a doctype declaration and the declaration of external entities, if any. This is described in the third section, Entities and the DOCTYPE declaration (p. 14).
- The fourth section, The DTD version of an XML file and catalogs (p. 16), stresses that the authoritative version of the DTD with which an XML file is structured is found using the public identifier in the doctype declaration.
- Extensive use of namespaces has been made. This is detailed in the fifth section, Namespaces in the XML file (p. 18).
- The Unicode standard misses some crucial symbols that are used in Elsevier’s XML files. The additional glyphs are listed in the sixth section, Elsevier’s additional glyphs (p. 19).
- MathML formulae and extended CALS tables are accompanied by a graphical representation, called a strip-in. General rules for strip-ins are described in the final section of this chapter, strip-ins (p. 23).
Chapter 2 – Technical aspects

The setup of the DTD family

This section describes the setup of the DTDs, the common element pool and the corresponding namespaces.

In order to manage a family of XML DTDs, a modular approach was adopted. The DTDs belonging to the DTD 5 family use a common element pool (CEP), consisting of elements shared by various DTDs. In turn, the common element pool includes other DTD fragments, e.g. MathML and CALS tables.

As a result, the individual DTDs are mostly fairly small; they describe the top-level structure of the content. Some DTDs are different by nature, such as the serials issue (SI) DTD and the Elsevier Book (BK) DTD, and therefore use fewer common elements.

Namespaces

Even though DTDs, unlike, e.g., XML schemas, offer limited support for namespaces, these have been introduced in the DTD 5 family, and these play a role when processing files using namespace-aware software. For instance, XSLT stylesheets are aware of the namespace and unexpected results can be obtained when the namespace is not taken care of. The namespaces are named using URIs — these are abstract names not pointing to any page on the Elsevier corporate website. The following namespaces are the namespaces used in the DTD 5 family.
Chapter 2 – Technical aspects

The setup of the DTD family

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Namespace identifier</th>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/ja/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/ja/dtd</a></td>
<td>JA DTD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/si/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/si/dtd</a></td>
<td>SI DTD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/bk/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/bk/dtd</a></td>
<td>Elsevier Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/ef/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/ef/dtd</a></td>
<td>Enhancement Fragment DTD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd</a></td>
<td>Core CEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/struct-aff/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/struct-aff/dtd</a></td>
<td>Structured affiliations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/struct-bib/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/struct-bib/dtd</a></td>
<td>Structured references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/table/dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/table/dtd</a></td>
<td>CALS extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/cals.dtd">http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/cals.dtd</a></td>
<td>OASIS CALS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink">http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink</a></td>
<td>XLink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML</a></td>
<td>MathML</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The namespaces existing within the DTD and the common element pool are declared in the top-level element. The MathML namespace is declared in the MathML Qualified Names Module.

The convention is adopted that the elements indigenous to the DTD belong to the default namespace. Therefore within the family of DTDs two different elements with the same name can exist. Namespace-aware processors will treat each variant differently.

The other elements are explicitly prefixed in the DTD: all elements in the common element pool have been given a prefix ce: or, for elements for structured bibliographic references, sb: or, for elements for structured affiliations, sa: or, for elements that extend the CALS table model. The MathML elements have been assigned a prefix mml:.

An unfortunate exception is formed by the elements in the CALS table fragment. Since that fragment lacks the option to declare a namespace prefix, they all have no prefix, even though they belong to the common element pool. In order to avoid that XML processors treat these elements as belonging to the default namespace of the DTD, the element ce:table resets the default namespace to the CALS namespace. The element entry resets the default namespace to that of the common element pool.

More details can be found in the section Namespaces in the XML file (p. 18).

MathML, CALS

The common element pool pulls in MathML and CALS fragments. It should be noted that it is important to use for these fragments the files belonging to the common element pool distribution, rather than files found elsewhere. These files contain the correct version, corresponding to the Public Identifiers defined in the common element pool.

Doctypes

In order to make the DTDs more precise, they may contain more than one top-level element, the doctype. Other documentation gives instructions about when a certain doctype is appropriate. For instance, article and book-review are doctypes defined by the journal article DTD (JA DTD). A full-length article begins as follows:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE article
  PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD journal article DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
  "art560.dtd" []>
<article docsubtype="fla">
```
whereas a book review begins thus:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE book-review
  PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD journal article DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
  "art560.dtd" []>
<book-review docsubtype="brv">
Similarly, the books DTDs contain doctypes (top-level elements) for the chapters, the index, the glossary, and the book “hub”.

**Version numbering**

It is likely that development of the individual DTDs will require changes to the common element pool. As a consequence, it is likely that different versions of the common element pool will be in use at any one time. For instance, the book DTD might need version 1.2 of the common element pool, while the journal article DTD does not need an update and continues to use the common element pool version 1.1.

The correct version number of the DTD is found in the public identifier of the DTD. (See the section The DTD version number and XML catalogs, p. 16.) A DTD change that results in a change of the second or third digit will always be a backward compatible one.

In case of a change to the third digit, note that the version attributes of the top-level elements do not contain the third digit. Therefore, a file structured according to version 5.2.0 will still parse with version 5.2.1 without any change to the XML file. The only thing an application needs to do is to change the catalog (p. 14) in such a way that the public identifier of the 5.2.0 DTD points to the 5.2.1 file.

**Backward compatibility and downgradability**

After a DTD has gone into production, limitations of backward compatibility and downgradability are put on the DTDs.

*Backward compatibility* means that applications that can handle documents conforming to a certain version, can also handle documents conforming to a previous version.

*Downgradability* means that applications that cannot yet handle documents conforming to a newer version, can downgrade these documents or receive documents already downgraded.

In complex situation where many thousands of web services, tools and applications use the XML content, it is impossible to lockstep migration with a DTD upgrade. Therefore these limitations are needed.

Making an element optional is backward compatible, but it is only downgradable if a default value can be supplied in case the element is not present in an XML file. For instance, when a city element in an address were to be made optional, older documents are still valid with the new DTD, but it is virtually impossible to scan the affiliation and automatically tag the city in order to downgrade the file.

Making an optional element mandatory is downgradable but not backward compatible as applications that only know about the new DTD will expect the potentially missing element in the XML file. However, for applications that could already handle the optional element the added precision that the element will henceforth always be present is only helpful.

Adding a new, optional element is both backward compatible and downgradable. Adding a new, mandatory element is neither backward compatible nor downgradable.
Only first-digit changes do not need to be backward compatible or downgradable. The 4.x DTDs have existed for 6.5 years and the family of 5.x DTDs will be with us for many years as well.
The XML file

This section describes various rules about the XML files themselves.

Valid files

Obviously, the XML file must be a valid XML instance. A consequence is that the file is well-formed: that it contains entities properly closed with a semi-colon, and that the < and & characters are only used as XML markup. The file must begin with the XML version declaration including the UTF-8 encoding statement

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
```

Nothing may appear before that statement, between that statement and the DOCTYPE declaration, and after the end tag of the top-level element.

The XML file may not contain XML processing instructions (other than the XML version declaration) or XML comments.

UTF-8 encoding

Elsevier expects XML files to be delivered in UTF-8 encoding. This encoding, in which each Unicode point is stored as a sequence of one or more bytes, is the only encoding allowed.

In deliveries to Elsevier the native UTF-8 encoding of the Unicode point must be used. Explicit character numbers such as `&#x02008;` and entity names of entities belonging to one of the ISO characters pulled in by the MathML DTD must not be used. For MathML symbols in Plane One it is required to use math variants. (Note that DTD 5.6 is delivered with an entity file, used by the MathML DTD, for reasons of backwards compatibility.)

The following code results in three times “é”:

```text
é &eacute; &#x00E9;
```

By the first we mean é in its native UTF-8 encoding. (Note that in that encoding the character is not hex E9 but is encoded as the two-byte sequence C3 A9.) Only the first one is allowed to be delivered to Elsevier.

Outside markup, <, " and & are always escaped and present in their pre-defined entity forms &lt;,, &quot; and &amp;.

Whitespace in the XML file

In this section, “whitespace” refers to the space character (ASCII 32), the linefeed (LF) character (ASCII 10) and the TAB character (ASCII 9). Each of these characters has the same effect: a space in the rendered document.

Unlike the SGML files structured according to DTDs prior to DTD 5, DTD 5 XML files may contain TABs and linefeed characters for ease of reading XML files with the human eye. The carriage-return (CR) character (ASCII 13) is not allowed; line breaks therefore do not follow the MSDOS pattern CRLF.

When a sequence of consecutive whitespace characters appears in an XML file, the effect is as if one space were present. These sequences may only occur at the beginning of a line.

Care should be taken when using whitespace at the beginning or end of mixed-content elements, i.e., with #PCDATA in their content model.
XML
<ce:caption id="cap67">
  <ce:simple-para id="sp71">This is a paragraph ending in a whitespace (the linefeed after the full stop); this is not correct.</ce:simple-para>
</ce:caption>

There are five whitespace characters between “whitespace” and “(the”, which is allowed; they count as one space. The three whitespaces after the full stop, however, are not correct. (It follows from the DTD that the three whitespace characters after the ce:caption start tag are ignored.)

It should be noted that in some of the examples in this documentation, erroneous extra spacing has sometimes been introduced to make the examples easier to read. The close-up sign ⌢ ▲ is used in that case to make it clear that the XML files should have no spaces or linebreaks at this point.

XML
<ce:caption id="c4">
  <ce:simple-para id="sp4">The close-up sign indicates that there should be no whitespace at the end of the paragraph; the end tag is placed on the next line only for reasons of readability. ▲</ce:simple-para>
</ce:caption>
Entities and the DOCTYPE declaration

The relationship between the XML file and the artwork files and files containing electronic components is made via XML entities. These entities are used exclusively in the ce:link element and must be declared within the declaration subset of the XML file according to the rules described in this section.

Consider a journal article consisting of an XML file main.xml; three artwork files gr1.jpg, gr2.jpg and fx1.tif; an audio file au1.mp3 and a videoclip clip.avi.

The XML file of the article, structured with the journal article DTD, begins like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE article
    PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD journal article DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
    "art560.dtd"
    [<!ENTITY gr1 SYSTEM "gr1" NDATA IMAGE>
    <!ENTITY gr2 SYSTEM "gr2" NDATA IMAGE>
    <!ENTITY fx1 SYSTEM "fx1" NDATA IMAGE>
    <!ENTITY au1 SYSTEM "au1" NDATA AUDIO>
    <!ENTITY clip SYSTEM "clip" NDATA VIDEO]>}
<article docsubtype="fla">
    ...
</article>
```

The entities gr1–clip are used in the ENTITY-type attributes of the element ce:link. The system names are the file names without extension. The external entity name must be the same as the system name.

The actual link is established in a three-step process, starting with its usage within the document which looks like this:

```xml
<ce:biography id="vt1">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp56">...</ce:simple-para>
</ce:biography>
```

The ce:link element instructs the rendering application to pull in an external file. It is the file referenced through the entity fx1, the value of the locator attribute, that is declared in the doctype declaration as the external entity with system name (i.e., file name) fx1. The catalog redirects this to fx1.tif.

**Note:** This is the classical way. In the modern way the xlink:href attribute can be used to access the content object in the VTW. For more information see the description of element ce:link.

In the declaration subset (between square brackets), it is only allowed to declare entities of the types NDATA. The notations defined in the DTD are TEXT, reserved for plain text; IMAGE, reserved for artwork formats such as GIF, JPEG and TIFF; AUDIO, reserved for audio formats such as MP3, VIDEO, reserved for video formats such as AVI, MP4 and MPEG; APPLICATION, reserved for documents for other applications or for scripts and executables; and XML, reserved for external XML files, e.g. for scalable vector graphics.
or chemical object notations. (Not all these notations are currently used.) Precisely those
entities needed in the document must be declared.

Applications that wish to check whether all external files are present should examine the
declaration subset of the XML file and verify these against the dataset.

Obviously, only files referred to from the XML file are declared as entities as described
above. Other files belonging to the item, such as PDF files, are not mentioned in the XML
file.
An XML file’s DTD version and catalogs

It is expected that the public identifier in the DOCTYPE declaration of the XML file is used to retrieve the DTD as well as its version number. The `version` attribute of the top element should not be used as it only contains the first two digits of the DTD version number for reasons of backward compatibility (p. 8).

```xml
<!DOCTYPE simple-article
 PUBLIC "-/ES//DTD journal article DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
 "art560.dtd">

<!DOCTYPE serial-issue
 PUBLIC "-/ES//DTD serials issue DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
 "si560.dtd">

<!DOCTYPE book
 PUBLIC "-/ES//DTD book DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
 "book560.dtd">

<!DOCTYPE converted-article
 PUBLIC "-/ES//DTD journal article DTD version 4.5.2//EN//XML"
 "art452.dtd">
```

The string after the keyword PUBLIC contains the DTD associated with the XML file that has this DOCTYPE declaration. The system identifier does not contain that information. To map the public identifier to a file on the user’s system XML catalogs should be used as explained below.

**XML catalogs**

Catalogs are an important tool in entity management: they allow XML tools to locate DTDs and other external files that are used by the XML file. Catalogs make entity management flexible: they allow us to associate system identifiers (file paths and names) to public identifiers, and to rewrite system identifiers.

During the SGML era the SGML Open Catalog (SOC) specification was developed [16]. James Clark’s SP suite is a well-known application implementing SOC, and it was the only application that implemented system identifier rewriting.

XML has long done without its own entity resolution system. It had the new rule that even the declaration of a public identifier had to contain a system identifier, which allowed external entity handling to be simple. Some applications continued to use the SOC system. On 6 August 2001 and again on 24 October 2002 OASIS published its XML Catalog specification [17]. It can be seen as a continuation and a refinement of the SOC system. It provides powerful methods to map public identifiers to system identifiers, to rewrite system identifiers, and to modularize catalog management. At the time of this writing several XML toolsets contain implementations of this catalog specification; for an overview see the home page of OASIS’ catalog committee [18].

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog"
...>
prefer="public">

<public
   publicId="#//ES//DTD journal article DTD version 5.6.0//EN//XML"
   uri="file:///D:/home/xml/dtd/art560/art560.dtd"/>

<group xml:base="file:///D:/home/article/">
   <system systemID="gr1" uri="main.assets/gr1.tif"/>
   <system systemID="gr2" uri="main.assets/gr2.tif"/>
</group>

<group xml:base="file:///D:/home/xml/dtd/">
   <nextCatalog catalog="mathml/xcatalog"/>
   <nextCatalog catalog="calstable/xcatalog"/>
</group>

<rewriteSystem systemIdStartString="file:///D:/home/article/
   rewritePrefix="file:///G:/datasets/20030310/art5001/"/>

</catalog>

The above example catalog starts with specifying where the JA DTD can be found. Note that this ignores the system identifier for this DTD in the XML file itself. Also note that this is a local implementation, on other systems the DTD may be located elsewhere.

Then the system identifiers for the images in the XML file discussed above are mapped to an existing file location. Note that a subdirectory is specified and a file name extension is given.

Then two other catalogs are included, for the MathML DTD and the CALS table DTD. This makes it possible to maintain separate catalogs for these subsystems.

Finally some system identifiers are rewritten. Rewriting applies to the start of the system identifier. Here a situation is described where all data for the article have been moved from one place to another.

XML catalogs provide more facilities for entity management. See the specification [17] for details.

Note that using catalogs in this way makes it possible to perform a third-digit update of the DTD by changing the catalog in such a way that the public identifier of the old and new versions both point to the new DTD.
Namespaces in the XML file

Namespaces are widely used in programming. XML has introduced namespaces to text structuring. Namespaces allow one to reuse commonly used names. For example, the element `title` may have a different content model in one namespace than in another. More importantly, namespaces allow one to group related elements together, and separate them off from other groups of elements.

Namespaces are indicated by their name. In XML, the name is a URI. Usually it is a URL, e.g. `http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd`. Sometimes it has a rather different form of URI, e.g. `urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog`, which is the name of the namespace of an XML catalog.

In an XML document namespaces are indicated by prefixes. A prefix is an alias for a namespace name. Prefixes are defined according to a flexible system. Each element in an XML document may declare prefixes for one or more namespaces using the attribute `xmlns:pfx="name"`, where `pfx` is the newly declared prefix. This prefix is valid for this element and all its descendants, until it is redeclared by another `xmlns` attribute. One may also declare a default namespace, with the attribute `xmlns="name"`. This causes this element, if it does not have a prefix, as well as all its descendants without a prefix, to belong to the declared namespace. When there is no default namespace declaration, all elements without a prefix do not belong to a namespace. One could also say that they belong to the namespace with an empty name.

This flexible system does not fit well into the DTD system. A DTD is not namespace aware. In a DTD the prefix is a fixed part of an element’s name. It must be used as determined by the DTD, and cannot be redeclared in the XML document. If one would redeclare a prefix as describe above, the document would become invalid according to the DTD. Some flexibility can be gained by writing the DTD in such a way that the prefix is determined by an entity. This allows one to declare a different prefix at the top of each XML document. The CEP does not use this flexibility, and fixes the prefixes used.

The CEP and the DTDs built on top of it, do all namespace declarations in the DTD, by means of attributes with fixed values. This has the advantage that no namespace declarations are required in the XML document. For a proper understanding that may be a disadvantage, because in the XML document the namespaces are rather invisible. Only by looking up the DTD can one find out in which namespaces the elements live.
Elsevier’s additional glyphs

Not all symbols used in our publications have been adopted by Unicode. Prior to DTD 5.0, these symbols were part of the “Elsevier Science Grid” [5]. The element `ce:glyph` has been introduced so that we can continue to support these additional symbols.

It is expected that some or all of the glyphs may be added to future versions of Unicode. In that case, it is not an error to use the `ce:glyph` element, but it is preferred that the Unicode character is used.

The list of glyph names allowed in `ce:glyph` is contained in the parameter entity `%glyph-names;`. The following two tables give an overview of the glyph names and the symbols to which they refer. The position refers to the position in the Grid [5]. When a Unicode code point has been assigned to a symbol, it is listed in the column Unicode.

Rendering applications need to store these glyphs, they are not delivered along with the XML files as are strip-ins (p. 23).

 Glyphs ordered by grid coordinate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Glyph name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Unicode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bd5</td>
<td>dlcorn</td>
<td>left bottom corner, long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bd6</td>
<td>smid</td>
<td>shortmid (Height of small x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bd7</td>
<td>spar</td>
<td>short parallel (Height small x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be5</td>
<td>drcorn</td>
<td>right bottom corner, long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be6</td>
<td>nsmid</td>
<td>nshortmid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be7</td>
<td>nspar</td>
<td>not short parallel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bfp</td>
<td>sqfne</td>
<td>square with filled N-E-corner</td>
<td>02B14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bfr</td>
<td>sqfsw</td>
<td>square with filled S-W-corner</td>
<td>02B15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bfv</td>
<td>sqft</td>
<td>square, top filled</td>
<td>02B12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bfw</td>
<td>sqfb</td>
<td>square, bottom filled</td>
<td>02B13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bgg</td>
<td>lozfl</td>
<td>lozenge, left filled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bgh</td>
<td>lozfr</td>
<td>lozenge, right filled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bgi</td>
<td>lozf</td>
<td>lozenge, filled</td>
<td>029EB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bh8</td>
<td>herma</td>
<td>hermaphrodite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bji</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S-sign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn3</td>
<td>lbd2td</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side, top double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn4</td>
<td>lbd2bd</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side, bottom double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn5</td>
<td>rbd2td</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side, top double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn6</td>
<td>rbd2bd</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side, bottom double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo0</td>
<td>rad</td>
<td>radical dot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo1</td>
<td>pent</td>
<td>pentagon</td>
<td>02B20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo3</td>
<td>pdbdtd</td>
<td>partial double bond, top dashed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo5</td>
<td>ptbtd</td>
<td>partial triple bond, top dashed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo6</td>
<td>ptbdbd</td>
<td>partial triple bond, bottom dashed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo7</td>
<td>sbnd</td>
<td>single bond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo8</td>
<td>pdbond</td>
<td>Partial double bond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boq</td>
<td>dbond</td>
<td>double bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bor</td>
<td>tbnd</td>
<td>triple bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bos</td>
<td>qmbnd</td>
<td>quadruple bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpq</td>
<td>dbnd6</td>
<td>6-point double bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpr</td>
<td>tbnd6</td>
<td>6-point triple bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bps</td>
<td>qmbnd6</td>
<td>six-point quadruple bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Glyph name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Unicode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpt</td>
<td>rbond3</td>
<td>3 bonds on the righthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpu</td>
<td>lbond3</td>
<td>3 bonds on the lefthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpv</td>
<td>rbond2</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpw</td>
<td>lbond2</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buc</td>
<td>camb</td>
<td>Cambrian (era)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>bigdot</td>
<td>big dot above (accent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cfi</td>
<td>jnodot</td>
<td>undotted l.c. j</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pa8</td>
<td>ht</td>
<td>hooktop (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb6</td>
<td>ggrave</td>
<td>extra low, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb8</td>
<td>cfl</td>
<td>curly tail (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pc3</td>
<td>sbw</td>
<td>subscript w (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pc6</td>
<td>hriss</td>
<td>high rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E6-002E5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pc7</td>
<td>hris</td>
<td>high rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd3</td>
<td>hbar</td>
<td>horizontal bar (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd6</td>
<td>lriss</td>
<td>low rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E9-002E8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd7</td>
<td>lris</td>
<td>low rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pdk</td>
<td>resmck</td>
<td>small capital K, reversed (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pdp</td>
<td>phktp</td>
<td>p hooktop (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>001A5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pdfla</td>
<td>risfla</td>
<td>rising-falling, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pdfls</td>
<td>risfls</td>
<td>rising-falling, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E6-002E5-002E6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pj</td>
<td>jnodot</td>
<td>j, undotted (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pgh</td>
<td>htrtrh</td>
<td>turned h, hook right tail (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phn</td>
<td>ncurt</td>
<td>curly-tail n (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pht</td>
<td>tcurt</td>
<td>curly-tail t (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pid</td>
<td>dcurt</td>
<td>curly-tail d (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phh</td>
<td>heng</td>
<td>heng (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pj1</td>
<td>pSlash</td>
<td>double Slash (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pk1</td>
<td>trisla</td>
<td>triple Slash (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pko</td>
<td>trnomeg</td>
<td>inverted omega (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plr</td>
<td>refhrl</td>
<td>reversed fish-hook r, long leg (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt2</td>
<td>btmlig</td>
<td>bottom ligature (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Glyphs ordered by glyph name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glyph name</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Unicode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bigdot</td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>big dot above (accent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btmlig</td>
<td>Pt2</td>
<td>bottom ligature (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camb</td>
<td>Buc</td>
<td>Cambrian (era)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl</td>
<td>Pb8</td>
<td>curly tail (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dbnd</td>
<td>Boq</td>
<td>double bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dbnd6</td>
<td>Bpq</td>
<td>6-point double bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dcurt</td>
<td>Pid</td>
<td>curly-tail d (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlcorn</td>
<td>Bd5</td>
<td>left bottom corner, long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drcorn</td>
<td>Be5</td>
<td>right bottom corner, long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grave</td>
<td>Pb6</td>
<td>extra low, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hbar</td>
<td>Pd3</td>
<td>horizontal bar (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heng</td>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>heng (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herma</td>
<td>Bh8</td>
<td>hermaphrodite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hris</td>
<td>Pc6</td>
<td>high rising, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hriss</td>
<td>Pc7</td>
<td>high rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E6-002E5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrttrh</td>
<td>Pgh</td>
<td>turned h, hook right tail (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ht</td>
<td>Pa8</td>
<td>hooktop (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jnodot</td>
<td>Pfj</td>
<td>j, undotted (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lbd2bd</td>
<td>Bn4</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side, bottom double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lbd2td</td>
<td>Bn3</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side, top double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lbond2</td>
<td>Bpw</td>
<td>2 bonds on the lefthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lbond3</td>
<td>Bpu</td>
<td>3 bonds on the lefthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lozf</td>
<td>Bgi</td>
<td>lozenge, filled</td>
<td>029EB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lozfl</td>
<td>Bgg</td>
<td>lozenge, left filled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lozfr</td>
<td>Bgh</td>
<td>lozenge, right filled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lris</td>
<td>Pd6</td>
<td>low rising, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lriss</td>
<td>Pd7</td>
<td>low rising, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E9-002E8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncurt</td>
<td>Phn</td>
<td>curly-tail n (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsmid</td>
<td>Be6</td>
<td>nshortmid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nspar</td>
<td>Be7</td>
<td>not short parallel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pdbond</td>
<td>Bo8</td>
<td>Partial double bond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pent</td>
<td>Bo1</td>
<td>pentagon</td>
<td>02B20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phktp</td>
<td>Pdp</td>
<td>p hooktop (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>001A5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pSlash</td>
<td>Pj1</td>
<td>double Slash (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptbtd</td>
<td>Bo6</td>
<td>partial triple bond, bottom dashed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptbdtd</td>
<td>Bo5</td>
<td>partial triple bond, top dashed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qbdn</td>
<td>Bos</td>
<td>quadruple bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qbdn6</td>
<td>Bps</td>
<td>six-point quadruple bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rad</td>
<td>Bo0</td>
<td>radical dot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rbd2bd</td>
<td>Bn6</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side, bottom double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rbd2td</td>
<td>Bn5</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side, top double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rbonb2</td>
<td>Bpv</td>
<td>2 bonds on the righthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rbonb3</td>
<td>Bpt</td>
<td>3 bonds on the righthand side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflrfl</td>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>reversed fish-hook r, long leg (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resmck</td>
<td>Pdk</td>
<td>small capital K, reversed (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rislfa</td>
<td>Pe6</td>
<td>rising-falling, accent (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rislfs</td>
<td>Pe7</td>
<td>rising-falling, symbol (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>002E6-002E5-002E6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Bji</td>
<td>S-sign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbnd</td>
<td>Bo7</td>
<td>single bond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbw</td>
<td>Pc3</td>
<td>subscript w (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glyph name</td>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Unicode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smid</td>
<td>Bd6</td>
<td>shortmid (Height of small x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spar</td>
<td>Bd7</td>
<td>short parallel (Height small x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqfb</td>
<td>Bfw</td>
<td>square, bottom filled</td>
<td>02B13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqfne</td>
<td>Bfp</td>
<td>square with filled N-E-corner</td>
<td>02B14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqfsw</td>
<td>Bfr</td>
<td>square with filled S-W-corner</td>
<td>02B15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqft</td>
<td>Bfv</td>
<td>square, top filled</td>
<td>02B12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tbnd</td>
<td>Bor</td>
<td>triple bond; length as m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tbnd6</td>
<td>Bpr</td>
<td>6-point triple bond; length half of m-dash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tcurt</td>
<td>Pht</td>
<td>curly-tail t (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td>00236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisla</td>
<td>Pk1</td>
<td>triple Slash (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnomeg</td>
<td>Pko</td>
<td>inverted omega (phonetic symbol)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 2 – Technical aspects

Strip-in images

Since Elsevier began delivering SGML files for electronic products, the files have been accompanied with graphic representations of SGML expressions that are hard to render. Prior to DTD 5.0, these included all accent constructions, all formulae and all tables. Graphic representations of these constructs are called *strip-ins*. These strip-ins were created by Elsevier’s Electronic Warehouse from the SGML source.

Strip-ins should not be confused with graphic images of *symbols* in the Elsevier Grid that cannot be represented in today’s HTML-based browsers. Such images, seen on platforms such as ScienceDirect®, look the same as strip-ins, but are held in glyph libraries of the platforms. With the adoption of Unicode, graphic representation of symbols will become a thing of the past.

Some constructs in an XML file structured by one of the DTDs of the 5.0 family are still hard to render on today’s browsers.

- MathML (Chapter 11) is not yet supported natively in the important browsers that Elsevier’s readers use, although we expect that to change in the near future. After some time in which readers switch to the newer version, we can assume that MathML can be rendered without problem. At present, however, we continue to supply strip-ins for the element `<mml:math>`.

- We expect that native CALS tables (Chapter 12) can be rendered in today’s web browsers, but the more complicated extended CALS tables are a different matter. These require complicated border styles or complicated alignment that is not possible. For `<tgroup>` elements with extensions with the `tb:` prefix, we also supply strip-ins. Unlike strip-ins for math, these strip-ins may well continue to be supplied in the future.

Both the `<mml:math>` and the `<tgroup>` elements possess an attribute `altimg` that contains the filename of the strip-in image. Note that unlike other external files, the link is not made via an entity (as described in the section *Entities and the DOCTYPE declaration*, p. 14).

```
<xml>
  <mml:math altimg="si18.gif">...</mml:math>
  <tgroup altimg="si103.gif">...</tgroup>
</xml>
```

The strip-in images are GIF images of the typeset output found in the PDF file of the document. The GIF images are specified in more detail elsewhere. Some points to note:

- Strip-ins are cropped closely. The current specifications do not allow the baseline to be specified. This is only a potential problem for small inline formulae, not for displayed formulae or tables.
- Strip-ins of displayed formulas look identical to the PDF version, except when a column or page break appears right in the middle of them. So, in a two-column journal they might look narrow and in a one-column journal they will be wider.
- Strip-ins of inline formulas look identical to the PDF version except when a line break happens to appear in the middle of them. The strip-in image will appear unbroken.
- Strip-ins of `<tgroup>`s are always one GIF image, irrespective of the height and width of the table.
Note: In an automated workflow early in the production process the images used in element `ce:math` are not strip-in images but regular CAP images, usually in the JPEG format. Later on this element and the image are replaced by MathML and a strip-in image.
This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the elements in the journal article DTD, the JA DTD. This DTD is used for capturing journal articles. It is also applied for structuring chapters of certain types of books, e.g. chapters in volumes of book series.

The JA DTD is the successor of the SGML full-length article DTDs.

The journal article DTD defines four top-level elements: article, simple-article, book-review and exam.

The serial issue DTD, SI DTD, described in Chapter 4, is a related DTD. It is used for capturing the data belonging to a journal issue or a book series volume.

**CEP version used in this DTD**

The journal article DTD versions described in this documentation use different versions of the common element pool, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Journal article DTD</th>
<th>Common element pool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.0.1</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.0.2</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.1.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.2.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.4.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.5.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA DTD 5.6.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.6.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To align the version numbers of the JA DTD, the Book DTD and the CEP, versions 5.3.0 of the JA DTD and 1.3.0 of the CEP were not created.

**Parameter entities**

The journal article DTD versions 5.0.1 and 5.0.2 locally declare parameter entities %cross-ref; and %cross-references; to consist of ce:cross-ref and ce:cross-references, respectively.

```xml
<!ENTITY % cross-ref    "ce:cross-ref" >
<!ENTITY % cross-references "ce:cross-references" >
```

As a result, it is impossible to use ce:intra-ref and ce:intra-references in documents structured with these versions of the JA DTD.

This restriction is removed in JA DTD 5.1.0.
aid

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1–JA DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT aid ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element aid contains the article number of the item.

Usage

The article ID is captured using aid. Article IDs have no leading zeroes.

See also

cde:doi, cde:pii, cde:article-number, jid
article

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1, JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT article (item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?,
  tail?)>
<!ATTLIST article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.0'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT article (item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?,
  tail?)>
<!ATTLIST article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT article (item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?,
  tail?)>
<!ATTLIST article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT article (item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?,
  tail?)>
<!ATTLIST article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">
```
Model (JA DTD 5.5.0)

<!ELEMENT article ( item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?, tail? )>
<!ATTLIST article
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT article ( item-info, ce:floats?, head, body?, tail? )>
<!ATTLIST article
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 docsubtype %docsubtype; "fla">

Description

The element article contains a complete journal article or a complete book chapter.

Usage

The element article is one of the top-level elements (doctypes) of the JA DTD. It is used for structuring full-length articles and other articles of scientific importance.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The attribute docsubtype is the most important one. It defaults to fla; its complete list of values is described in the section Publication item types (p. 56). Under regular production conditions, articles with this attribute set to chp, fla, rev, sco or ssu will be structured with article. However, a CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY full-length article may well be structured using simple-article. The precise rules are described in the Electronic Warehouse Input specifications.

- The attribute xml:lang specifies the language in which the article is written (default English, en). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.

- The fixed attribute xmlns sets the default namespace for JA elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with xmlns: set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (xmlns:ce, xmlns:sa and xmlns:sb) and of the XLink standard (xmlns:xlink). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.

- version is fixed to the first two digits of the version of the DTD.

See head for an example article opening.
Version history

In JA DTDs 5.0.1 and 5.0.2, \texttt{xml:lang} could only adopt the values English (en, default) French (fr), German (de), Portuguese (pt), Russian (ru), Spanish (es).

See also

\texttt{book-review, exam, simple-article}


body

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1–JA DTD 5.4.0)

```
<!ELEMENT body ( ce:nomenclature?, ce:salutation?,
                ce:sections, ce:acknowledgment?,
                ce:appendices? )>
```

```
<!ATTLIST body
            view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.5.0)

```
<!ELEMENT body ( ce:nomenclature?, ce:salutation?,
                ce:sections, ce:acknowledgment*,
                ce:appendices? )>
```

```
<!ATTLIST body
            view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT body ( ce:nomenclature?, ce:salutation?,
                ce:sections, ce:conflict-of-interest?,
                ce:acknowledgment*, ce:appendices? )>
```

```
<!ATTLIST body
            view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `body` contains the body of an item.

Usage

The main part of a document is contained in the body, `body`. It consists of an optional nomenclature (`ce:nomenclature`), an optional salutation (`ce:salutation`), a collection of paragraphs, sections, subsections, etc., contained in `ce:sections`, an optional conflict of interest statement (`ce:conflict-of-interest`), optional acknowledgments (`ce:acknowledgment`), and optional appendices contained in `ce:appendices`.

Version history

In JA DTD 5.5.0 the occurrence indicator for `ce:acknowledgment` changed from `?` to `*`.

In JA DTD 5.6.0 the subelement `ce:conflict-of-interest` was introduced.

Light reading

In HEAD-ONLY, HEAD-AND-TAIL and CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY deliveries, the body is not fully captured in XML. Such documents may still have a `body`, for instance in order to capture electronic components.
book-review

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1, JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.0'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "brv">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( brv|err ) "brv">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( brv|err ) "brv">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( brv|err ) "brv">
```
Model (JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( brv|err ) "brv">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST book-review
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( brv|err ) "brv">
```

Description

The element `book-review` is used to structure a book review.

Usage

The element `book-review` is one of the top-level elements (doctypes) of the JA DTD. It is used for structuring book reviews.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The attribute `docsubtype` contains the publication item type (p. 56) The values `brv` and `err` are allowed.
- The attribute `xml:lang` specifies the language in which the article is written (default English, `en`). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.
- The fixed attribute `xmlns` sets the default namespace for JA elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with `xmlns:` set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (`xmlns:ce, xmlns:sa` and `xmlns:sb`) and of the XLink standard (`xmlns:xlink`). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.
- `version` is fixed to the first two digits of the version of the DTD.

See `book-review-head` for an example article opening.

Version history

In JA DTDs 5.0.1 and 5.0.2, `xml:lang` could only adopt the values English (`en`, default) French (`fr`), German (`de`), Portuguese (`pt`), Russian (`ru`), Spanish (`es`).

As of JA DTD 5.1.0, the value `err` is allowed for `docsubtype`. 
See also

article, exam, simple-article
book-review-head

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1)

```xml
```

Model (JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0, JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0, JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
```

Description

The element book-review-head contains the head or frontmatter of a book review, structured according to book-review.
Usage

The head of a book review consists of the article footnotes (*ce:article-footnote*), markers (*ce:markers*), the document heading (*ce:dochead*), a label (e.g., “Chapter 7”) (*ce:label*), the article title (*ce:title*), a sequence of titles each in an alternative language (*ce:alt-title*), a short version of the title (*ce:short-title*), a list of structured and unstructured bibliographic references, being the books under review (*sb:reference* and *ce:other-ref*), the author groups (*ce:author-group*), the article history (*ce:date-received*, *ce:date-revised*, *ce:date-accepted*) and *ce:miscellaneous*.

The *book-review-head* differs from a *head* in that *head*’s subtitles have been replaced by information about the book or books under review. Moreover, *ce:title* is not mandatory; instead, there must be at least a *ce:dochead* or a *ce:title*. There is no dedication or presented by, and there are no keywords and (stereochemistry) abstracts.

An example of an opening of a book review is shown in Figs. 2 and 3.

Version history

Subelement *ce:markers* was introduced in JA DTD 5.0.2. Subelement *ce:label* was introduced in JA DTD 5.1.0.

In JA DTD 5.4.0 the occurrence indicator for *ce:miscellaneous* changed from ? to *.

Subelement *ce:short-title* was added in JA DTD 5.6.0.

Light reading

The complete head is part of HEAD-ONLY and HEAD-AND-TAIL files. A CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY file can only contain *ce:article-footnote*, *ce:title* and *ce:subtitle*, and within *ce:author-group* only *ce:author* and *ce:collaboration*.

See also

*head*, *simple-head*
Book review*


Domain theory is the study of certain kinds of mathematical structure, domains, which model notions of approximation in computation. Such structures first arose in the development of denotational semantics of programming languages, where the notion of approximation was crucial for modelling recursion and recursively defined datatypes. From these roots, domain theory has blossomed into an interesting mathematical theory in its own right. Many varieties of domains have been identified and classified, with applications ranging from computation in continuous mathematics to abstract recursion theory.

Other recent textbooks in the area have been primarily concerned with the denotational semantics of programming languages, introducing domain theory as a necessary tool for the provision of such. Mathematical Theory of Domains takes an alternative approach, presenting domain theory very much from a pure mathematical standpoint. This approach is to be applauded. The mathematical theory of domains is more than sufficiently rich to deserve such a presentation, and previous expositions from this viewpoint have appeared only as unpublished notes, or as chapters in handbooks. Therefore, the authors have identified a genuine gap in the market. The question is how well they have filled it.

[...]

In summary, this book tackles the worthy goal of presenting domain theory as an interesting mathematical theory in its own right. Although the presentation is not completely to my taste, the book is well written and does contain a wealth of valuable material, especially in its second half. I would not entirely endorse it as an introductory textbook, but it is highly recommended as a useful and informative addition to any researcher’s bookshelf.

Alex Simpson
University of Edinburgh

*Review copies of books which might be of interest to the readers of Science of Computer Programming should be sent to Prof. K. Apt (address: see inside front cover). Proceedings of conferences will not normally be reviewed.

0167-6423/98/$19.00 © 1998 Published by Elsevier Science B.V. All rights reserved.

Figure 2: Example of an article opening (a mocked-up example from which some text has been removed). Its XML coding can be found in Fig. 3.
Domain theory is the study of certain kinds of mathematical structure, which model notions of approximation in computation ...

Figure 3: XML of the article opening shown in Fig. 2.
Chapter 3 – Journal Article DTD

exam

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1, JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.0'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %language; 'en'
 docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "exm">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 docsubtype ( exm|err ) "exm">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 docsubtype ( exm|err ) "exm">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
 xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
```

38 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Model (JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( exm|err ) "exm">
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, ( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions )+ )>
<!ATTLIST exam
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype ( exm|err ) "exm">
```

### Description

The element `exam` is used to structure an examination article.

### Usage

The element `exam` is one of the top-level elements (doctypes) of the JA DTD. It is used for structuring examinations. Examinations, e.g. for continuous medical education (CME), contain questions and answers. They can occur in the tail of an article but also have an independent existence.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The mandatory attribute `docsubtype` contains the publication item type (p. 56). The values `exm` and `err` are allowed.
- The attribute `xml:lang` specifies the language in which the article is written (default English, `en`). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.
- The fixed attribute `xmlns` sets the default namespace for JA elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with `xmlns:` set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (`xmlns:ce, xmlns:sa` and `xmlns:sb`) and of the XLink standard (`xmlns:xlink`). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.
- `version` is fixed to the first two digits of the version of the DTD.
Version history

In JA DTDs 5.0.1 and 5.0.2, `xml:lang` could only adopt the values English (en, default), French (fr), German (de), Portuguese (pt), Russian (ru), Spanish (es).

As of JA DTD 5.1.0, the value `err` is allowed for `docsubtype`.

See also

`article, book-review, simple-article, ce:exam-questions`
Chapter 3 – Journal Article DTD

head

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:dochead?,
    ce:title, ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
    ce:presented?, ce:dedication?,
    ce:author-group+, ce:date-received?,
    ce:date-revised*, ce:date-accepted?,
    ce:miscellaneous?, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:stereochem* )>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
    ce:dochead?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
    ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
    ce:presented?, ce:dedication?,
    ce:author-group+, ce:date-received?,
    ce:date-revised*, ce:date-accepted?,
    ce:miscellaneous?, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:stereochem* )>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0, JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
    ce:dochead?, ce:label?, ce:title,
    ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title,
    ce:alt-subtitle? )*, ce:presented?,
    ce:dedication?, ce:author-group+,
    ce:date-received?, ce:date-revised*,
    ce:date-accepted?,
    ce:miscellaneous?, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:stereochem* )>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0, JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
    ce:dochead?, ce:label?, ce:title,
    ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title,
    ce:alt-subtitle? )*, ce:presented?,
    ce:dedication?, ce:author-group+,
    ce:date-received?, ce:date-revised*,
    ce:date-accepted?,
    ce:miscellaneous*, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:stereochem* )>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
    ce:dochead?, ce:label?, ce:title,
    ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
    ce:short-title?,
    ce:presented?, ce:dedication?,
    ce:author-group+, ce:date-received?,
    ce:date-revised*, ce:date-accepted?,
    ce:miscellaneous*, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:stereochem*,
    ce:data-availability? )>
```
Description

The element head contains the head or frontmatter of an article.

Usage

The head of an article consists of the article footnotes (ce:article-footnote), markers (ce:markers), the document heading (ce:dochead), a label (e.g., “Chapter 7”) (ce:label), the article title and subtitle (ce:title and ce:subtitle), a sequence of titles and subtitles in an alternative language (ce:alt-title and ce:alt-subtitle), a short version of the title (ce:short-title), presented-by and dedicated-to information (ce:presented and ce:dedication), the author groups (ce:author-group), article history (ce:date-received, ce:date-revised, ce:date-accepted and ce:miscellaneous) abstracts of various classes, each in several possible languages (ce:abstract), keywords and classification codes (ce:keywords), stereochemistry abstracts (ce:stereochem), and a data availability statement (ce:data-availability).

An example of an article opening is shown in Figs. 4 and 5.

The head differs from a simple-head in that the title (ce:title) and the author group (ce:author-group) are mandatory.

Version history

Subelement ce:markers was introduced in JA DTD 5.0.2. Subelement ce:label was introduced in JA DTD 5.1.0.

In JA DTD 5.4.0 the occurrence indicator for ce:miscellaneous changed from ? to *.

In JA DTD 5.6.0 subelements ce:short-title and ce:data-availability were introduced.

Light reading

The complete head is part of HEAD-ONLY and HEAD-AND-TAIL files. A CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY file can only contain ce:article-footnote, ce:title and ce:subtitle, and within ce:author-group only ce:author and ce:collaboration.

See also

book-review-head, simple-head
Electroforming of 3D microstructures on highly structured surfaces

L.S. Johansen a, b, M. Ginnerup b, P.T. Tang c, B. Löchel c, d
a Microelectronics Centre, Technical University of Denmark, Bldg. 345, DK-2800 Lyngby, Denmark
b Department of Manufacturing Engineering, Technical University of Denmark, Bldg. 204, DK-2800 Lyngby, Denmark
c Fraunhofer-Institut für Siliciumtechnologie, Dillenburger Straße 53, D-14199 Berlin, Germany

Received 7 June 1999; received in revised form 8 December 1999; accepted 21 December 1999

Abstract

Electrodeposition of photosensitive resist on highly structured surfaces is combined with electroplating to fabricate three new types of advanced 3D metal microstructures. In one application, electroplated nickel cantilever arrays are formed on the sloped sidewalls of KOH etched silicon. The cantilevers are released by sacrificial etching of copper. In another application it is shown how KOH etched silicon V-grooves can be patterned by electroplated photosensitive resist to generate versatile 3D electroforming moulds. To demonstrate the potential of this technology, an innovative all-nickel cantilever structure with V-shaped cross section and integrated reflection mirror for optical readout has been fabricated. Cantilevers with V-cross section can be designed to have significantly larger out of plane bending stiffness or higher resonant frequency compared to rectangular cantilevers with similar dimensions. A third application uses electroplated photosensitive resist to fabricate copper solenoids on an oxidised silicon support. © 2000 Elsevier Science S.A. All rights reserved.

Keywords: Electroplating; Electrodeposited photosensitive resist; 3D fabrication; Cantilevers; Microsolenoids

1. Introduction

Conventional photosensitive spin coating is an inherently planar technology and does not allow for conformal coating of highly structured surfaces. The advent of electrodeposited (ED) photosensitive resists has made such conformal coatings possible. Due to the self-stopping deposition chemistry, ED resist can coat very uneven surfaces with a uniform layer thickness. The as-deposited resist film has a low water content and therefore only a small tendency to flow. Exposure can be carried out using standard UV mask aligners. Recently, X-ray exposure has also been employed, yielding very high pattern resolution at large mask gaps [1].

The above mentioned advantages of conformal coating have already resulted in a number of MEMS applications such as wafer feed-through leads [2,3], acoustic hole formation on the bottom of a KOH etched back plate for a condenser microphone [4], and patterning of 45° angled silicon mirrors [5]. The major drawback of ED resist is that only conducting surfaces can be coated. This might render it useless for applications where a conductive layer can not be applied. In electroplating processes however, a conductive seed layer is already present, and ED resist can easily be adapted as a plating mould. Since both electrodeposition and electroplating processes have the ability of covering complex topographies, a combination of these has great potential and has not yet been fully explored.

This paper presents three different demonstrations of how electrodeposition of photosensitive resist on highly structured surfaces can be combined with electroplating to form new advanced metallic 3D structures. Hitherto, no releasing of microstructures defined by ED resist has been performed. Two of the demonstrations therefore show how novel released nickel cantilevers can be electroformed using ED photosensitive moulds on non-planar surfaces, thus adding a new degree of freedom to microsystem design. The third application demonstrates an alternative fabrication of microsolenoids, made possible by ED moulds. All three

Figure 4: Example of an article opening. Its XML coding can be found in Fig. 5.
head Chapter 3 – Journal Article DTD

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE article
 PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD full length article DTD version 5.0.1//EN//XML"
 "art501.dtd" [<!ENTITY loc1 SYSTEM "gr1" NDATA IMAGE>]]>
<article docsubtype="fla">
  <item-info>
    <jid>SNA</jid><aid>123</aid><ce:pii>S0924-4247(00)00346-0</ce:pii>
    <ce:doi>10.1016/S0924-4247(00)00346-0</ce:doi>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" yr="2000">Elsevier Science S.A.</ce:copyright>
  </item-info>
  <head>
    <ce:article-footnote><ce:label>&z.star;</ce:label>
      <ce:note-para id="np1">This manuscript is based on a presentation (No. 2A2.4) delivered at the 10th International Conference ...</ce:note-para>
    </ce:article-footnote>
    <ce:title id="t1">Electroforming of 3D microstructures on highly structured surfaces</ce:title>
    <ce:author-group id="aug1">
      <ce:author id="au1" author-id="S0924424700003460-f05c522a646b768dbb52d07bde742250">
        <ce:given-name>L.S.</ce:given-name><ce:surname>Johansen</ce:surname>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr1" refid="aff1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr2" refid="cor1"><ce:sup>*</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
        <ce:e-address id="ea1" type="email">lsj@mic.dtu.dk</ce:e-address>
      </ce:author>
      <ce:author id="au2" author-id="S0924424700003460-401b198351e5dce75dacd651a5d736bf">
        <ce:given-name>M.</ce:given-name><ce:surname>Ginnerup</ce:surname>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="aff1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
      </ce:author>
      <ce:author id="au3" author-id="S0924424700003460-8a409bd26ad44ec9639ee4e20d1804a7">
        <ce:given-name>P.T.</ce:given-name><ce:surname>Tang</ce:surname>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr4" refid="aff2"><ce:sup>b</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
      </ce:author>
      <ce:author id="au4" author-id="S0924424700003460-0d24ea876ff9b7005b48c1fa438fabad">
        <ce:given-name>N.L" ochel</ce:given-name><ce:surname>Lo"ochel</ce:surname>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr5" refid="aff3"><ce:sup>c</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
        <ce:cross-ref id="cr6" refid="fn1"><ce:sup>1</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
      </ce:author>
    </ce:author-group>
    <ce:affiliation id="aff1"><ce:label>a</ce:label>
      <ce:organization>Microelectronics Centre, Technical University of Denmark, Bldg. 345 East, DK-2800 Lyngby, Denmark</ce:organization>
      <ce:address-line>Bldg. 345 East</ce:address-line>
      <ce:city>Lyngby</ce:city><ce:postal-code>DK-2800</ce:postal-code>
      <ce:country>Denmark</ce:country>
    </ce:affiliation>
    <ce:affiliation id="aff2"><ce:label>b</ce:label>
      <ce:organization>Department of Manufacturing Engineering, Technical University of Denmark, Bldg. 204, DK-2800 Lyngby, Denmark</ce:organization>
    </ce:affiliation>
  </head>
</article>
Electrodeposition of photoresist on highly oxidised silicon support.

Electroplating

Electrodeposited photoresist

3D fabrication

Cantilevers

Microcoils
**item-info**

**Declaration**

**Model (JA DTD 5.0.1–JA DTD 5.1.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT item-info ( jid, aid?, ce:pii, ce:doi?,
  ce:document-thread?, ce:copyright,
  ce:doctopics?, ce:preprint? )>
```

**Model (JA DTD 5.2.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT item-info ( jid, aid?, ce:pii, ce:doi?,
  ce:document-thread?, %copyright;,
  ce:doctopics?, ce:preprint? )>
```

**Model (JA DTD 5.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT item-info ( jid, aid?, ce:article-number?,
  ce:pii, ce:doi?, ce:document-thread?, %copyright;,
  ce:doctopics?, ce:preprint? )>
```

**Model (JA DTD 5.5.0, JA DTD 5.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT item-info ( jid, aid?, ce:article-number?, ce:pii,
  ce:doi?, ce:document-thread?, %copyright;,
  ce:doctopics?, ce:preprint?,
  ce:associated-resource* )>
```

**Description**

The element **item-info** contains information about the article.

**Usage**

Item information is contained within **item-info**. The Elsevier system code and article number are present in **jid** and **aid**. A second article ID can be present in **ce:article-number**. This is followed by the PII and optionally the DOI, **ce:pii** and **ce:doi**. The DOI is not always present, since it may be assigned only to items that will be published online.

A relationship with other articles can be made using **ce:document-thread**, e.g. to link an erratum to the original article or to create a discussion thread.

The mandatory **ce:copyright** contains the copyright owner and status of the item. It is followed by **ce:copyright-line** that contains the complete copyright line, which can be used verbatim in rendering. The latter element is optional for backward compatibility reasons; it is currently not required to be present.

The **ce:doctopics** can be used to place the article in a topic hierarchy.

Finally, the subelements **ce:preprint** and **ce:associated-resource** are to link the item with a preprint of the article residing on a preprint server and its associated research data, respectively.

For more information, see the subelements.

*XML*
Version history

In JA DTD 5.2.0 the ce:copyright element was replaced by the %copyright; entity. This entity contains the ce:copyright-line element.

Element ce:article-number was added in JA DTD 5.4.0. Elements ce:preprint and ce:associated-resource were added in JA DTD 5.5.0.
Chapter 3 – Journal Article DTD

jid

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1–JA DTD 5.6.0)
<!ELEMENT jid ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element jid contains the Elsevier system code of the journal.

See also

aid, ce:pii, ce:doi
simple-article

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1, JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
xsns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.0'
xsns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xsns:eb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xsns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xm:lang %language; 'en'
docsbte %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
xsns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
xsns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xsns:eb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xsns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xm:lang %iso639; 'en'
docsbte %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
xsns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
xsns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xsns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSSA.xmlns;
xsns:eb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xsns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xm:lang %iso639; 'en'
docsbte %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
xsns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
xsns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xsns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
xsns:eb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xsns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xm:lang %iso639; 'en'
docsbte %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```
Model (JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-article ( item-info, ce:floats?, simple-head, body?, simple-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-article
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESJA.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;
  xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The element `simple-article` is used to structure a simple article.

Usage

The element `simple-article` is one of the top-level elements (doctype) of the JA DTD. It is used for structuring “simple” articles, such as editorials, obituaries, prefaces, etc. Ironically, simple articles are more complicated in an XML sense, since enforcing strict rules is not always possible due to the great variety of appearances of these articles.

Note that even a full-length article might be structured as a simple article, e.g. when it is delivered as CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The attribute `docsubtype` is the most important one. It is mandatory; its complete list of values is described in the section Publication item types (p. 56).
- The attribute `xml:lang` specifies the language in which the article is written (default English, en). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.
- The fixed attribute `xmlns` sets the default namespace for JA elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with `xmlns:` set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (`xmlns:ce, xmlns:sa` and `xmlns:sb`) and of the XLink standard (`xmlns:xlink`). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.
- `version` is fixed to the first two digits of the version of the DTD.
Version history

In JA DTDs 5.0.1 and 5.0.2, xml:lang could only adopt the values English (en, default) French (fr), German (de), Portuguese (pt), Russian (ru), Spanish (es).

See also

article, book-review, exam
simple-head

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-head ( ce:article-footnote*, ( ce:title
| ( ce:dochead, ce:title? ) ),
ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
ce:author-group*,
ce:date-received?, ce:date-revised*,
ce:date-accepted?, ce:miscellaneous?,
ce:abstract*, ce:keywords*) >
```

Model (JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
| ( ce:title | ( ce:dochead,
| ce:title? ) ), ce:subtitle?,
| ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
ce:author-group*,
ce:date-received?,
ce:date-revised*,
ce:date-accepted?,
ce:miscellaneous?,
ce:abstract*,
ce:keywords*) >
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0, JA DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
| ( ce:label?, ce:title ) |
| ( ce:dochead, ce:label?, ce:title? ) ),
ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
ce:author-group*,
ce:date-received?,
ce:date-revised*,
ce:date-accepted?,
ce:miscellaneous?,
ce:abstract*,
ce:keywords*) >
```

Model (JA DTD 5.4.0, JA DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
| ( ce:label?, ce:title ) |
| ( ce:dochead, ce:label?, ce:title? ) ),
ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
ce:author-group*,
ce:date-received?,
ce:date-revised*,
ce:date-accepted?,
ce:miscellaneous*,
ce:abstract*,
ce:keywords*) >
```

Model (JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-head ( ce:article-footnote*, ce:markers?,
| ( ce:label?, ce:title ) |
| ( ce:dochead, ce:label?, ce:title? ) ),
ce:subtitle?, ( ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle? )*,
ce:short-title?,
ce:author-group*,
ce:date-received?,
ce:date-revised*,
ce:date-accepted?,
ce:miscellaneous*,
ce:abstract*,
ce:keywords*,
ce:data-availability? )>
```

Description

The element `simple-head` contains the head or frontmatter of a “simple” article or an examination item, `simple-article` or `exam`. 

52 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Usage

The head of a simple article consists of the article footnotes (ce:article-footnote), markers (ce:markers), the document heading (ce:dochead), a label (e.g., “Chapter 7”) (ce:label), the article title and subtitle (ce:title, ce:subtitle), a sequence of titles and subtitles in an alternative language (ce:alt-title and ce:alt-subtitle), a short version of the title (ce:short-title), the author groups (ce:author-group), article history (ce:date-received, ce:date-revised, ce:date-accepted and ce:miscellaneous) abstracts of various classes, each in several possible languages (ce:abstract), keywords and classification codes (ce:keywords), and a data availability statement (ce:data-availability).

The simple-head differs from a head in that the title (ce:title) is mandatory in a head, whereas in a simple head there is at least a ce:dochead or a title; the author group (ce:author-group) is mandatory in a head; and in a simple head there is no presented by or dedicated to information and there are no stereochemistry abstracts.

Version history

Subelement ce:markers was introduced in JA DTD 5.0.2. Subelement ce:label was introduced in JA DTD 5.1.0.

In JA DTD 5.4.0 the occurrence indicator for ce:miscellaneous changed from ? to *.

In JA DTD 5.6.0 subelements ce:short-title and ce:data-availability were introduced.

Light reading

The complete head is part of HEAD-ONLY and HEAD-AND-TAIL files. A CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY file can only contain ce:article-footnote, ce:title and ce:subtitle, and within ce:author-group only ce:author and ce:collaboration.

See also

book-review-head, head
simple-tail

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1, JA DTD 5.0.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-tail ( ce:bibliography?, ce:further-reading? )>
<!ATTLIST simple-tail view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (JA DTD 5.1.0–JA DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-tail ( ce:bibliography?, ce:further-reading?,
                    ce:glossary?, ce:biography* )>
<!ATTLIST simple-tail view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `simple-tail` contains the tail of a simple article or book review.

Usage

The tail of a simple article or a book review is contained within `simple-tail`. This element consists of four subelements: an optional `ce:bibliography` (containing the bibliographic references) and an optional `ce:further-reading` (containing the further-reading list), a glossary (`ce:glossary`) and a number of biographies of the authors (`ce:biography`).

Version history

The subelements `ce:glossary` and `ce:biography` were added in JA DTD 5.1.0.

See also

tail
tail

Declaration

Model (JA DTD 5.0.1–JA DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT tail ( ce:bibliography?, ce:further-reading?, ce:glossary?, ce:biography*,
( ce:exam-answers | ce:exam-questions |
ce:exam-reference )* )>

<!ATTLIST tail
  view %view; 'all'>

Description

The element tail contains the tail of an article.

Usage

The tail of an article or a book review is contained within tail. None of its constituents are mandatory, but the element must not be empty.

The tail consists of the bibliographic references (ce:bibliography), a further-reading list (ce:further-reading), a glossary (ce:glossary), a number of biographies of the authors (ce:biography), followed by a sequence of examination questions and answers, and references to earlier examinations (ce:exam-questions, ce:exam-answers, ce:exam-reference). For more information, see these elements.

See also

simple-tail
## PITs: Journal article publication item types

The attribute `docsubtype` of the top-level elements of the journal article DTD contains the publication item type of the article. Its possible values are contained in `%doctype`; and are described here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIT</th>
<th>Short</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abs</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>Abstract of a paper or oral presentation or poster, published as a separate item. A better name would be “very short communication”. These mostly occur in fairly great numbers in conference proceedings, where not all authors are allowed to publish a full-length article. <em>Note.</em> Not to be confused with <code>lit</code> (<em>q.v.</em>). <em>Note.</em> <code>abs</code> refers to one single such thing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>Addendum</td>
<td>Publication item giving additional information regarding another publication item, mostly presenting additional results. <em>Note.</em> Needs a <code>ce:document-thread</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv</td>
<td>Advertisement</td>
<td>Advertisement (mostly commercial, but also including Elsevier’s own).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ann</td>
<td>Announcement</td>
<td>Informative statement with a scope within the context of the publication in which it appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brv</td>
<td>Book review</td>
<td>Book review. <em>Note.</em> <code>brv</code> can only be assigned to a single book review, not to a collection of book reviews which appear under the heading “Book reviews”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cal</td>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>List of forthcoming meetings, symposia, conferences and other events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chp</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Complete chapter in a book series volume. Similar to <code>fla</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cnf</td>
<td>Conference</td>
<td>Information about a conference (can be a description of the venue, but also a visit report of a scientist who has attended a conference). <em>Note.</em> A scientific article in a conference proceedings is not <code>cnf</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con</td>
<td>Contents list</td>
<td>List of publication items published in issue(s) or volume(s) of the publication at hand. <em>Note.</em> This includes volume contents. This PIT is only rarely used, in case a list of contents requires an XML delivery and is handled as a contents entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cor</td>
<td>Correspondence</td>
<td>Letter to the editor or a reply to the letter. <em>Note.</em> The reply needs a <code>ce:document-thread</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cop</td>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>Item detailing the copyright of the work, containing the information traditionally found on the copyright page in the frontmatter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crp</td>
<td>Case report</td>
<td>A detailed report of the symptoms, signs, diagnosis, treatment, and follow-up of an individual patient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>Data article</td>
<td>Publication item describing data; “Data in Brief” articles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIT</td>
<td>Short</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis</td>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td>Argumentative communication, like papers in a discussion, but also perspectives, commentaries, etc. <em>Note.</em> Subsequent discussion papers need a <code>ce:document-thread</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dup</td>
<td>Duplicate</td>
<td>Tombstone article, duplicate of a published article. See ref. [25].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edb</td>
<td>Editorial board</td>
<td>List containing the scientific editors, the managing and executive editors, the board of directors, etc., of the publication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edi</td>
<td>Editorial</td>
<td>From the (guest-) editor of the publication. Can be Foreword, Editorial, Guest-Editorial, Preface, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eoc</td>
<td>Expression of Concern</td>
<td>An Expression of Concern sits somewhere between an Erratum and a Retraction and allows authors or editors to point out a minor form of scientific misconduct such as failure to fully report a conflict of interest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>err</td>
<td>Erratum</td>
<td>Article in which errors are reported that were made in an earlier publication in the same journal. Can be Erratum but also Corrigendum. <em>Note.</em> Needs a <code>ce:document-thread</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exam</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Examination or quiz, with questions and answers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fla</td>
<td>Full-length article</td>
<td>Complete report on original research.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind</td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>List of index terms, possibly cross-referenced against the location of occurrence. It can be an Author index, a Master index, a Subject index, a Materials index, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ins</td>
<td>Insights</td>
<td>A publication item that is neither research article nor review of primary research; it is roughly comparable to an article in the popular science press.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit</td>
<td>Literature alert</td>
<td>Publication item containing information on relevant literature. This includes lists of recently published books, and collections of abstracts of articles published, or to be published, elsewhere (in the same or another journal). <em>Note.</em> Such abstracts should not be confused with articles of type <code>abs</code>. Those are independent, small articles. These are sequences of abstracts of other articles whose bibliographic source is mentioned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lst</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>List of figures, list of tables, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic</td>
<td>Micro article</td>
<td>A very short abstract-like article focusing on research data and methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mis</td>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>All publication items that do not fit in any of the other publication item types mentioned and that do not merit the introduction of a new type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nws</td>
<td>News</td>
<td>Publication item containing new information relevant to the audience of the publication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ocn</td>
<td>Other contents</td>
<td>Contents list of another, related journal. <em>Note.</em> Must be another journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osp</td>
<td>Original software publication</td>
<td>A publication item containing software or a description of software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIT</td>
<td>Short Description</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgl</td>
<td>Practice guidelines</td>
<td>A report that describes guidelines for effective diagnosis or treatment of a medical condition. The report is generally authored by a society, government agency, or working group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro</td>
<td>Protocol</td>
<td>A publication item that provides the detailed procedures and materials needed to reproduce or replicate an experimental method. In essence, a Protocol is a regular article focussing on the materials and methods required to achieve a specified result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prp</td>
<td>Personal report</td>
<td>Bit of a misnomer: it is in fact a report about one or more (living or deceased) persons, e.g. an obituary, a biography, an award ceremony, etc., but it can also include personal historical overviews or reminiscences of the author.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prv</td>
<td>Product review</td>
<td>Product review, i.e. a review of software, hardware, medical products, etc. Note. Not book reviews: see brv. Not conference review: see cnf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pub</td>
<td>Publisher's note</td>
<td>Publisher’s note, which is a message from the Publisher to the readers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rem</td>
<td>Removal</td>
<td>Tombstone article, removed. The article has been retracted and its original text is completely removed from public access. See ref. [26].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>req</td>
<td>Request for assistance</td>
<td>Publication item containing the description of a problem with an appeal to the audience for a solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret</td>
<td>Retraction</td>
<td>Tombstone article, retracted. See ref. [26].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rev</td>
<td>Review article</td>
<td>Substantial overview of original research, usually with a comprehensive bibliography, often with a table of contents. Note. Not a book review: see brv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpl</td>
<td>Replication Studies</td>
<td>Replication Study. A replication of a scientific study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sco</td>
<td>Short communication</td>
<td>Short report or announcement of research, usually claiming certain results, usually with a shorter publication time than other papers in the same publication. Appear under many names, such as letter papers, preliminary notes, notes, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssu</td>
<td>Short survey</td>
<td>Short or mini-review, in appearance much like a short full-length article.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tpg</td>
<td>Title page</td>
<td>Title page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid</td>
<td>Video article</td>
<td>Publication item whose prime content consists of a video accompanied by a description of that video.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the elements in the serial issue DTD, SI DTD. This DTD is used for defining journal issues and book series volumes, i.e., it captures the exact composition of the issue in the form of pointers to the individual items, and it captures the issue's properties such as title, (guest) editors, cover date, etc. A document structured with the SI DTD is often called an issue hub.

The serial issue DTD defines one top-level element: serial-issue.

**CEP version used in this DTD**

The serials issue DTD versions described in this documentation use different versions of the common element pool, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serials issue DTD</th>
<th>Common element pool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SI DTD 5.1.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI DTD 5.2.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI DTD 5.4.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI DTD 5.5.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI DTD 5.6.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.6.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To align the version numbers of the SI DTD, the JA DTD, the Book DTD and the CEP, versions 5.3.0 of the SI DTD and 1.3.0 of the CEP were not created.
abbr-name

Declaration
Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)
<!ELEMENT abbr-name ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description
The element abbr-name contains the official abbreviated name of a conference.

Usage
See conference-info.
conference-info

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT conference-info ( full-name?, abbr-name?, venue?, date-range? )>

Description

The element conference-info contains information about a conference.

Usage

Issues can be related to a conference or contain the proceedings of a conference. In that case, information about the conference is captured with conference-info.

The full-name contains the full name of the conference if it is different from the title of the issue. Often, a conference also has an commonly known abbreviated name, abbr-name. The location where the conference took place is captured with venue. A subelement date-range is provided for the date or date range when the conference took place. The four subelements are optional, but conference-info must not be empty.

XML

```xml
<conference-info>
  <full-name>Foundations of Software Science and Computation Structures</full-name>
  <abbr-name>FOSSACS 2001</abbr-name>
  <venue>Genova, Italy</venue>
  <date-range>
    <start-date>20010402</start-date>
    <end-date>20010404</end-date>
  </date-range>
</conference-info>

<conference-info>
  <full-name>Periglacial Geomorphology at the Beginning of the 21st Century</full-name>
  <venue>Tokyo, Japan</venue>
  <date-range>
    <start-date>20010825</start-date>
  </date-range>
</conference-info>
```

See also
date-range
cover-date

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT cover-date ( date-range )>
```

Description

The element `cover-date` contains the cover date of the issue.

Usage

The cover date of the issue is contained within `cover-date` in the form of a `date-range`. It is not always clear for each publication what the cover date is. Some serial publications do not carry a cover date on the cover of their printed issues. ScienceDirect®, however, displays the cover date prominently with each issue in the issue list for each journal or book series, and uses it to determine the publication year when it generates the bibliographic data for the items in the issue. For lack of a more precise definition, the date displayed there is the cover date contained in this element.
**Declaration**

**Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT cover-image ( ce:figure )>
```

**Description**

The element `cover-image` contains the cover image of a serial issue.

**Usage**

Cover images are captured with the element `cover-image`.

Structurally, the cover image is associated with the issue using the `ce:figure`, which in this case may not be nested within itself. The `ce:link` element provides the link to the cover image file. An optional caption explaining the featured cover image, copyright information, etc., can be added, using the features of `ce:figure`.

```xml
<cover-image>
  <ce:figure id="fig1">
    <ce:label>Functional Specificity of Small GTPases</ce:label>
    <ce:caption id="c1">
      <ce:simple-para id="sp1">The cover shows eight of the distinct cell morphology classes that were induced by expression of constitutively active Ras superfamily small GTPases. NIH3T3 fibroblasts were transfected with 100 different mutant small GTPases and the observed morphologies were grouped into different classes. The cell in the middle is a cell transfected with a control construct. For further information, please see the article by Heo and Meyer in this issue (pp. <ce:inter-ref id="ir54" xlink:href="doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(03)00307-6">369-381</ce:inter-ref>).</ce:simple-para>
    </ce:caption>
    <ce:link locator="cover" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.7" xlink:href="pii:S0735065115X00082/cover"/>
  </ce:figure>
</cover-image>
```

**Presentation**

See Figure 6 (p. 82) for a possible representation.

**See also**

`ce:figure`
date-range

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT date-range ( start-date, end-date? )>

Description

The element date-range contains the date range in EFFECT date format.

Usage

The element date-range consists of a start-date and an optional end-date, both in EFFECT format.

The EFFECT date format has one of three EFFECT date forms.

- YYYY, denoting a year.
- YYYYMM, where YYYY is a year, and MMM is a month, season or quarter. If MMM ranges between 01 and 12, then it denotes a month (January to December). If MMM ranges between 21 and 24, then it denotes a season (21: Spring, 22: Summer, 23: Autumn, 24: Winter). If MMM ranges between 31 and 34, then it denotes a quarter (31: 1st Quarter, 32: 2nd Quarter, 33: 3rd Quarter, 34: 4th Quarter).
- YYYYMMDD, denoting a day.

The end-date must be of the same EFFECT date form as the start-date.

There is also an EFFECT date range format, containing a slash. This must not be used.

XML

<date-range><start-date>2003</start-date></date-range>
<date-range><start-date>200305</start-date></date-range>
<date-range><start-date>200331</start-date></date-range>
<date-range><start-date>20040229</start-date></date-range>
<date-range>
  <start-date>200305</start-date>
  <end-date>200307</end-date>
</date-range>
<date-range>
  <start-date>20030530</start-date>
  <end-date>20030601</end-date>
</date-range>
<date-range>
  <start-date>20030530</start-date>
  <end-date>20030531</end-date>
</date-range>

Presentation

2003
May 2003
First quarter 2003
29 February 2003
May – July 2003
30 May – 1 June 2003
30–31 May 2003
editors

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT editors ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The element *editors* contains the names of the (guest) editors of a serial issue in an unstructured format.

Usage

See title-editors-group.

XML

<editors>P. Johnson and K.S. Agarwal</editors>

This element is provided for backward compatibility with the EFFECT dataset.toc dataset description file.
end-date

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)
<!ELEMENT end-date ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element end-date contains the end date of a date range in EFFECT format.

Usage

See date-range.
full-name

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT full-name ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The element full-name contains the full name of a conference if it is different from the issue title.

Usage

See conference-info.
iss-first

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)
<!ELEMENT iss-first ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element iss-first contains the issue number, or the first issue number in an issue number range, of a serial issue.

Usage

See volume-issue-number.
iss-last

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT iss-last ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element iss-last contains the last issue number in an issue number range of a serial issue.

Usage

See volume-issue-number.
issue-body

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

\[
\text{<!ELEMENT issue-body ( ( ce:include-item | issue-sec )+)>
}\]

Description

The element issue-body provides the link between the issue and the items in that issue. It is both a “hub” and the source for the table of contents.

Usage

The issue body consist of all items that belong to the issue. These items are referred to via the generic ce:include-item element. Thus it acts as hub for the whole issue, but it also acts as the table of contents of the issue. The items can be grouped in sections, issue-sec, that must have a section title. These sections can be nested. In this way, second-, third- and fourth-order headings within the table of contents are supported. Headings of higher order than that, though possible according to the DTD, are not allowed. In files structured according to the SI DTD, the title subelements of ce:include-item are not used.

XML

\[
\text{<issue-body>
\text{  <issue-sec id="is1">}
\text{  \hspace{1em} <section-title id="st1">Nuclear Structure and Dynamics</section-title>}
\text{  \hspace{1em} <include-item>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <pii>S0375-9474(02)01400-8</pii>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <doi>10.1016/S0375-9474(02)01400-8</doi>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <pages>
\text{  \hspace{3em} <first-page>355</first-page>
\text{  \hspace{3em} <last-page>390</last-page>
\text{  \hspace{2em} </pages>
\text{  \hspace{1em} </include-item>}
\text{  \hspace{1em} ...}
\text{  \hspace{1em} <include-item>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <pii>S0375-9474(02)01372-6</pii>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <doi>10.1016/S0375-9474(02)01372-6</doi>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <pages>
\text{  \hspace{3em} <first-page>463</first-page>
\text{  \hspace{3em} <last-page>477</last-page>
\text{  \hspace{2em} </pages>
\text{  \hspace{1em} </include-item>}
\text{  </issue-sec>}
\text{\hspace{1em} </issue-body>}
\text{<issue-sec id="is2">}
\text{  <section-title id="s2">Hadronic Physics</section-title>}
\text{  <include-item>
\text{  \hspace{1em} <pii>S0375-9474(02)01371-4</pii>
\text{  \hspace{1em} <doi>10.1016/S0375-9474(02)01371-4</doi>
\text{  \hspace{1em} <pages>
\text{  \hspace{2em} <first-page>481</first-page>
\text{  \hspace{2em} </pages>
\text{  </include-item>}
\text{  </issue-sec>}
\text{</issue-body>}
\]}

70 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Presentation

Nuclear Structure and Dynamics
Nuclear structure of $^{126}$Te studied with the ($n, \gamma$) reaction 355

M. Sambataro
RPA-like calculations within limited particle–hole spaces 463

Hadronic Physics
F. Neumann, M. Buballa and M. Oertel
Mixed phases of color superconducting quark matter 481

M. P. Rekalo and E. Tomasi-Gustafsson
Determination of the $g_{V\gamma}$ coupling constant through the process $\gamma + N \rightarrow N + V$ with circularly polarized photons 632

Intermediate and High Energy Heavy Ion Physics
C. Fuchs and T. Gaitanos
Consequences of kinetic non-equilibrium for the nuclear equation-of-state in heavy ion collision 643

Nuclear Astrophysics
E. Holmlund and J. Suhonen
Microscopic nuclear structure calculations for the solar-neutrino detector $^{71}$Ga and close-lying isobars 673

Errata
H. Nakada and M. Sato

Cumulative author index 699

Add-on items, short commentaries that follow an item, are included with ce:include-items. The main item does not possess a role attribute. The add-on items have the role attribute set to add-on.

The element ce:include-item possesses a view attribute. This can be used to include different items depending on the view. See the section on Views.

If an item comprises just one page, the ce:last-page is not present.

Rendering notes

It can happen that an issue-sec is not followed by another issue-sec but by further ce:include-items. In the example given above, this is the case for the “Cumulative author index” at the end of the issue. Visual separation is required in order to prevent the impression that the item belongs to be preceding issue-sec.
### issue-data

#### Declaration

**Model (SI DTD 5.1, SI DTD 5.2)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT issue-data ( cover-date, ce:pages+, cover-image?,
   issue-designation?, title-editors-group* )>
```

**Model (SI DTD 5.4–SI DTD 5.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT issue-data ( cover-date, ce:pages*, cover-image?,
   issue-designation?, title-editors-group* )>
```

#### Description

The element `issue-data` contains the data belonging to the issue itself.

#### Usage

The element `issue-data` consists of `cover-date`, the mandatory cover date; `ce:pages`, an optional series of one or more page ranges, detailing the page ranges that occur in the issue; `cover-image`, an optional image of the (paper) issue’s cover; `issue-designation`, an optional subtitle or section of the serial publication; and optional title, editors, conference information, etc., in `title-editors-group`.

The page ranges of the issue, captured with a series of `ce:pages`, include only the “interior” page ranges of the serial issue, unless front- or backmatter ranges are of great importance.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:pages>
  <ce:first-page>1</ce:first-page>
  <ce:last-page>300</ce:last-page>
</ce:pages>
<ce:pages>
  <ce:first-page>L1</ce:first-page>
  <ce:last-page>L38</ce:last-page>
</ce:pages>
```

**Presentation**

Possible rendering: *Pages 1–300, L1–L38*

In case the articles in the issue do not have page numbers, the issue also has no page numbers. In that case `ce:pages` does not occur.

A journal issue or book series volume can be associated with more than one conference, e.g. two thin special issues in one issue. For this reason there can be more than one `title-editors-group`. It is, however, impossible to indicate which items in the serial issue are associated with which title and editors group — this can only be made clear by using meaningful `issue-secs`.

For more information about the remaining subelements of `issue-data`, see these subelements.
Version history

In the 5.4.0 DTD the occurrence indicator of element `ce:pages` was changed from `+` to `*`. 
issue-designation

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT issue-designation ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The element issue-designation contains a subtitle or section of the serial publication to which the issue belongs.

Usage

For some publications, the issues belong to a certain section or “sub-journal” or “sub-series”. The element issue-designation can be used to store that information.

XML

<issue-designation>Logic, semantics and theory of programming</issue-designation>

XML

<issue-designation>Field Theory and Statistical Systems</issue-designation>

Explanation

The issues of the journal Theoretical Computer Science carry a subtitle “Algorithms, complexity and games” or “Logic, semantics and theory of programming”. The issues of the journal Nuclear Physics B carry a subtitle “Field Theory and Statistical Systems”, “Physical Mathematics” or “Particle Physics”. This is the way to capture that property of the issue.
issue-info

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT issue-info (ce:pii, ce:doi?, jid, ce:issn,
volume-issue-number, ce:isbn? )>
```

Description

The element `issue-info` contains the identifiers that uniquely identify the issue.

Usage

An issue in a serial publication has several equivalent identifiers that can be used to retrieve the issue.

An issue has its own “publishable item identifier”, PII, stored within `ce:pii`. An optional digital object identifier, DOI can also be assigned to the issue, `ce:doi`. The issue PII may have an “X” in the first position of the five-digit component.

An alternative form of issue identification is by the Elsevier internal system code, called JID (an abbreviation of journal ID) and volume/issue number. The serial publication is identified in two ways: by code, `jid` and by the ISSN, `ce:issn`. In view of publication evolution and the importance of correctly assigning an issue to a publication, both are present. The volume/issue number is captured using the subelement `volume-issue-number`.

Finally, some serial publications assign ISBNs to their volumes or issues, e.g. in the case of all book series. The optional `ce:isbn` is used to store the ISBN.

XML

```xml
<issue-info>
<ce:pii>S9999-9994(03)X7607-2</ce:pii>
<jid>ENDEND</jid>
<ce:issn>9999-9994</ce:issn>
<volume-issue-number>
  <vol-first>31</vol-first>
  <iss-first>5</iss-first>
</volume-issue-number>
</issue-info>
```
issue-sec

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT issue-sec (ce:section-title?, (ce:include-item | issue-sec)+)>
<!ATTLIST issue-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.2–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT issue-sec (ce:section-title?, (ce:include-item | issue-sec)+)>
<!ATTLIST issue-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  group-id IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `issue-sec` is used to group items within the issue under a common heading.

Usage

Many issues contain a hierarchical structure of their items. This structure usually reveals itself in the table of contents, that may contain first-order headings or higher-order headings. This grouping of items is accomplished using the element `issue-sec`. It consists of a `ce:section-title` containing the heading, a number of included items and/or nested item sections.

An issue can contain one or more “special issues”. Additional properties of such an issue are captured in `title-editors-group`. The items in such an issue should be placed in an `issue-sec` which can then refer to a `title-editors-group` by means of its attribute `group-id`.

XML

```xml
<serial-issue>
  <issue-info>...</issue-info>
  <issue-data>...
    <title-editors-group id="teg1">
      <ce:title id="t1">Fourth International Conference on Business Process Management (BPM 2006)</ce:title>
      <ce:subtitle id="st1">Four selected and extended papers</ce:subtitle>
      <ce:editors>...</ce:editors>
    </title-editors-group>
    <title-editors-group id="teg2">
      <ce:title id="t2">8th International Conference on Enterprise Information Systems (ICEIS' 2006)</ce:title>
      <ce:subtitle id="st2">Three selected and extended papers</ce:subtitle>
      <ce:editors>...</ce:editors>
    </title-editors-group>
  </issue-data>
</serial-issue>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Although `ce:section-title` is declared optional in the DTD, it must always be present. For more information, see `issue-body`.

**Version history**

The `group-id` attribute was added in version 5.2.0 of the DTD.
**jid**

**Declaration**

**Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT jid ( %string.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `jid` contains the Elsevier system code of the serial publication.

**See also**

`ce:pii`, `ce:doi`
serial-issue

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT serial-issue ( issue-info, issue-data, issue-body )>
<!ATTLIST serial-issue
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESSI.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xmllang %language; 'en'>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT serial-issue ( issue-info, issue-data, issue-body )>
<!ATTLIST serial-issue
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESSI.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xmllang %iso639; 'en'>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.4)

```xml
<!ELEMENT serial-issue ( issue-info, issue-data, issue-body )>
<!ATTLIST serial-issue
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESSI.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xmllang %iso639; 'en'>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT serial-issue ( issue-info, issue-data, issue-body )>
<!ATTLIST serial-issue
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESSI.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xmllang %iso639; 'en'>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT serial-issue ( issue-info, issue-data, issue-body )>
<!ATTLIST serial-issue
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESSI.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xmllang %iso639; 'en'>
```
Chapter 4 – Serial Issue DTD

Description

The element `serial-issue` contains a serial issue.

Usage

The element `serial-issue` is the top-level element (single doctype) of the SI DTD. It is used for structuring serial issues. It captures the data of the issue, and acts as a “hub” for the items in the issue.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The attribute `xml:lang` specifies the language in which the issue hub is written (default English, en). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.
- The fixed attribute `xmlns` sets the default namespace for SI elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with `xmlns:` set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (`xmlns:ce` and `xmlns:sb`) and of the XLink standard (`xmlns:xlink`). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.
- `version` is fixed to 5.6, i.e. the first two digits of the version of the DTD.

Figures 6 and 7 on the following pages show an example of a serial issue.

Figure 8 (p. 85) shows an example of a serial issue that uses article numbers. Note there is no `ce:pages` element.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

May 2, 2003: 113 (3)

"Functional Specificity of Small GTPases"
[Cover Caption]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previews</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p53 and TGF-ß in Development: Prelude to Tumor Suppression? Malcolm Whitman and Frank McKeon [Summary] [Full Text] [PDF]</td>
<td>275-276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tRNA Structure Goes from L to P</td>
<td>Paul Schimmel and Koji Tamura [Summary] [Full Text] [PDF]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate Regulation of an Extended Chromosome Domain</td>
<td>Vincent C. Calhoun and Michael Levine [Summary] [Full Text] [PDF]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minireview</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Stem Cell Concept in Plants: A Matter of Debate</td>
<td>Thomas Laux [Summary] [Full Text] [PDF]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Articles</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stereotyped Pruning of Long Hippocampal Axon Branches Triggered by Retraction Inducers of the Semaphorin Family</td>
<td>Anil Bagri, Hwai-Jong Cheng, Avraham Yaron, Samuel J. Pleasure, and Marc Tessier-Lavigne [Summary] [Full Text] [PDF] [Supplementary Data]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Figure 6: Example of an issue table of contents complete with cover image and a caption. (Based on a real-life example.) Its XML encoding can be found in Figure 7.
The cover shows eight of the distinct cell morphology classes that were induced by expression of constitutively active Ras superfamily small GTPases. NIH3T3 fibroblasts were transfected with 100 different mutant small GTPases and the observed morphologies were grouped into different classes. The cell in the middle is a cell transfected with a control construct. For further information, please see the article by Heo and Meyer in this issue (pp. S0092-8674(03)00307-6).
Figure 7: XML encoding of the issue table of contents shown in Figure 6.
Figure 8: XML encoding of an issue hub file using article numbers. Note there is no `ce:pages` element.
**sponsor**

**Declaration**

Model (SI DTD 5.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sponsor (( %richstring.data; )*>>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.2–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sponsor (( %richstring.data; )*>>
<!ATTLIST sponsor id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **sponsor** contains sponsor text for a conference.

**Usage**

See **sponsors**.

**Version history**

The **id** attribute was added in version 5.2.0 of the DTD.
sponsors

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT sponsors ( sponsor+ )>

Description

The element sponsors contains information about one or more sponsors of a conference or sponsors of the serial issue.

Usage

When a conference or a journal issue or book series volume is sponsored, the element sponsors is used to capture this information.

The element sponsor does not generate any text itself, therefore the full “sponsored by” text is captured within sponsor.

XML

<sponsors>
  <sponsor id="sp1">Sponsored by Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals</sponsor>
</sponsors>

XML

<sponsors>
  <sponsor id="sp2">Sponsored by Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals and GlaxoSmithKline</sponsor>
</sponsors>

XML

<sponsors>
  <sponsor id="sp3">This issue was partially funded by a grant from the Clay Mathematics Institute</sponsor>
</sponsors>

The second example shows that it is possible to have two sponsors within sponsor. If there is the need to have more than one sponsor text it is possible to use more sponsor elements. Examples of this are sponsor texts in different languages or texts of a different nature that one would like to separate.

XML

<sponsors>
  <sponsor id="sp4">Sponsored by Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals</sponsor>
  <sponsor id="sp5">The conference was made possible by a grant from the National Science Foundation</sponsor>
</sponsors>

XML

<sponsors>
  <sponsor id="sp6">Sponsored by Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals</sponsor>
  <sponsor id="sp7">Gesponsort durch Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals</sponsor>
</sponsors>
Chapter 4 – Serial Issue DTD

start-date

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT start-date ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element `start-date` contains the start date of a date range in EFFECT format.

Usage

See `date-range`. 
suppl

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT suppl ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element suppl contains the supplementary designation within the volume/issue number of the journal issue, for supplements, parts and indexes.

Known bugs, hacks and problems

Note that “supplementary designation” doesn’t necessarily indicate a supplement.

Usage

See volume-issue-number.
title-editors-group

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT title-editors-group ( ( %titles; )?, conference-info?, ( editors | ce:editors )?, sponsors? )>
```

Model (SI DTD 5.2–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT title-editors-group ( ( %titles; )?, conference-info?, ( editors | ce:editors )?, sponsors? )>
<!ATTLIST title-editors-group
    id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `title-editors-group` contains information belonging to a serial issue.

Usage

The element `title-editors-group` contains information about the serial issue, such as its title, its editors, etc.

Journal issues are either “regular” or “special”. Special issues also include proceedings and thematical or topical issues. They have additional properties above those of a regular issue. In particular, they may possess a title, (guest) editors, and can belong to a conference.

A volume in a book series can also have one or more of these properties.

The element `title-editors-group` is provided for capturing the above-mentioned properties of a serial issue. An issue can have zero or more of these elements. If it has none, then the issue must be regular. If it has more than one, then it indicates that the issue in fact contains more than one “special issue”. The items in such a “special issue” should be placed in an `issue-sec` which can then refer to a `title-editors-group` by means of its attribute `group-id`. See `issue-sec` for an example.

The title of the serial issue can be captured with `ce:title`. In addition to the title, there can optionally be a subtitle (`ce:subtitle`), titles in an alternative language (`ce:alt-title`), and subtitles in an alternative language (`ce:alt-subtitle`).

If the serial issue is related to a conference, then the details of that conference is contained in `conference-info`.

Serial issues may have (guest) editors. These can be captured in two alternative ways. One is in the form of an unstructured string of names (`editors`), the other is a structured list of editors (`ce:editors`, for more information see the description of that element). These (guest) editors should not be confused with the Editorial Board members. Those are captured in a separate document with `docsubtype` equal to `edb`.

One or more sponsors can be associated with the issue (or with the conference). These are captured within `sponsors`.

XML
Chapter 4 – Serial Issue DTD

<title-editors-group id="teg4">
  <ce:title id="ttl3">Restless Legs Syndrome</ce:title>
  <ce:editors>
    <ce:author-group id="aug1">
      <ce:author id="au1" author-id="S1389945700X00202-33a3af23717d01de8044bdbc38a1ed4">
        <ce:degrees>Dr</ce:degrees>
        <ce:given-name>Sudhansu</ce:given-name>
        <ce:surname>Chokroverty</ce:surname>
      </ce:author>
      <ce:affiliation id="aff1">
        <ce:textfn>Saint Vincents Hospital and Medical Center, 153 West 11th St., Cronin 466, New York, NY 10011, USA</ce:textfn>
        <sa:affiliation>
          <sa:organization>Saint Vincents Hospital and Medical Center</sa:organization>
          <sa:address-line>153 West 11th St.</sa:address-line>
          <sa:address-line>Cronin 466</sa:address-line>
          <sa:city>New York</sa:city>
          <sa:postal-code>NY 10011</sa:postal-code>
          <sa:country>USA</sa:country>
        </sa:affiliation>
      </ce:affiliation>
    </ce:author-group>
  </ce:editors>
</title-editors-group>

XML

<title-editors-group id="teg1">
  <ce:title id="ttl1">Buprenorphine and Buprenorphine/Naloxone: A Guide For Clinicians</ce:title>
  <editors>Paul J. Fudala and T. Peter Bridge</editors>
  <sponsors><sponsor>Supported by Reckitt Benckiser Pharmaceuticals Inc.</sponsor></sponsors>
</title-editors-group>

XML

<title-editors-group id="teg1">
  <ce:title id="ttl2">Statphys-Taiwan-2002: Lattice Models and Complex Systems</ce:title>
  <conference-info>
    <venue>Taipei and Taichung, Taiwan</venue>
    <date-range>
      <start-date>20020526</start-date>
      <end-date>20020601</end-date>
    </date-range>
  </conference-info>
  <editors>Chin-Kun Hu and K.-t. Leung</editors>
</title-editors-group>

Element editors is provided for backward compatibility with the EFFECT dataset.toc dataset description file.
Version history

The \texttt{id} attribute was added in version 5.2.0 of the DTD.
**venue**

**Declaration**

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT venue ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element *venue* contains the location where the conference took place.

**Usage**

See *conference-info*. 
vol-first

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)

<!ELEMENT vol-first ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element vol-first contains the volume number, or the first volume in a volume number range, of a serial issue.

Usage

See volume-issue-number.
vol-last

Declaration

Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)
<!ELEMENT vol-last ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element vol-last contains the last volume in a volume number range of a serial issue.

Usage

See volume-issue-number.
**volume-issue-number**

**Declaration**

**Model (SI DTD 5.1–SI DTD 5.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT volume-issue-number ( vol-first, ( ( vol-last, suppl ) |
( iss-first, iss-last?, suppl? ) | suppl )))>
```

**Description**

The element `volume-issue-number` contains the volume/issue number of the issue.

**Usage**

Each issue has a “volume/issue number”, which can be broken into different parts: the volume or volume range, the issue or issue range, and the supplementary information. This is captured in up to five elements, `vol-first`, `vol-last`, `iss-first`, `iss-last`, `suppl`.

The `suppl` element may only contain the following:

- C, for “complete”,
- P, for “part”, optionally followed by a number or a capital letter,
- I, for “index”, optionally followed by a number or a capital letter,
- S, for “supplement”, optionally followed by a number or a capital letter.

(Here “number” is a positive integer, 1, 2, 3, . . .) In the case of a P100 delivery the `suppl` element may also contain an F, for “spin-off”, optionally followed by a single digit, or one of the above options followed by F optionally followed by a single digit.

Note that “supplementary information” doesn’t necessarily indicate a supplement.

**XML**

```xml
<volume-issue-number>
  <vol-first>4</vol-first>
  <iss-first>4</iss-first>
</volume-issue-number>

<volume-issue-number>
  <vol-first>192</vol-first>
  <iss-first>1</iss-first>
  <iss-last>3</iss-last>
</volume-issue-number>

<volume-issue-number>
  <vol-first>227</vol-first>
  <vol-last>228</vol-last>
  <suppl>C</suppl>
</volume-issue-number>

<volume-issue-number>
  <vol-first>50</vol-first>
  <suppl>I</suppl>
</volume-issue-number>
```
Presentation

4/4
192/1–3
227–228
Vol. 50, Master Index
Vol. 73, Supplement 1
Vols. 42–45, Part B
This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the elements in the Elsevier Book DTD and its predecessor, the Elsevier Health Sciences Book DTD. This DTD has the following top-level elements: book, chapter, simple-chapter, examination, fb-non-chapter, glossary, index, introduction, bibliography. These top-level elements provide the option to define the structure of the book (book) and the content of the book (the other top-level elements). The former contains metadata and hierarchy of the book project, and it "calls" the chapters, the index, etc. using the ce:include-item element. This is why it is often referred to as the "hub" of the book.

In serial publications, items and issue hubs are structured with two different DTDs, the JA DTD and the SI DTD. This is due to historical reasons. In the Elsevier Book DTD, all aspects of a book are supported.

**CEP version used in this DTD**

The Book DTD versions described in this documentation make use of different versions of the common element pool, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book DTD</th>
<th>Common element pool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EHS Book DTD 5.1.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHS Book DTD 5.1.1</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.2.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.2.1</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.3.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.3.1</td>
<td>CEP 1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.4.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.5.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book DTD 5.6.0</td>
<td>CEP 1.6.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To align the version numbers of the JA DTD, the Book DTD and the CEP, version 1.3.0 of the CEP was not created.

**Parameter entities**

The Book DTDs add element ce:index-flag to parameter entities %spar.data; and %par.data; by means of the local parameter entities %local.spar.data; and %local.par.data;. The effect is that ce:index-flag can be used in any element that has %spar.data; or %par.data; in its model. In the same way ce:br is added to parameter entity %textfn.data;.

```
<!ENTITY % local.spar.data "| ce:index-flag">
```
<!ENTITY % local.par.data  "| ce:index-flag">
<!ENTITY % local.textfn.data  "| ce:br">
bibliography

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:further-reading+ )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "bib">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:label?, ce:further-reading* )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "bib">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ce:further-reading* )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "bib">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ce:further-reading* )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( bib|ret|rem|dup ) "bib">
```
Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ce:further-reading* )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( bib|ret|rem|dup )
    "bib">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT bibliography ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-
    reading )* )>
<!ATTLIST bibliography
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( bib|ret|rem|dup )
    "bib">
```

Description

The element `bibliography` is used to capture book-level bibliographies that sometimes appear in a book’s back matter.

Usage

The `bibliography` element is used to capture a book-level bibliography when they appear in the back matter of a book. When used, `bibliography` will always appear as a top-level element, with its own DOCTYPE declaration/PUBLIC identifier appearing at the top of the XML file. A `bibliography` gets called into the book’s hub XML file by a `ce:include-item` element.

Content for `bibliography` consists of required `info` followed by optional `ce:label`, optional `ce:title`, and optional/repeatable `ce:further-reading`.

It has an optional `role`, along with several required attributes:

- `id`
- `version`: 5.4
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en
- `docsubtype`: bib (default value), ret, rem or dup

XML
Chapter 5 – Book DTD bibliography

<DOCTYPE bibliography PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD book DTD version 5.4.0//EN//XML" "book540.dtd []>
<bibliography docsubtype="bib" id="bibiog">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:title id="ttl1">Bibliography</ce:title>
  <ce:further-reading id="fr1">
    ...
  </ce:further-reading>
</bibliography>

Version history

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role and the optional subelement ce:label were added, and ce:further-reading was made optional/repeatable to allow for Ultralight delivery of book backfile projects.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 the ce:title was added to allow for proper title and tagging in sync with other DOCTYPES.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 three more possible values were added for attribute docsubtype.

The ce:section-title element, child of ce:bibliography should no longer be used for Bibliography item titles.
body

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0–Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT body ( volume | part | section | ce:include-item )+>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT body ( volume | part | section | ce:include-item )+>
<!ATTLIST body role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `body` is used to capture all of the material that appears between the front and rear of Elsevier books.

Usage

The `body` element is used to delimit and capture the material that appears between the front and rear in Elsevier books. It consists of required and repeatable `volumes` and/or `parts` and/or `sections` and/or `ce:include-item`.

It has an optional `role`. There are two roles defined for use in major reference works: `ToC` if the body contains a table of contents, and `SubjClass` if the body contains a subject classification.

The element `body`, child of `book`, appears in the hub file for the book. If present, any hierarchy above chapters (e.g. volume, parts, sections) should also be captured using this content model within the hub file.

Lower-level items (doctypes chapter, introduction, examination, and in very rare cases bibliography) within the body get called in to the hub file using `ce:include-item` elements. Other doctypes usually do not get called into `body`.

```xml
<body>
  <volume id="vI"><ce:label>Volume I</ce:label>
    <part id="pA"><ce:label>Part A</ce:label>
      <ce:title id="t1">GENERAL ISSUES AND APPROACH TO DISEASE IN PRIMARY CARE MEDICINE</ce:title>
      <ce:include-item>
        <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
        <ce:title id="t2">Introduction</ce:title>
        <ce:pages>
          <ce:first-page>1</ce:first-page>
          <ce:last-page>8</ce:last-page>
        </ce:pages>
      </ce:include-item>
    </part>
  </volume>
  <section id="s1"><ce:label>Section 1</ce:label>
    <ce:title id="t3">Core Issues and Special Groups</ce:title>
  </section>
</body>
```

XML
Version history

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 the optional attribute role was added.
book

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front, body, rear )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA "%ESBK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  version CDATA "5.2" #FIXED
  xmlns:ce CDATA "%ESCE.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xmlns:xlink CDATA "%XLINK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xml:lang %language; "en"
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "bk">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front?, body, rear? )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA "%ESBK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  version CDATA "5.2" #FIXED
  xmlns:ce CDATA "%ESCE.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xmlns:xlink CDATA "%XLINK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xml:lang %language; "en"
  docsubtype %docsubtype; "bk">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front?, body+, rear? )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA "%ES.xmlns;" #FIXED
  version CDATA "5.3" #FIXED
  xmlns:ce CDATA "%ESCE.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xmlns:xlink CDATA "%XLINK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xml:lang %iso639; "en"
  docsubtype %docsubtype-book; "bk">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front?, body+, rear? )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA "%ES.xmlns;" #FIXED
  version CDATA "5.4" #FIXED
  xmlns:ce CDATA "%ESCE.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xmlns:xlink CDATA "%XLINK.xmlns;" #FIXED
  xml:lang %iso639; "en"
  docsubtype %docsubtype-book; "bk">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front?, body+, rear? )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA "%ES.xmlns;" #FIXED
  version CDATA "5.5" #FIXED
  xmlns:ce CDATA "%ESCE.xmlns;" #FIXED
```
Chapter 5 – Book DTD

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front?, body+, rear? )>
<!ATTLIST book
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype-book; "bk">
```

Description

The element `book` is the top-level element for Elsevier books. A majority of books should be able to be captured using the content model from this DTD.

Usage

A Book dataset can be used to capture most Elsevier book publications.

Book content consists of a hub file used to reflect hierarchy in body above chapter, as well as to call all of the lower-level doctypes (e.g. chapter, index) into the book. Contrary to serial publications, where the item and the hub have different DTDs for historical reasons, the hub and items of an Elsevier book are structured with different top-level elements (doctypes) of the same DTD.

The hub’s top-level element is `book`. It consists of required `info` and `top`, optional `ce:floats` and optional `front`, required/repeatable `body`, and optional `rear` elements.

It has several required attributes:

- `version`: 5.4
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en (default value)
- `docsubtype-book`: bk (default value), dct, enc or com

XML

```xml
<!DOCTYPE book
  PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD book DTD version 5.4.0//EN//XML"
  "book540.dtd" []>
<book>
  <info>
    ...
  </info>
  <top>
    ...
  </top>
  <front>
    ...
  </front>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 107
<body>
  ...
</body>

<rear>
  ...
</rear>
</book>

**Version history**

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the top-level element changed from ehs~book to book. The subelement top was added as was the attribute docsubtype with fixed value bk.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelements front and rear were made optional.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0, attribute docsubtype, changed from a fixed value of bk, to a default value of bk. Other values are possible (com, dct, or enc), based on the type of book being delivered.

The element body was also made repeatable in v5.3.0 to properly accommodate MRWs into the STAB Book work DTD.
Chapter 5 – Book DTD

**chapter**

**Declaration**

**Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)**

```xml
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST chapter
id ID #REQUIRED
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xml:lang %language; 'en'
docssubtype %docssubtype; #FIXED "chp">
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)**

```xml
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST chapter
id ID #REQUIRED
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xml:lang %language; 'en'
docssubtype %docssubtype; #FIXED "chp">
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)**

```xml
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST chapter
id ID #REQUIRED
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
```
Chapter 5 – Book DTD

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
   ce:label?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
   ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
   poem?, outline?, objectives?,
   ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
   ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter |
   exam )+, ( ( ce:bibliography |
   ce:further-reading )+, ( ce:section |
   exam )* )? )>
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST chapter
   id ID #REQUIRED
   xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
   version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
   xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
   xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
   xml:lang %language; 'en'
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "chp">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
   ce:label?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
   ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
   poem?, outline?, objectives?,
   ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
   ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter |
   exam )+, ( ( ce:bibliography |
   ce:further-reading )+ | ce:section |
   ce:biography ), ( ce:section | exam |
   ce:biography )* )? )>
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST chapter
   xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
   version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
   xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
   xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
   xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
   id ID #REQUIRED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "chp">
```
Model (Book DTD 5.3.1)

```
<!--ELEMENT chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
    ce:author-group*, ce:miscellaneous?,
    ce:abstract*, ce:keywords*,
    ce:displayed-quote?, poem?, outline?, objectives?,
    ce:acknowledgment?, ce:intro?,
    ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* | ce:section |
    ce:biography ), ( ce:section | exam | ce:biography )* )? )>

<!--ATTLIST chapter
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
    id ID #REQUIRED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
docssubtype ( chp|ovw ) "chp">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```
<!--ELEMENT chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label?, %titles;, ce:author-group*,
    ce:miscellaneous*, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:displayed-quote?,
    poem?, outline*, objectives?,
    ce:nomenclature*, ce:acknowledgment?,
    ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter |
    exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* | ce:section |
    ce:biography ), ( ce:section | exam | ce:biography )* )? )>

<!--ATTLIST chapter
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
    id ID #REQUIRED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
docssubtype ( chp|ovw|lit|ret|rem|dup ) "chp">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```
<!--ELEMENT chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label?, %titles;, ce:author-group*,
    ce:miscellaneous*, ce:abstract*,
    ce:keywords*, ce:displayed-quote?,
    poem?, outline*, objectives?,
    ce:nomenclature*, ce:acknowledgment*,
    ce:acknowledgment*,
    ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter |
    exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* | ce:section |
    ce:biography ), ( ce:section | exam | ce:biography )* )? )>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 111
The element **chapter** is used to capture book chapters as individual XML files.

**Usage**

The **chapter** element is used to capture all the material that appears within a book chapter. There is a PUBLIC identifier and a DOCTYPE declaration for chapter, and individual chapter files get called into the book’s hub file using the **ce:include-item** element.

Although the DTD does not restrict where lower-level book doctypes get called into the hub file, the intent is for **chapter** only to be called into **body**, not in **front** or **rear**.

The content for a chapter consists of an optional/repeatable **ce:footnote**, a required **info** and the optional **ce:floats** container. The chapter begins with the (optional) **ce:label**, containing the name of the chapter (“Chapter 4”), the chapter title(s), tagged via **ce:title**, optional **ce:subtitle** and optional/repeatable **ce:alt-title** and **ce:alt-subtitle**, and optional and repeatable **ce:author-group** containing authors and their affiliations. Followed by optional/repeatable **ce:miscellaneous**, optional/repeatable **ce:abstract**, ...
optional/repeatable **ce:keywords**, and optional **ce:data-availability**. The optional subelements **ce:displayed-quote**, **poem**, **outline** (repeatable), optional **objectives** and **ce:nomenclature** (repeatable) also belong to the “head” of the chapter, followed by an optional **ce:conflict-of-interest** and **ce:acknowledgment** (repeatable). An introduction or summary is contained in the optional **ce:intro**.

The main body of the chapter consists of a sequence of **ce:sections**, **subchapter** and/or **exam** elements, followed by optional/repeatable **ce:bibliography** and/or **ce:further-reading**, possibly followed by more **ce:sections** and/or **exams** and/or **ce:biography**s.

It has an optional **role**, along with several required attributes:

- **id**
- **xmlns**: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/book.dtd
- **version**: 5.4
- **xmlns:ce**: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- **xmlns:xlink**: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- **xml:lang**: en (default value)
- **docsubtype**: chp (default value), ovw, lit, vid, rpl, ret, rem or dup

For attribute **role** one value is defined, dictionary, indicating the chapter is a dictionary.

XML

```xml
<chapter id="ch1">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:intro id="in1">
    <ce:para id="p1">Text of opening paragraph...</ce:para>
  </ce:intro>
  <ce:sections>
    <ce:section id="s1">
      <ce:label>1.1</ce:label>
      <ce:section-title id="st1">Summary of Primary Care Today</ce:section-title>
      <ce:para id="p2">Text of opening paragraph...</ce:para>
      <ce:para id="p3">Text second paragraph...</ce:para>
    </ce:section>
    <ce:section id="s2">
      <ce:label>1.2</ce:label>
      <ce:section-title id="st2">Core Issues</ce:section-title>
      <ce:para id="p4">Text of opening paragraph...</ce:para>
    </ce:section>
  </ce:sections>
</chapter>
```
<ce:para id="p5">Text second paragraph...</ce:para>
</ce:section>
</ce:sections>
<ce:bibliography id="bibl1">
...
</ce:bibliography>
</chapter>

**Version history**

In EHS Books DTD 5.1.1 the occurrence indicator for `ce:author-group` changed from ? to *. Element `examination` was replaced by `exam` and the `docsubtype` attribute was added. Elements `poem`, `outline` and `objectives` were added. Element `ce:section` was changed to `ce:sections` to allow chapters to begin with regular paragraphs.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0, an optional/repeatable `ce:footnote` was added to the beginning of the content model for `chapter`. The optional attribute `role` was also added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelement `ce:label` was made optional.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 this release of the DTD added optional `ce:miscellaneous`, optional/repeatable `ce:abstract`, and optional/repeatable `ce:keywords`. The element `ce:biography` was also added to the end of the content model for authors of MRW items.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.1 value `ovw` (overview) was added for attribute `docsubtype`.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 the optional/repeatable elements `ce:alt-title` and `ce:alt-subtitle` were added to the model of `chapter`. Four more possible values were added for attribute `docsubtype`. Also, the occurrence indicator for elements `ce:miscellaneous`, `outline` and `ce:nomenclature` was changed from ? to *.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.5.0 the occurrence indicator for `ce:acknowledgment` changed from ? to * and two more possible values were added for attribute `docsubtype`.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 the elements `ce:conflict-of-interest` and `ce:data-availability` were added and the occurrence indicator for `ce:displayed-quote` was changed from ? to *.

**Light reading**

Note that PreCAP chapters should be done using the doctype `simple-chapter`. 
cover-image

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)
<!ELEMENT cover-image ( ce:figure )>

Description

The element cover-image is used to include cover images for Elsevier books.

Usage

The content for cover-image consists of a single ce:figure.

XML

```xml
<cover-image>
  <ce:figure id="f1">...</ce:figure>
</cover-image>
```

Version history

This element first appeared in Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0. It is optional to be backward compatible with earlier versions of the DTD.
**dedication**

**Declaration**

**Model (Book DTD 5.2.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT dedication ( ce:simple-para+ )>
```

**Description**

The element `dedication` is used to tag dedications from book-level authors or editors that often appear in a book’s front matter material.

**Usage**

Content for `dedication` consists of required/repeatable `ce:simple-para`.

```xml
<dedication>
  <ce:simple-para id="sp03">There are so many people I must thank for the help they provided me in the creation of this book...</ce:simple-para>
  <ce:simple-para id="sp04">And what sort of husband and father would I be if I forgot to mention my wonderful wife and children..."</ce:simple-para>
</dedication>
```

**Version history**

This element first appeared in Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0.

This element should no longer be used after DTD 5.2.0 as dedications are now captured as individual items within `front`. See the CAP guide documentation for detailed guidance.
ehs-book

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ehs-book ( info, top, ce:floats?, front, body, rear )>
<!ATTLIST ehs-book
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "ehs">
```

Description

The element `ehs-book` is the top-level element for Elsevier Health Science books. A majority of books should be able to be captured using the content model from this DTD.

Usage

An EHS Books dataset can be used to capture most Elsevier Health Science book publications.

Book content consists of a hub file used to reflect hierarchy in body above chapter, as well as to call all of the lower-level doctypes (e.g. chapter, index) into the book. Contrary to serial publications, where the item and the hub have different DTDs for historical reasons, the hub and items of an EHS book are structured with different top-level elements (doctypes) of the same DTD.

The hub’s top-level element is `ehs-book`. It consists of required `info` and `top`, optional `ce:floats` and required `front`, `body`, and `rear` elements.

It has several required attributes:

- `version`: 5.1
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common.dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en (default value)
- `docsubtype`: ehs

```xml
<!DOCTYPE ehs-book
  PUBLIC "~/ES/DTD ehs book DTD version 5.1.1//EN//XML"
  "ehs-book511.dtd" []>
<ehs-book>
  <info>
    ...
  </info>
  <top>
    ...
</ehs-book>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Version history

In Book DTD the new element top was added and the attribute docsubtype.

This element is superseded by book from Book DTD 5.2 onwards.
Chapter 5 – Book DTD exam

exam

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0–Book DTD 5.2.1)
<!ELEMENT exam ( ce:title?, ce:exam-questions, ce:exam-answers? )>

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0–Book DTD 5.4.0)
<!ELEMENT exam ( ce:title?, ce:exam-questions, ce:exam-answers? )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0, Book DTD 5.6.0)
<!ELEMENT exam ( ce:title?, ( ( ce:exam-questions, ce:exam-answers? ) | ce:exam-answers ) )>
<!ATTLIST exam
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>

Description

The element exam is used to capture review questions and answers that appear within many different types of books.

Usage

An exam consists of an optional ce:title, followed by a ce:exam-questions or a ce:exam-answers, or both.

It has an optional id, an optional role and an optional view. No roles are currently defined.

XML

```xml
<exam id="exam1">
  <ce:title id="t1">Quiz from Section 1</ce:title>
  <ce:exam-questions id="eq1">
    <ce:section-title id="st1">Questions</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p1">...</ce:para>
  </ce:exam-questions>
  <ce:exam-answers id="eqa2">
    <ce:section-title id="st2">Answers</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p2">...</ce:para>
  </ce:exam-answers>
</exam>
```

Version history

In version 5.3.0 the optional id and role attributes were added. In version 5.5.0 the model was changed allowing for an exam containing only answers. Optional attribute view was added in the same version.
examination

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "exm">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "exm">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "exm">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( exm|ret|rem|dup ) "exm">
```
Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( exm|ret|rem|dup ) "exm">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST examination
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( exm|ret|rem|dup ) "exm">
```

Description

The element `examination` is used to capture review questions that appear as their own item within many different types of books.

Usage

The `examination` element is one of the top-level elements (doctypes) of the Books DTD. It is used to capture a series of review questions when they appear as a separate item in their own XML file, using the examination DOCTYPE and PUBLIC identifier, and is called into the central hub file for the book using the `ce:include-item` element.

The content for `examination` consists of required `info`, optional `ce:floats`, optional `ce:label`, followed by required `ce:title`, optional/repeatable `ce:author-group`, optional `ce:intro`, followed by required/repeatable `exam`.

It has an optional `role`, along with several required attributes:

- `id`
- `version`: 5.4
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en (default value)
- `docsubtype`: exm (default value), ret, rem or dup

XML
Version history

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role was added and subelement exam became optional.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 three more possible values were added for attribute docsubtype.
fb-non-chapter

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)
<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter ( info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
    ce:title, ( ce:author-group
    | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
    ce:section )*, ce:bibliography? )>
<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
    id ID #REQUIRED
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %language; 'en'
    docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)
<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter ( info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
    ce:title, ( ce:author-group
    | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
    ce:section )*, ce:bibliography?,
    ce:further-reading? )>
<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
    id ID #REQUIRED
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %language; 'en'
    docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)
<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter ( info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
    ce:title, ( ce:author-group
    | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
    ce:section )*, ce:bibliography?,
    ce:further-reading? )>
<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
    id ID #REQUIRED
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %language; 'en'
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)
<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter ( info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
    ce:title, ( ce:author-group
    | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
    ce:section )*, ce:bibliography?,
    ce:further-reading? )>
<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter (info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
  ce:title, (ce:author-group | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
  ce:section)*, ce:bibliography?,
  ce:further-reading?)>

<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter (info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
  ce:title, (ce:author-group | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
  ce:section)*, ce:bibliography?,
  ce:further-reading?)>

<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT fb-non-chapter (info, ce:floats?, ce:label?,
  ce:title, (ce:author-group | ce:nomenclature | ce:para |
  ce:section)*, ce:bibliography?,
  ce:further-reading?)>

<!ATTLIST fb-non-chapter
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #REQUIRED>
Description

The element **fb-non-chapter** is used to capture special front and back matter non-chapter divisions as individual XML files.

Usage

The **fb-non-chapter** top-level element is used to capture material that appears in items that occur within the front (such as foreword, preface, about the author, etc.) and back matter (such as appendices) of books. The element should not be used to capture chapters within the book body.

There is a PUBLIC identifier and DOCTYPE declaration for **fb-non-chapter**, and individual XML files get called into the front and rear of the book’s central hub file using the **ce:include-item** element.

A **doctype** attribute is required. The possible values for this attribute include:

- app: Appendix
- bio: Biography or About the Author
- for: Foreword
- pre: Preface
- ack: Acknowledgments
- ctr: Contributors
- rev: Reviewers
- htu: How to Use this Publication
- ded: Dedication
- cop: Copyright
- ret: Retraction
- rem: Removal
- dup: Duplicate
- ovw: Overview
- lit: Literature Review
- edb: Editorial Board
- lst: List

Other values should not be used with **fb-non-chapter**.

The content of **fb-non-chapter** consists of a required **info**, optional **ce:floats**, an optional **ce:label**, an **ce:title**, followed by optional and repeatable group of **ce:author-group** **ce:nomenclature** and/or **ce:para** and/or **ce:sections** (the order is the order as these appear in the book) followed by an optional **ce:bibliography**, followed by optional **ce:further-reading**.

It has an optional **role**, along with several required attributes:

- **id**
- **xmlns**: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/book/dtd
- **version**: 5.4
- **xmlns:ce**: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- **xmlns:xlink**: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- **xml:lang**: en (default value)
- **doctype**
The following `role` values can be used in case the document contains a list (i.e. when the `docsubtype` attribute has the value `lst`):

- `list-of-figures`
- `list-of-tables`

XML

```xml
<!DOCTYPE fb-non-chapter
PUBLIC "-//ES//DTD book DTD version 5.4.0//EN//XML"
"book540.dtd" []>
<fb-non-chapter docsubtype="app" id="appA">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:floats>
  ...
  </ce:floats>
  <ce:label>Appendix A</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t1">Color Plates</ce:title>
  <ce:author-group id="aug1">
  ...
  </ce:author-group>
  <ce:para id="p1">Text of opening paragraph...</ce:para>
  <ce:section is="s1">
    <ce:section-title id="st1">...</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p1">...</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
  <ce:bibliography id="bibl1">
  ...
  </ce:bibliography>
</fb-non-chapter>
```

**Version history**

Element `ce:further-reading` was added in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1 to allow for unnumbered references.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute `role` was added.

In a patch to Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the docsubtype `ded` was added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.1 the docsubtypes `ret` and `ovw` were added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 the docsubtypes `rem`, `dup`, `lit`, `edb` and `lst` were added.

**Light reading**

In a PreCAP delivery where the files are structured according to the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0, an `fb-non-chapter` DOCTYPE is delivered with weight UltraLight.
front

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

<!ELEMENT front ( ce:include-item )+>

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT front( ce:include-item+ )>

Description

The element front is used to capture the front matter of Elsevier books.

Usage

The front element is used to delimit and capture the front matter material in Elsevier books. It consists of required and repeatable ce:include-item elements. The element front, child of book, appears in the hub file for the book.

- The table of contents will be only be delivered as part of the “fat” PDF file for printing. An electronic version of the table of contents is replicated by the hub file and could be used by downstream applications for this purpose.
- The list of contributing authors (docsubtype: ctr) and/or reviewers (docsubtype: rev) should each be converted as a separate fb-non-chapter file and called into front using ce:include-item elements.
- Foreword (docsubtype: for), Preface (docsubtype: pre), Acknowledgments (docsubtype: ack), and Biography (docsubtype: bio), should also be converted as separate fb-non-chapter files and called into front using ce:include-item elements.

XML

<front>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t1">Contributors</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>v</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>vii</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10001-0</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t2">Reviewers</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>viii</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>viii</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10002-2</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t3">Preface</ce:title>
  </ce:include-item>
</front>
glossary

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary (info, ce:glossary+)>
<!ATTLIST glossary
 id ID #REQUIRED
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %language; 'en'
 docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "gls">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary (info, ce:label?, ce:glossary*)>
<!ATTLIST glossary
 id ID #REQUIRED
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %language; 'en'
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "gls">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary (info, ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:glossary*)>
<!ATTLIST glossary
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "gls">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary (info, ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:glossary*)>
<!ATTLIST glossary
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 docsubtype (gls|ret|rem|dup) "gls">
```
Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
                    ce:glossary* )>
<!ATTLIST glossary
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( gls|ret|rem|dup ) "gls">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT glossary ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
                    ce:glossary*, ce:bibliography?,
                    ce:further-reading? )>
<!ATTLIST glossary
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( gls|ret|rem|dup ) "gls">
```

Description

The element `glossary` is used to capture glossaries of special terms that can appear in a book’s back matter.

Usage

The `glossary` element is used to capture a glossary of special terms when they appear in the back matter of a book. When used, glossary will always appear as a top-level element, with its own DOCTYPE declaration and PUBLIC identifier appearing at the top of the XML file. A glossary gets called into the book’s hub file by a `ce:include-item` element.

The content for glossary consists of required `info`, followed by optional `ce:label`, optional `ce:title`, and optional/repeatable `ce:glossary` elements.

It has an optional `role`, along with several required attributes:

- `id`
- `version`: 5.4
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en (default value)
- `docsubtype`: gls (default value), ret, rem or dup

XML
<glossary id="gloss" docsubtype="gls">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:title id="t1">Glossary</ce:title>
  <ce:glossary id="gl1">
    <ce:glossary-sec id="gs1">
      <ce:section-title id="st1">A</ce:section-title>
      <ce:glossary-entry id="ge1">
        <ce:glossary-heading>aardvark</ce:glossary-heading>
        <ce:glossary-def id="gd1">An unusual-looking, long-nosed creature that eats ants.</ce:glossary-def>
      </ce:glossary-entry>
    </ce:glossary-sec>
  </ce:glossary>
</glossary>

Version history

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role and optional subelement ce:label were added. Subelement ce:glossary was made optional/repeatable to allow for Ultra-light delivery of book backfile projects.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 the ce:title was added to allow for proper title tagging in synch with other DOCTYPES.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 three more possible values were added for attribute doc subtype.

The ce:section-title element, child of ce:glossary should no longer be used for Glossary item titles.
index

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:index+)>
<!ATTLIST index
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "idx">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:label?, ce:index*)>
<!ATTLIST index
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "idx">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ce:index*)>
<!ATTLIST index
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "idx">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
  ce:index*)>
<!ATTLIST index
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docsubtype ( idx|ret|rem|dup )
    "idx">
```

132 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
                     ce:index* )>
<!ATTLIST index
   xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
   version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
   xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
   xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
   xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
   id ID #REQUIRED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   docsubtype ( idx|ret|rem|dup ) "idx">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT index ( info, ce:label?, ce:title?,
                     ce:index* )>
<!ATTLIST index
   xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
   version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
   xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
   xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
   xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
   id ID #REQUIRED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   docsubtype ( ind|idx|ret|rem|dup ) "ind">
```

Description

The element `index` is used to tag indices of terms which usually appear in a book’s back matter.

Usage

The index element will always appear as a top-level element, with its own DOCTYPE declaration and PUBLIC identifier appearing at the top of the XML file. An `index` gets called into the book’s hub file by a `ce:include-item` element.

Content for `index` consists of required `info`, followed by optional `ce:label`, optional `ce:title`, followed by optional/repeatable `ce:index` elements.

Multiple indices (e.g. Subject Index, Author Index, etc.) should be handled as separate `index` files, called into the book’s hub file with separate `ce:include-item` elements.

Each `index` should be organized according to the following conventions:

- One `ce:index` element which encapsulates the complete index.
- Each `ce:index` element would contain multiple `ce:index-sec` elements, one for each letter of the alphabet.
- If the terms are separated by alphas that appear in the hardcopy, the `ce:section-title`, child of `ce:index-sec`, should contain the letter of the alphabet for each index section.

Due to their large size, it is envisioned that large index files will be developed in smaller pieces at book typesetters, then combined into a single, large file prior to delivery.
It is quite common in hardcopy book indices, in an effort to save space (and paper) that the first second-level index term appears on the same line as its parent primary index term. Therefore, this needs to be tagged as in the following example (where `ce:index-heading`, etc., have been left out for clarity):

Swallowing, assessment of pediatric variations in

Great care must be taken to ensure that such situations are tagged properly in the following manner:

```xml
<ce:index-entry id="idx824">Swallowing
<ce:index-entry id="idx825a">assessment of</ce:index-entry>
<ce:index-entry id="idx825b">pediatric variations in</ce:index-entry>
</ce:index-entry>
```

It has an optional `role`, along with several required attributes:

- `id`
- `version`: 5.4
- `xmlns:ce`: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- `xmlns:xlink`: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- `xml:lang`: en (default value)
- `doc subtype`: ind (default value), idx (deprecated), ret, rem or dup

Currently there are no roles defined, however there are two roles defined for `ce:index`: author and subject.

```xml
<index doc subtype="ind" id="index">
<info>
<ce:pii>B978-0-7216-9204-3.00001-6</ce:pii>
<ce:isbn>978-0-7216-9204-3</ce:isbn>
<ce:copyright tpe="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
</info>
<ce:title id="t1">Index</ce:title>
<ce:index role="subject" id="ix1">
<ce:index-sec id="ixs1">
<ce:section-title id="st1">A</ce:section-title>
<ce:index-entry id="idx001">
<ce:index-heading>aardvark</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar001" href="...">1</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>
<ce:index-entry id="idx002">
...
</ce:index-entry>
...
<ce:index-sec>
...
</ce:index-sec>
</ce:index>
</index>
```
Version history

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role and optional subelement ce:label were added. Subelement ce:index was made optional/repeatable to allow for Ultralight delivery of book backfile projects.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 the ce:title was also added to allow for proper title and tagging in sync with other DOCTYPEs.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 three more possible values were added for attribute docsubtype.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 value ind was added for attribute docsubtype, replacing ind which will be deprecated.
info

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0–Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT info ( ce:pii, ce:doi?, ce:isbn, ce:issn?,
ce:document-thread?, ce:copyright,
ce:imprint?, ce:doctopics? )>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0, Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT info( ce:pii, ce:doi?, ce:isbn, ce:issn?,
ce:document-thread?, ce:copyright,
ce:imprint?, ce:doctopics?,
ce:preprint?, ce:associated-resource* )>
```

Description

The element info is a placeholder element for book-level metadata elements.

Usage

The info element contains book-project level metadata for the book item and hub. It duplicates a few items from the metadata transport scheme, but only enough to confirm that the book item and book project match. It contains the metadata of all top-level elements of the Books DTD: book, introduction, chapter, simple-chapter, examination, fb-non-chapter, glossary, bibliography, and index.


```xml
<info>
  <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
  <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
  <ce:copyright type="full-transfer"
          year="2003">Elsevier Inc.</ce:copyright>
</info>
```

Version history

Elements ce:preprint and ce:associated-resource were added in version 5.5.0.
introduction

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT introduction ( info, ce:floats?, ce:title?,
  ce:author-group*, ce:sections,
  ce:bibliography* )>
<!ATTLIST introduction
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.1'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  docssubtype %docssubtype; #FIXED "itr">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT introduction ( info, ce:floats?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:sections?,
  ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* )>
<!ATTLIST introduction
  id ID #REQUIRED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %language; 'en'
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docssubtype %docssubtype; #FIXED "itr">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT introduction ( info, ce:floats?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:sections?,
  ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* )>
<!ATTLIST introduction
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.3'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  docssubtype %docssubtype; #FIXED "itr">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT introduction ( info, ce:floats?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:sections?,
  ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* )>
<!ATTLIST introduction
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
```
introduction

version CDATA #FIXED '5.4'
xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
docsubtype ( itr|ret|rem|dup ) "itr">

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)
<!ELEMENT introduction ( info, ce:floats?, ce:title, ce:author-group*, ce:sections?, ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* )>
<!ATTLIST introduction
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.5'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
docsubtype ( itr|ret|rem|dup ) "itr">

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)
<!ATTLIST introduction
 xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
 version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
 xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
 xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
 xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
docsubtype ( itr|ret|rem|dup ) "itr">

Description
The element introduction is used to capture introductory material which often appears at the beginning of parts or sections used to divide/introduce chapters by topic within the body of a book.

Usage
Since parts and/or sections often contain their own introductory material, the top-level introduction element is needed to properly capture this content. It gets called into the book’s hub file using the ce:include-item.

The introduction element consists of optional ce:floats, optional ce:label, required ce:title, an optional/repeatable ce:author-group, followed by optional ce:sections, followed by optional/repeatable ce:bibliographies and/or ce:further-readings.
It has an optional role, along with several required attributes:

- id
- version: 5.4
- xmlns:ce: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd
- xmlns:xlink: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink
- xml:lang: en (default value)
- docsubtype: itr (default value), ret, rem or dup

XML

```xml
<introduction id="part1-intro" docsubtype="itr">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:floats>
    ...
  </ce:floats>
  <ce:label>Introduction</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t1">Introduction</ce:title>
  <ce:author-group id="aug1">
    ...
  </ce:author-group>
  <ce:sections>
    <ce:para id="p1">Paragraph of introductory text for part or section.</ce:para>
  </ce:sections>
</introduction>
```

**Version history**

For Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0, the subelement `ce:sections` was made optional to allow for PreCAP deliveries. The subelement `ce:further-reading` was also added for items without linked references.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 three more possible values were added for attribute `docsubtype`.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 subelement `ce:label` was added.
line

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1–Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT line ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

Description

The element `line` is used to capture a line of text from a poem.

Usage

Content for line consists of `line`.

```xml
<line>Roses are red</line>
```

Version history

This element first appeared in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1.

See also

See also elements `poem` and `stanza`. 
objectives

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1–Book DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT objectives (ce:section-title?, ce:para+)>

Description

The element objectives is used to capture the objectives of a chapter. This information often appears at the beginning of a book chapter.

Usage

Content for objectives consists of an optional ce:section-title, and required/repeatable ce:para.

XML

```xml
<objectives>
  <ce:section-title id="st1">Objectives</ce:section-title>
  <ce:para id="p1">The objectives for this chapter are for the student to ...</ce:para>
</objectives>
```

Version history

This element first appeared in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1.
**outline**

**Declaration**

**Model (Book DTD 5.1.1–Book DTD 5.3.1)**

```
<!ELEMENT outline ( ce:list )>
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.4.0, Book DTD 5.5.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT outline ( ce:list )>
<!ATTLIST outline
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT outline ( ce:section-title?, ce:list )>
<!ATTLIST outline
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

**Description**

The element `outline` is used to capture the outline of a chapter. This material often appears at the beginning of a book chapter.

**Usage**

The content for element `outline` consists of a required `ce:list`. It has optional attributes `id`, `role` and `view`. No roles are currently defined.

```
<XML

<outline>
  <ce:list id="list02">
    <ce:section-title id="st01">Chapter Outline</ce:section-title>
    <ce:list-item id="list06">
      <ce:para id="p88">Introduction</ce:para>
    </ce:list-item>
    <ce:list-item id="list07">
      <ce:para id="p89">Background</ce:para>
    </ce:list-item>
  </ce:list>
...
</outline>
```

**Version history**

This element first appeared in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1. The attributes `id`, `role` and `view` were added in Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0.
part

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, introduction?, ( section | ce:include-item | ce:bibliography )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED>
\]

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( section | ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED>
\]

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( section | ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
\]

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( section | ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
\]

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0–Book DTD 5.5.0)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( part | section | ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
\]

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

\[
<!ELEMENT part ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ce:intro?, ( part | section | ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+)>
\]

\[
<!ATTLIST part id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
\]

Description

The element part is used to capture the hierarchy above chapter and/or section when they occur within an Elsevier book.
Usage

The element part is a child of body and of volume. It is used when a large book is divided into parts in order to organize sections and/or chapters into groups. The element part appears in the hub file for the book.

The part elements can sometimes have their own introductions. These should be tagged as introduction and called into the hub file using ce:include-item.

In very rare cases, part elements can sometimes have their own bibliography. These should be tagged as bibliography and called into the hub file using ce:include-item.

The part element consists of an optional ce:label, followed by an optional ce:title, an optional/repeatable ce:author-group, then a required and repeatable grouping of parts, sections and/or ce:include-items and/or ce:further-reading.

It has one required attribute, id, and one optional attribute, role. The following values for role are defined.

- Archive
- ArticleTitle
- EntryTitle
- GenInfo
- Level
- SubjClass

XML

```
<part id="pA"><ce:label>Part A</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t0">GENERAL ISSUES AND APPROACH TO DISEASE IN PRIMARY CARE MEDICINE</ce:title>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t1">Introduction</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>1</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>8</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
</section>
...<section id="s1"><ce:label>Section 1</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t2">Core Issues and Special Groups in Primary Care</ce:title>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10003-4</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t3">Core Issues in Primary Care</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>9</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>18</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
...</section>
</part>
```
Version history

Element introduction is a top-level element in EHS Books DTD 5.1.0. Since all top-level items are called into the book hub file with ce:include-item, subelement introduction was removed in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1. Subelement ce:bibliography was replaced by ce:further-reading.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role was added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelement ce:label was made optional.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 parts were allowed to recurse (part, child of part) to be able to properly handle MRWs.

Known bugs, hacks and problems

The ce:further-reading is deprecated and should no longer be used. It remains to allow for backward compatibility with earlier versions.
poem

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1–Book DTD 5.2.1)

```
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)

```
<!ATTLIST poem id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element poem is used to capture poetry that sometimes appear at the beginning of some book chapters.

Usage

Content for poem consists of an optional ce:title, optional ce:author, required/repeatable stanza and optional ce:source.

It has an optional id.

XML

```
<poem>
  <ce:title id="t1">Roses are Red</ce:title>
  <stanza>
    <line>Roses are red</line>
    <line>violets are blue</line>
  ...  
  </stanza>
</poem>
```

Version history

This element first appeared in EHS Book DTD 5.1.1.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 the optional id attribute was added.

See also

See also elements stanza and line.
**rear**

**Declaration**

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT rear (rearpart+)>
```

**Description**

The element `rear` is used to capture all of the material that appears in the back matter of Elsevier books.

**Usage**

The `rear` element is used to delimit and capture the material that appears in the back matter of Elsevier books. It is used in the book’s hub file and consists of required and repeatable `rearpart`s.

Lower-level doctypes — `glossary`, `bibliography`, `index`, and `fb-non-chapter` (appendices) — within the rear get called in using `ce:include-item` elements.

Although the DTD does not restrict where lower-level book doctypes get called into the hub file, doctypes other than those listed above should not be called into `rear`.

```xml
<rear>
  <rearpart id="rearpart1">
    <ce:title id="t1">Appendices</ce:title>
    <ce:include-item>
      <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
      <ce:title>Appendix A</ce:title>
      <ce:pages>
        <ce:first-page>1000</ce:first-page>
        <ce:last-page>1001</ce:last-page>
      </ce:pages>
    </ce:include-item>
    <ce:include-item>
      <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10001-0</ce:pii>
      <ce:title id="t2">Appendix B</ce:title>
      <ce:pages>
        <ce:first-page>1002</ce:first-page>
        <ce:last-page>1003</ce:last-page>
      </ce:pages>
    </ce:include-item>
  </rearpart>
  <rearpart id="rearpart2">
    <ce:include-item>
      <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10002-2</ce:pii>
      <ce:title id="t3">Glossary</ce:title>
      <ce:pages>
        <ce:first-page>1004</ce:first-page>
        <ce:last-page>1020</ce:last-page>
      </ce:pages>
    </ce:include-item>
  </rearpart>
</rear>
```
**rearpart**

**Declaration**

**Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT rearpart ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:include-item+ )>
<!ATTLIST rearpart
  id ID #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.2.0–Book DTD 5.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT rearpart ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ce:include-item+ )>
<!ATTLIST rearpart
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **rearpart** is used to provide organizational divisions to material (usually appendices) that appears in the back matter of Elsevier books.

**Usage**

The **rearpart** element is usually used to give named or numbered divisions to material that appears within the back matter of Elsevier Health Science books, usually appendices. If the rear is not divided into parts, then there will only be one **rearpart**. The element appears in the book’s hub file.

It consists of an optional **ce:label**, optional **ce:title**, an optional/repeatable **ce:author-group**, then one or more **ce:include-items**.

It has one required attribute, **id** and one optional attribute, **role**.

**XML**

```xml
<rearpart id="rearpart1">
  <ce:label>1</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t1">Graphical Appendices</ce:title>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t2">Appendix A</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>1000</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>1001</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10001-0</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t3">Appendix B</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>1002</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>1003</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
</rearpart>
```
Version history

The optional/repeatable subelement ce:author-group and optional attribute role were both added in Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0.
section

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT section ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*,
introduction?, ( ce:include-item | ce:bibliography )+ )>
<!ATTLIST section
 id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT section ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*,
( ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+ )>
<!ATTLIST section
 id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT section ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*,
( ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+ )>
<!ATTLIST section
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1–Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT section ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*,
( ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+ )>
<!ATTLIST section
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT section ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*,
 ce:intro?, ( ce:include-item | ce:further-reading )+ )>
<!ATTLIST section
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `section` is used to capture the hierarchy above chapter if/when they occur within Elsevier books.

Usage

A `section` is used in large books to organize `ce:include-items` (chapters or examinations) into groups. It is a child of `body` and `volume` and/or `part` should not be confused with the common element `ce:section` that is used for subdivisions within items such as chapters.
A section can sometimes have its own introduction. These should be tagged as introduction and called into the hub file using ce:include-item.

In very rare cases, section elements can sometimes have their own bibliography. These should be tagged as bibliography and called into the hub file using ce:include-item.

The section element consists of an optional ce:label, an optional ce:title, an optional/repeatable ce:author-group, followed by one or more groupings of ce:include-items and/or ce:sections and/or ce:further-reading.

It has one required attribute, id and one optional attribute, role.

XML

```xml
<section id="s1" ce:label>Section 1</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t1">Core Issues and Special Groups in Primary Care</ce:title>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10003-4</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t2">Core Issues in Primary Care</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>1</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>8</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
  <ce:include-item>
    <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
    <ce:title id="t3">Special Groups in Primary Care</ce:title>
    <ce:pages>
      <ce:first-page>9</ce:first-page>
      <ce:last-page>18</ce:last-page>
    </ce:pages>
  </ce:include-item>
  ...
</section>
```

Version history

Element introduction is a top-level element in EHS Books DTD 5.1.0. Since all top-level items are called into the book hub file with ce:include-item, subelement introduction was removed. Subelement ce:bibliography was replaced by ce:further-reading.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional attribute role was added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelement ce:label was made optional.

Known bugs, hacks and problems

The ce:further-reading is deprecated and should no longer be used. It remains to allow for backward compatibility with earlier versions.
simple-chapter

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
    ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
    poem?, outline?, objectives?,
    ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
    ce:intro?,
    ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography |
    ce:further-reading )+, ( ce:section |
    exam )* )? )>
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST simple-chapter
    id ID #REQUIRED
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %language; 'en'
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "scp">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
    ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
    poem?, outline?, objectives?,
    ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
    ce:intro?,
    ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography |
    ce:further-reading )+, ( ce:section |
    exam )* )? )>
```

```xml
<!ATTLIST simple-chapter
    id ID #REQUIRED
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESBK.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.2'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %language; 'en'
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    docsubtype %docsubtype; #FIXED "scp">
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT simple-chapter ( ce:footnote*, info, ce:floats?,
    ce:label?, ce:title, ce:subtitle?,
    ce:author-group*, ce:abstract*, ce:displayed-quote?,
    poem?, outline?, objectives?,
    ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
    ce:intro?,
    ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*,
    ( ( ce:bibliography |
    ce:further-reading )+ | ce:section | ce:biography ),
    ( ce:section | exam | ce:biography )* )? )>
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Fixed Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple-chapter</td>
<td>xmlns</td>
<td>%ES.xmlns;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>version</td>
<td>'5.3'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xmlns:ce</td>
<td>%ESCE.xmlns;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xmlns:xlink</td>
<td>%XLINK.xmlns;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xml:lang</td>
<td>'en'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>id</td>
<td>#REQUIRED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>role</td>
<td>#IMPLIED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docsubtype</td>
<td>scp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)**

```xml
```

**Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)**

```xml
```
Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST simple-chapter
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ES.xmlns;
  version CDATA #FIXED '5.6'
  xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
  xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
  xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
docs_subtype ( scp|ret|rem|dup ) "scp">
```

Description

The element `simple-chapter` is used to capture book chapters as individual XML files, but only in a PreCAP backfile conversion project.

Usage

The `simple-chapter` element is used to capture all the material that appears within a book chapter. There is a PUBLIC identifier and a DOCTYPE declaration for simple-chapter, and individual chapter files get called into the book’s hub file using the `ce:include-item` element.

Although the DTD does not restrict where lower-level book doctypes get called into the hub file, the intent is for `simple-chapter` only to be called into `body`, not in `front` or `rear`.

The content for simple-chapter consists of an optional/repeatable `ce:footnote`, a required `info` and the optional `ce:floats` container. The chapter begins with the (optional) `ce:label`, containing the name of the chapter (“Chapter 4”), the chapter title(s), tagged via `ce:title`, optional `ce:subtitle` and optional/repeatable `ce:alt-title` and `ce:alt-subtitle`, and optional and repeatable `ce:author-group` containing authors and their affiliations. Followed by optional/repeatable `ce:miscellaneous`, optional/repeatable `ce:abstract` and optional `ce:displayed-quote`, poem, outline, objectives, and `ce:nomenclature` and optional `ce:conflict-of-interest` and `ce:acknowledgment` (repeatable). An introduction or summary is contained in the optional `ce:intro`.

The main body of the chapter consists of a optional/repeatable sequence of `ce:sections`, `subchapter` and/or `exam` elements, followed by optional/repeatable `ce:bibliography`
and/or \texttt{ce:further-reading}, possibly followed by more \texttt{ce:sections} and/or \texttt{exams} and/or \texttt{ce:biographies}.

It has an optional \texttt{role}, along with several required attributes:

- \texttt{id}
- \texttt{xmlns: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/book/dtd}
- \texttt{version: 5.4}
- \texttt{xmlns:ce: http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/dtd}
- \texttt{xmlns:xlink: http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink}
- \texttt{xml:lang: en (default value)}
- \texttt{docsubtype: scp (default value), ret, rem or dup}

\texttt{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<simple-chapter id="ch1">
  <info>
    <ce:pii>B978-0-323-01679-7.10003-8</ce:pii>
    <ce:isbn>978-0-323-01679-7</ce:isbn>
    <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2003">Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright>
  </info>
  <ce:bibliography id="bibl1>
    ...
  </ce:bibliography>
</simple-chapter>
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Version history}

This top element was added in Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 to allow for deliveries of book backfile projects.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelement \texttt{ce:label} was made optional.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 added optional \texttt{ce:miscellaneous}, and optional/repeatable \texttt{ce:abstract} and optional/repeatable \texttt{ce:biographies}.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 the optional/repeatable elements \texttt{ce:alt-title} and \texttt{ce:alt-subtitle} were added to the model of \texttt{simple-chapter}. Three more possible values were added for attribute \texttt{docsubtype}. Also, the occurrence indicator for elements \texttt{ce:miscellaneous}, \texttt{outline} and \texttt{ce:nomenclature} was changed from ? to *.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.5.0 the occurrence indicator for \texttt{ce:acknowledgment} changed from ? to *.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 the elements \texttt{ce:conflict-of-interest} and \texttt{ce:data-availability} were added and the occurrence indicator for \texttt{ce:displayed-quote} was changed from ? to *.
Chapter 5 – Book DTD

stanza

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1–Book DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT stanza ( line+ )>

Description

The element stanza is used to capture a block of lines from a poem.

Usage

Content for stanza consists of required/repeatable line.

XML

<stanza>
  <line>Roses are red</line>
  <line>violets are blue</line>
  ...
</stanza>

Version history

This element first appeared in EHS Books DTD 5.1.1.

See also

See also elements poem and line.
Chapter 5 – Book DTD subchapter

subchapter

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:label?, ce:title, ce:author-group*,
  ce:displayed-quote?, ce:nomenclature?,
  ce:intro?, ( ce:section | subchapter
  | exam )*, ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )*, ( ce:section | exam )* )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:label?, ce:title, ce:author-group*,
  ce:displayed-quote?, ce:nomenclature?,
  ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*, ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )*, ( ce:section | exam )* )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0, Book DTD 5.2.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:footnote*, ce:label?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
  ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
  ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*, ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )*, ( ce:section | exam )* )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.3.0, Book DTD 5.3.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:footnote*, ce:label?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
  ce:nomenclature?, ce:acknowledgment?,
  ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter | exam )*, ( ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )* | ce:section ),
  ( ce:section | exam )* )? )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:footnote*, ce:label?, ce:title,
  ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
  ce:nomenclature*, ce:acknowledgment?,
  ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter
  | exam )*, ( ( ce:bibliography | ce:further-reading )+ | ce:section ),
  ( ce:section | exam )* )? )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```
Chapter 5 – Book DTD

id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (Book DTD 5.5.0)

<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:footnote*, ce:label?, ce:title,
ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote?,
ce:nomenclature*, ce:acknowledgment*,
ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter
| exam )*, ( ( ( ce:bibliography |
ce:further-reading )+ | ce:section ),
( ce:section | exam )* )? )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter
id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

<!ELEMENT subchapter ( ce:footnote*, ce:label?, ce:title,
ce:author-group*, ce:displayed-quote*,
ce:nomenclature*, ce:conflict-of-
interest?, ce:acknowledgment*,
ce:intro?, ( ce:sections | subchapter
| exam )*, ( ( ( ce:bibliography |
ce:further-reading )+ | ce:section ),
( ce:section | exam )* )? )>

<!ATTLIST subchapter
id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
view %view; 'all'>

Description

The element subchapter is used to capture large portions of hierarchy that occur within book chapters.

Usage

Quite frequently, book chapters are so large, that the subchapter element is needed to capture the complex hierarchy that occurs within them. Such divisions of chapters are often written by separate authors and will often contain their own references. For this DTD, the hierarchy below chapter that has its own author(s) and/or references should be tagged as a subchapter. Hierarchy below chapter which does not have its own author(s) or references should be done as ce:sections.

Content for the subchapter element is similar to the structure of its parent, chapter, and consists of an optional/repeatable ce:footnote, an optional ce:label, a required ce:title, optional and repeatable ce:author-group. Followed by optional ce:displayed-quote, optional/repeatable ce:nomenclature, followed by an optional ce:conflict-of-interest and ce:acknowledgment (repeatable), optional introductory text in ce:intro, followed by required/repeatable ce:sections and/or nested subchapters and/or exams, followed by optional/repeatable ce:bibliography and/or ce:further-reading, followed by optional/repeatable ce:sections and/or exams.

It has one required attribute, id and optional role and view (with a default value all).

XML

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 159
<subchapter id="sc11">
  <ce:label>1.1</ce:label>
  <ce:title id="t1">Summary of Primary Care Today</ce:title>
  <ce:author-group id="aug1">
    ...
  </ce:author-group>
  <ce:intro id="intro1">
    <ce:para id="p01">Text of introductory paragraph...</ce:para>
  </ce:intro>
  <ce:section id="s1">
    <ce:title id="t1">Opening section title</ce:title>
    <ce:para id="p02">Text of first paragraph...</ce:para>
    <ce:para id="p03">Text of second paragraph...</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
  <ce:bibliography id="bbl1">
    ...
  </ce:bibliography>
</subchapter>

**Version history**

In EHS Books DTD 5.1.1 the occurrence indicator for `ce:author-group` changed from `?` to `*`. Element `examination` was replaced by `exam` and the `docsubtype` attribute was added. Element `ce:section` was changed to `ce:sections` to allow subchapters to begin with regular paragraphs.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0, an optional/repeatable `ce:footnote` was added to the beginning of the content model for `subchapter`. The optional attribute `role` was also added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 reference end-notes were made optional.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 the occurrence indicator for element `ce:nomenclature` was changed from `?` to `*`.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.5.0 the occurrence indicator for `ce:acknowledgment` changed from `?` to `*`.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 attribute `view` and the element `ce:conflict-of-interest` were added and the occurrence indicator for `ce:displayed-quote` was changed from `?` to `*`. 
top

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0)

Model (Book DTD 5.1.1)

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)
<!ELEMENT top ( %titles;, ce:edition, ce:copyright-line, cover-image?, ce:editors*, ce:author-group*, dedication*, ce:sections )>

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1–Book DTD 5.6.0)

Description

The element top is another placeholder element for book-level metadata elements.

Usage

The info element contains book-project level metadata for the book item. It also contains material intended to render the following non-item material: title page, copyright page, and dedication (if present).


XML
<top>
  <ce:title id="t1">Mosby's Clinical Nursing</ce:title>
  <ce:editors>
    <ce:author-group id="aug1">...</ce:author-group>
    <ce:author-group id="aug2">...</ce:author-group>
  </ce:editors>
  <ce:copyright-line>Copyright &copy; 2002 Mosby, Inc.</ce:copyright-line>
  <cover-image>...</cover-image>
</top>
Version history

In EHS Books DTD 5.1.1 the occurrence indicator for `ce:dedication` changed from `?` to `*`.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 the optional `cover-image` was added while `ce:dedication` was replaced by `dedication` to properly allow for book dedications that tend to be more elaborate than articles.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 the element `ce:edition` was made optional.

Due to changes over time, the `top` has become largely empty. Author dedications and the copyright page are now both now delivered as items within `front`. Refer to the CAP guides for specific detailed guidance.
volume

Declaration

Model (Book DTD 5.1.0, Book DTD 5.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT volume ( ce:label, ( part | section | ce:include-item )+ )>
<!ATTLIST volume id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT volume ( ce:label, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( part | section | ce:include-item )+ )>
<!ATTLIST volume id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.2.1–Book DTD 5.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT volume ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ( part | section | ce:include-item )+ )>
<!ATTLIST volume id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (Book DTD 5.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT volume ( ce:label?, ce:title?, ce:author-group*, ce:intro?, ( part | section | ce:include-item )+ )>
<!ATTLIST volume id ID #REQUIRED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Unlike journals, where a volume is a collection of journal issues, volumes in Elsevier books are usually only due to limitations of binding. In rare cases, they can also be used to delimit topical hierarchy as well. The element `volume` is used to capture material that appears between separately bound volumes of a multi-volume book if they occur within Elsevier books.

Usage

The `volume` element, a child of `body`, is used to delimit and capture the material that appears between each separately bound volume if/when they occur. It should be noted that only the `ce:include-items` and hierarchy above them (material within `body`) appears within volume. This differs from many hardcopy multi-volume books where front and back matter gets repeated in each separately bound volume.

The `volume` element consists of an optional `ce:label` (often a Roman numeral), an optional `ce:title`, an optional/repeatable `ce:author-group`, followed by required/repeatable `parts` and/or `sections` and/or `ce:include-items`.

It has one required attribute, `id` and one optional attribute, `role`. 
XML

```
<volume id="vI">
  <ce:label>Volume I</ce:label>
  <part id="pA">
    <ce:label>Part A</ce:label>
    <ce:title id="t1">General issues and approach to disease in primary care medicine</ce:title>
    <ce:include-item>
      <ce:pii>B0-323-01679-0/10027-7</ce:pii>
      <ce:title id="t1a">Introduction</ce:title>
      <ce:pages>
        <ce:first-page>1</ce:first-page>
        <ce:last-page>8</ce:last-page>
      </ce:pages>
    </ce:include-item>
  </part>
  <part id="pB">
    <ce:label>Part B</ce:label>
    <ce:title id="t4">Title of Second Part</ce:title>
  </part>
</volume>
```

**Version history**

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.0 optional `ce:title`, optional/repeatable `ce:author-group`, and optional attribute `role` were added.

In Elsevier Book DTD 5.2.1 subelement `ce:label` was made optional.

In the Elsevier Book DTD 5.3.0 `part` was allowed to recurse (`part`, child of `part`) to be able to properly handle MRWs.
# PITs: Book publication item types

The attribute `docsubtype` of the top-level elements of the book DTD contains the publication item type of the book chapter or book hub. Its possible values are contained in `%docsubtype;` and `%docsubtype-book;` and are described here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIT</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>app</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>An appendix pertaining to the book as a whole (as opposed to one to a single chapter) found in the rear matter of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bib</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>The list of references that pertain to the book as a whole (as opposed to references that may be part of an individual chapter) and that will be found in a separate section, usually in the rear matter of the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bio</td>
<td>Biography</td>
<td>Biographies, in the front matter of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bk</td>
<td>Elsevier book</td>
<td>The PIT required for the top element that captures the basic structure of the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chp</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Individual chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com</td>
<td>Comprehensive</td>
<td>One of the two principal types of Elsevier major reference works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con</td>
<td>Contents list</td>
<td>The table of contents of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cop</td>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>The copyright page as an item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctr</td>
<td>Contributors</td>
<td>List of contributors in the front matter of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dct</td>
<td>Dictionary</td>
<td>Added for future expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ded</td>
<td>Dedication</td>
<td>Part of a book’s frontmatter thanking persons not directly involved with the research described in the book for their contribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dup</td>
<td>Duplicate</td>
<td>Tombstone chapter, duplicate of a published chapter. See ref. [25].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edb</td>
<td>Editorial board</td>
<td>List containing the scientific editors, the managing and executive editors, the board of directors, etc., of the publication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enc</td>
<td>Encyclopedia</td>
<td>One of the two principal types of Elsevier major reference works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eoc</td>
<td>Expression of Concern</td>
<td>An Expression of Concern sits somewhere between an Erratum and a Retraction and allows authors or editors to point out a minor form of scientific misconduct such as failure to fully report a conflict of interest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exm</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>List of review questions and answers in case these are found as a separate section, outside a chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>Introductory text in the front matter of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gls</td>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>List in which specific terminology used in the book is explained. Only used in cases where this is found as a separate section, outside a chapter, in rear matter only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>htu</td>
<td>How to use</td>
<td>Part of the front matter of a book that may be used to capture a disclaimer text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIT</td>
<td>Short</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idx</td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>This PIT will be deprecated in favour of the new PIT ind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind</td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>List of index terms found in the book’s rear matter, possibly cross-referenced against the location of occurrence. It can be an Author index, a Master index, a Subject index, a Materials index, etc. This replaces the PIT idx which will be deprecated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ins</td>
<td>Insights</td>
<td>A publication item that is neither research article nor review of primary research; it is roughly comparable to an article in the popular science press.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itr</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Text introducing a volume, part or section of a book. Not to be confused with Foreword (FOR) or Preface (PRE) that are part of the front matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit</td>
<td>Literature reviews</td>
<td>Used for a chapter that reviews the literature in a given subject area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lst</td>
<td>Lists</td>
<td>List of figures, list of tables, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovw</td>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>Used for so-called “topic pages” in an MRW, a short description of the subject of the MRW section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre</td>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>Introductory text in the front matter of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro</td>
<td>Protocol</td>
<td>A publication item that provides the detailed procedures and materials needed to reproduce or replicate an experimental method. In essence, a Protocol is a regular item focussing on the materials and methods required to achieve a specified result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rem</td>
<td>Removal</td>
<td>Tombstone chapter, removed. The chapter has been retracted and its original text is completely removed from public access. See ref. [26].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret</td>
<td>Retraction</td>
<td>Tombstone PIT assigned to a retracted item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rev</td>
<td>Reviewers</td>
<td>List of names of referees that have reviewed (parts of) the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpl</td>
<td>Replication Studies</td>
<td>Replication Study. A replication of a scientific study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scp</td>
<td>Simple chapter</td>
<td>An individual chapter. Used primarily in conversion projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tpg</td>
<td>Title page</td>
<td>Used for the title page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid</td>
<td>Video article</td>
<td>Publication item whose prime content consists of a video accompanied by a description of that video.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 6

Enhancement Fragment DTD

This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the elements in the enhancement fragment DTD, the EF DTD. This DTD is used to structure the content of material that is added to the online versions of journal items or book chapters after they have been published.

The EF DTD will be used to add “book updates” to online book chapters. These were formerly known as “darts”. So-called eAbstracts will also be captured by this DTD. eAbstracts are complete articles that are derived from articles in Clinics journals. Many more uses are foreseen.

The EF DTD defines one top-level element: `enhancement-fragment`.

**CEP version used in this DTD**

The enhancement fragment DTD 5.0.0 described in this documentation uses the common element pool version 1.1.6.
**enhancement-fragment**

**Declaration**

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT enhancement-fragment ( info, target, ce:floats?, fragment-text )>
<!ATTLIST enhancement-fragment
    xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESEF.xmlns;
    version CDATA #FIXED '5.0'
    xmlns:ce CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns;
    xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSB.xmlns;
    xmlns:xlink CDATA #FIXED %XLINK.xmlns;
    xml:lang %iso639; 'en'
    docsubtype CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

**Description**

The element **enhancement-fragment** contains the complete enhancement fragment.

**Usage**

The element **enhancement-fragment** is the only top-element in the EF DTD. It is used to structure enhancement fragments.

There are several attributes of the element, as follows.

- The attribute **doctype** contains the type of the fragment. Unlike other DTDs, the EF DTD does not contain the list of possible values. For every type of enhancement fragment different values are defined. For book updates the following values are allowed:
  - abs: abstract
  - com: commentary
  - crct: corrections made by the enhancement fragment (not errata)
  - fcr: focused review
  - hop: hot off the press
  - lbct: late breaking clinical trial
  - note: notification of corrections
  - ref: additional references
  - upd: update

For eAbstracts only one value is allowed:

- eabs: eAbstract

For Layman’s abstracts only one value is allowed:

- lay: Layman’s abstract

- The attribute **xml:lang** specifies the language in which the enhancement fragment is written (default English, en). See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.

- The fixed attribute **xmlns** sets the default namespace for EF elements, and the other fixed attributes beginning with xmlns: set the prefix and the namespace of elements used in the DTD, e.g. those of the common element pool (xmlns:ce and xmlns:sb) and of the XLink standard (xmlns:xlink). Since these attributes are fixed, they need not be specified as they are inferred by the parser.
• **version** is fixed to the first two digits of the version of the DTD. Information on the enhancement fragment is stored in element *info*. The target is identified in element *target*. Element *fragment-text* contains the content of the enhancement fragment. The optional *ce:floats* contains the necessary floats, similar to the JA DTD.
exam

Declaration

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT exam ( ce:title?, ce:exam-questions, ce:exam-answers? )>
<!ATTLIST exam
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `exam` is used to capture review questions that appear within many different types of books.

Usage

This element is structured identical to the `exam` element in the Book DTD. It is used in the same way.
Chapter 6 – Enhancement Fragment DTD

fragment-text

Declaration

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST fragment-text
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `fragment-text` contains the content of the enhancement fragment.

Usage

The model of this element is based on the models of element `head` of the JA DTD and element `subchapter` of the Book DTD.

`fragment-text` has a mandatory `id` and an optional `role`. 
info

Declaration

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT info ( ce:pii, ce:copyright, ce:imprint?,
               ce:doctopics? )>
```

Description

The element info contains information about the enhancement fragment.

Usage

The enhancement fragment is identified by a PII, ce:pii. The PII of an enhancement fragment is based on the PII of the target but the format depends on the type of enhancement fragment.

The PII of a book update enhancement fragment is made up of the PII of the target, a type identifier (bu), the ID of an XML fragment in the target, and a sequence number. It does not have a check digit. The parts are separated by a period, except for the last two which are separated by a “u”. This is done to ensure uniqueness of unformatted PIs.

The PII of an eAbstract enhancement fragment is made up of the PII of the target and the type identifier (ea). The parts are joined by a hyphen. It does not have a check digit. The PII of a Layman’s abstract is constructed similarly, the type identifier is lay.

The mandatory ce:copyright contains the copyright owner and status of the item.

The imprint under which a book project is published can be stored in the optional element ce:imprint while the optional element ce:doctopics can be used to associate the enhancement fragment with one or more topic hierarchies.

```xml
<info>
  <ce:pii>B978-1-4160-3675-3.50009-5.bu.cesec37u1</ce:pii>
  <ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2011">Elsevier, Inc.</ce:copyright>
</info>
```
location

Declaration

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT location EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST location
  id ID #IMPLIED
  refid CDATA #IMPLIED
  placement CDATA #IMPLIED
  sequence NMTOKEN #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `location` contains the exact location for an enhancement fragment in a journal article or book chapter.

Usage

`location` has four optional attributes. It can be identified by the attribute `id`.

An enhancement fragment can be “attached” to a specific place in a journal article or book chapter. The exact place is in fact an XML fragment (element) and its ID is stored in attribute `refid`. Attribute `placement` indicates where the enhancement fragment is to be placed. The values used so far are `before` and `after`.

Attribute `sequence` contains a sequence number, in case there are more than one enhancement fragment for that specific place and position. The number must be unique amongst all `sequence` numbers of enhancement fragments for a specific place and position.

See `target` for an example location.
**target**

**Declaration**

Model (EF DTD 5.0)

```
<!ELEMENT target ( ce:pii, location? )>
<!ATTLIST target
   id ID #REQUIRED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
```

**Description**

The element `target` contains information about the target of the enhancement fragment.

**Usage**

The `target` element is identified by the mandatory attribute `id`.

An enhancement fragment is “attached” to a journal article or a book chapter which is identified by its PII in `ce:pii`. The element `location` can be used to attach the enhancement fragment to a specific place in the article or chapter.

An enhancement fragment is considered to be attached to the whole article or chapter if the `location` is not present or if it is present without its `refid` and `placement` attributes.

**XML**

```
<target id="target.0050">
    <ce:pii>B978-1-4160-3675-3.50009-5</ce:pii>
    <location id="loc1" refid="cesec83"
             placement="after" sequence="1"/>
</target>
```
The common element pool (CEP), a phrase coined by Jabin White, contains elements that are common to all or some of the Elsevier DTDs. The common elements are subdivided in six namespaces:

- the “core” common element pool, whose elements are described in Chapter 8,
- the elements for structured affiliations, described in Chapter 9,
- the elements for structured bibliographic references, described in Chapter 10,
- the MathML elements, with Elsevier modifications, described in Chapter 11,
- the CALS table elements and the Extended CALS table elements, both described in Chapter 12.

This chapter (Chapter 7) contains general notions regarding the common element pool and the XML files that are structured according to the DTDs that use it. When individual elements are mentioned, their details can be found in the above-mentioned chapters.

Observe that the common element pool is used by several DTDs and contains elements shared by several of these DTDs, but not necessarily all. For instance, the JA DTD does not contain elements such as `ce:isbn`, `ce:index`, `ce:index-flag` or `ce:intra-ref`. In some cases this is accomplished by parametrization using parameter entities.
Versions of the common element pool

This section describes the changes in the common element pool (CEP) since its first release as version 1.0.0. It also lists which DTDs make use of that particular version of the common element pool.

**CEP 1.1.0**

- The following elements were added: `ce:isbn`, `ce:issn`, `ce:include-item`, `ce:pages`, `ce:first-page`, `ce:last-page`, `ce:copyright-line`, `ce:index-flag`, `ce:index-flag-term`, `ce:index-flag-see`, `ce:index-flag-see-also`.
- The following parameter entities were added: `%common-altimg.att;`, `%common-view.att;`, `%tbl.tgroup.att;`.
- Parameter entity `%titles;` was renamed to `%sb.titles;` and a new parameter entity `%titles;` was introduced.
- Element `ce:article-thread` was replaced by `ce:document-thread` and element `ce:refers-to-article` was replaced by `ce:refers-to-document`.
- Element `sb:comment`’s model was changed to allow for more content.
- Elements `ce:glossary` and `ce:index` now contain `ce:intro` in their models.
- Element `ce:textbox-tail` now contains `ce:glossary` and `ce:biography` in its model.
- Element `ce:author` now has an attribute `author-id`.
- Attribute `xml:lang` of `ce:abstract` now takes its values in `%iso639;`.
- The following elements now have an attribute `view`: `ce:appendices`, `ce:bibliography`, `ce:further-reading`, `ce:glossary`, `ce:index`, `ce:biography`, `ce:exam-reference`, `ce:exam-questions`, `ce:exam-answers`.
- The following elements now use `%sb.titles;` instead of `%titles;`:

**CEP 1.1.0 patch level 1**

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.0.1 makes use of this version of the CEP.

- The model of element `ce:e-component` was repaired to allow for multiple nested `ce:link` and `ce:e-component` subelements instead of just one.

**CEP 1.1.0.1**

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.0.2 makes use of this version of the CEP.

- New parameter entity `%common-reqaltimg.att;` was added.
- New elements `ce:markers` and `ce:marker` were added.

**CEP 1.1.1**

- Element `ce:imprint` was added.
- The notation declarations were extended with system identifiers.
- Value `it` was added to parameter entity `%language;`.
- The titles in element `ce:include-item` were made optional.
Chapter 7 – The Common Element Pool

**CEP 1.1.2**

The EHS Books DTD 5.1.0 makes use of this version of the CEP.

- The following elements were added: `ce:edition`, `ce:editors`, `ce:br`.
- The following parameter entities were added: `%copyright;`, `%external-file.att;`, `%tbl.colspec.att;`, `%tbl.row.att;`.
- Parameter entity `%size-info.att;` was removed.
- Element `ce:br` was added to parameter entity `%cell.data;`.
- The following elements now have parameter entity `%cross-ref;` instead of element `ce:cross-ref` in their model: `ce:collaboration`, `ce:author`.
- The following elements now have parameter entity `%copyright;` instead of element `ce:copyright` in their model: `ce:figure`, `ce:textbox`, `ce:e-component`.
- The attribute list of `ce:link` was changed; it now consists of attributes `id` and `locator`.
- Element `ce:caption` now has an attribute list with attributes `role` and `xml:lang`.
- The models of elements `ce:e-component`, `ce:alt-e-component`, `ce:figure` and `ce:textbox` were changed to allow for more than one `ce:caption`.
- The model of parameter entity `%tbl.titles;` was changed to allow for more than one `ce:caption`; it now also contains parameter entity `%copyright;`.

**CEP 1.1.3**

The serial issue DTD 5.1.0, the EHS Books DTD 5.1.1 and the Elsevier Book DTDs 5.2.0 and 5.2.1 make use of this version of the CEP.

- The following elements were added: `ce:source`, `ce:reader-see`.
- Parameter entity `%see;` was introduced.
- Element `ce:index-entry` now uses element `ce:reader-see`, and parameter entity `%see;` instead of element `ce:see`.
- Element `ce:source` was added to the models of elements `ce:figure`, `ce:textbox`, `ce:e-component`, and to the model of parameter entity `%tbl.titles;`.

**CEP 1.1.4**

This CEP was intended to be used by the major reference works (MRW) DTD 5.0.0.

- New parameter entities `%glossary-entry-refs;` and `%index-entry-refs;` were added.
- Element `ce:indexed-name` was added to the models of elements `ce:glossary-entry` and `ce:index-entry`.
- Element `ce:reader-see` was added to the model of element `ce:glossary-entry`.
- New parameter entity `%common-reqltimg.att;` was added.
- New elements `ce:markers` and `ce:marker` were added.

**CEP 1.1.5**

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.1.0 makes use of this version of the CEP.

- New parameter entity `%text-objects;` was added to the model of parameter entity `%note.data;`.
- Parameter entity `%language;` was removed and replaced by parameter entity `%iso639;` in the models of elements `ce:ce:alt-title`, `ce:alt-subtitle` and `ce:keyword`.
- Attribute `role` was added to the model of element `ce:e-component`.
- New elements `ce:grant-sponsor` and `ce:grant-number` were added.
CEP 1.1.6

The Elsevier Book DTDs 5.3.0 and 5.3.1 and the Enhancement Fragment (EF) DTD 5.0.0 make use of this version of the CEP.

- Attributes id, role and view were added to the model of numerous elements.
- Element ce:section-title was made optional in the models of elements ce:further-reading, ce:glossary and ce:index.
- Element ce:text was added to the model of element ce:author-group.

CEP 1.2.0

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.2.0 and the serial issue (SI) DTD 5.2.0 make use of this version of the CEP.

- Element ce:copyright-line was added to parameter entity %copyright;.
- New element ce:alt-name was added to parameter entity %name;.
- Values sda, author-highlights and editor-highlights were added to parameter entity %abstract-class;.
- Value free-of-copyright was added to parameter entity %copyright-type;.
- Attribute id was added to the model of numerous elements.
- Attribute role was added to the model of ce:author-group and ce:abstract-sec.
- Attribute orcid was added to the model of elements ce:author, sb:author and sb:editor.
- A new namespace for structured affiliation elements was added. Element sa:affiliation was added to the model of ce:affiliation.
- Elements ce:e-address and ce:author-group were added to the model of element ce:collaboration.
- Element ce:source was added to the model of element ce:displayed-quote.
- Element ce:keywords was added to the model of elements ce:figure, ce:table, ce:textbox and ce:e-component.
- The model of sb:host was changed to allow sb:book to be followed by sb:pages.
- The model of sb:series was changed to allow series without titles.
- Attribute class was added to the model of element sb:book.

CEP 1.4.0

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.4.0, the Elsevier Book DTD 5.4.0 and the serial issue (SI) DTD 5.4.0 make use of this version of the CEP.

- New element ce:alt-text was added. It was added to the models of elements ce:figure, ce:table, ce:e-component, ce:textbox and ce:inline-figure.
- New element ce:article-number was added.
- Element ce:inter-ref was added to the model of element ce:keyword.
- Three XLink attributes were added to the model of element ce:link.
- New element sb:article-number was added to the model of element sb:host.
- New element sb:article-number was added to the model of element sb:authors.
- Element sa:affiliation was added to the model of element ce:correspondence.

CEP 1.5.0

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.5.0, the Elsevier Book DTD 5.5.0 and the serial issue (SI) DTD 5.5.0 make use of this version of the CEP.
Chapter 7 – The Common Element Pool

Versions of the common element pool

- New elements `ce:math`, `ce:associated-resource`, `ce:contributor-role`, `sb:version` and `sb:date-accessed` were added.
- New parameter entity `%math;` was added and used in parameter entity `%text.data;`.
- Value `social-media` was added to parameter entity `%e-address-type;`.
- Element `ce:contributor-role` was added to the model of element `ce:author`.
- The model of element `ce:acknowledgment` was changed to allow for the use of sections.
- Element `ce:intro` was added to the model of elements `ce:bibliography` and `ce:further-reading`.
- The model of element `ce:glossary-def` was changed to allow for more text objects to be used.
- The model of element `ce:def-term` was changed to allow for the use of cross references.
- Attribute `role` was added to the model of element `ce:section-title`.
- Attribute `affiliation-id` was added to the model of element `ce:affiliation` and attribute `collaboration-id` was added to the model of element `ce:collaboration`.
- Attribute `xlink:href` was added to the model of element `ce:e-address`.
- Attributes `versionurl` and `versiondate` were added to the model of elements `ce:inter-ref` and `ce:inter-ref-end`.
- Elements `sb:publisher`, `sb:version` and `sb:date-accessed` were added to the model of element `sb:e-host`.

CEP 1.6.0

The journal article (JA) DTD 5.6.0, the Elsevier Book DTD 5.6.0 and the serial issue (SI) DTD 5.6.0 make use of this version of the CEP.

- In this version of the CEP the MathML2 DTD was replaced by the MathML3 DTD. A modified version is used, mathml3-mod-ES.dtd, with the same modifications as in the previous version. Furthermore, the MathML3 parameter entities `%MMLIDTYPE;` and `%MMLIDREFTYPE;` were defined to be “ID” and “IDREF”, respectively.
- The MathML3 DTD includes one file with entities, htmlmathml-f.ent. This includes the entities previously defined in ESextra.ent, which therefore is no longer included.
- New elements `ce:short-title`, `ce:alias`, `ce:source-text`, `ce:conflict-of-interest` and `ce:data-availability` were added.
- The model of element `ce:bibliography-sec` was changed to allow more than one element `ce:bib-reference`.
- Attribute `role` was added to the model of elements `ce:marker` and `ce:date-accepted`.
- Element `ce:alias` was added to the model of element `ce:author`.
- Element `ce:source-text` was added to the model of elements `ce:affiliation` and `ce:bib-reference`.
- Element `ce:article-number` was added to the model of element `ce:include-item`.
- Element `ce:legend` was added to the model of element `ce:textbox`.
- Element `sb:ellipsis` was added to the model of element `sb:editors`.
Cross-references and the ce:label element

Cross-referencing with the one-to-many ce:cross-refs is complicated. The content of that element is popularly thought of as the text to click on—but there is only one text to click on while there are multiple destinations. An online rendering of the document will want to present the user with a list of possible destinations. In this section, we assume that that list is in the form of a drop-down menu with destinations; in practice applications have often chosen to present the destinations inline. (For more details about that, see ce:cross-refs.)

The element ce:cross-refs must have more than one destination. The element ce:cross-ref is used for a simple link. Each destination is a valid id in the document. Elements may have ids whether or not they are being referred to.

The structure of the document must guarantee that such a drop-down list of destinations can be created. A crucial role is played by the ce:label elements of the destinations, because their content is used to fabricate the drop-down list. (In fact, this is a simplification, because not all elements possess a ce:label, but it is a concept worth remembering; more precise details are found below.)

The elements ce:intra-refs and ce:inter-refs are different. These elements conform to the XLink standard, and contain the names of the destinations in their subelements ce:intra-ref-title and ce:inter-ref-title. In the Output DTD each ce:cross-ref can be converted to ce:intra-ref.

In order to make one-to-many links work it is wrong, and even impossible, to analyze the content of the ce:cross-refs. The application should rely on the XML structure. To this end, there is a collection of rules which are described in this section. Roughly, the rules subscribe to the “drop-down menu principle”, which states that the destinations of the one-to-many link are the ce:label elements of the destination objects.

As an example, consider a document containing displayed equations Eqs. (2)–(14). The equations (4)–(13) are supplied on a graphic and they are shown in Scheme 6 (i.e., not captured in XML); the other equations are captured in XML. The following figure illustrates what happens if reference is made in the text to “Eqs. (2)–(14)”.

\[
\text{see } \langle \text{ce:cross-refs refid="fd2 fd3 sch6 fd14" id="crs15"} \rangle \text{Eqs. (2)\textendash(14)}</ce:cross-refs>
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{(2)} & \langle \text{ce:formula id="fd2"}<\text{ce:label>(2)}</text>\text{label}\rangle \\
\text{(3)} & \langle \text{ce:formula id="fd3"}<\text{ce:label>(3)}</text>\text{label}\rangle \\
\text{Scheme 6} & \langle \text{ce:figure id="sch6"}<\text{ce:label>Scheme 6</text>\text{label}\rangle \\
\text{(14)} & \langle \text{ce:formula id="fd14"}<\text{ce:label>(14)}</text>\text{label}\rangle \\
\end{array}
\]

The “drop-down” menu, indicated above by the box underneath the “Eqs. (2)–(14)” (the text to click on), contains the ce:label elements of the four destinations, not all of which are displayed equations.

The rules for cross-referencing depend on the element. For each situation, a suggested “drop-down menu item” text is given below. In some cases, it is not even allowed to use ce:cross-refs to certain destinations.
Even though the XML validation checks the validity of the rules, rendering applications should be able to deal with exceptions and error situations. The id itself, for instance, could be used as a last resort.

**No ce:cross-refs allowed**

It is not allowed to use the one-to-many ce:cross-refs to the following destinations:

- ce:abstract
- ce:affiliation
- ce:anchor
- ce:acknowledgment
- ce:author
- ce:biography
- ce:collaboration
- ce:def-term
- ce:displayed-quote
- ce:glossary-entry
- ce:index-entry
- ce:index-flag
- ce:inter-ref
- ce:inter-refs-text
- ce:intra-ref
- ce:intra-refs-text
- ce:link
- ce:note-para
- ce:para
- ce:section-title
- ce:simple-para
- ce:text
- ce:textrfn
- ce:textrref

It is, of course, allowed to use ce:cross-ref.

**Mandatory ce:label**

If the following elements are the target of a ce:cross-refs, they must have a ce:label element:

- ce:bib-reference
- ce:correspondence
- ce:e-component
- ce:enunciation
- ce:figure
- ce:footnote
- ce:list-item
- ce:table
- ce:table-footnote
- ce:textbox

(*) Ensured by the DTD. The suggested “drop-down” text is the content of ce:label.

**Mandatory ce:section-title**

If the following elements are the target of a ce:cross-refs they must have a ce:section-title element:

- ce:bibliography
- ce:bibliography-sec
- ce:exam-answers
- ce:exam-questions
- ce:further-reading
- ce:further-reading-sec
- ce:glossary
- ce:glossary-sec
- ce:index
- ce:index-sec

(*) Ensured by the DTD. The suggested “drop-down” text is the content of the ce:section-title.

**Mandatory ce:label or ce:section-title**

If the following elements are the target of a ce:cross-refs (plural), they must have a ce:label and/or a ce:section-title element:

- ce:def-list
- ce:list
- ce:section

The suggested “drop-down” text is the concatenation of the ce:label and the ce:section-title.

**Element ce:formula**

If the ce:formula does not contain nested ce:formulae, then it must have a ce:label subelement if it is the target of ce:cross-ref or ce:cross-refs.

If the ce:formula has nested ce:formula subequations, then the following rules apply.

1. If the top ce:formula is the target of a cross-reference (ce:cross-ref or ce:cross-refs), either it must possess a ce:label element itself or all nested ce:formulae must possess one.
2. If a nested \texttt{ce:formula} is the target of a cross-reference, it must have a \texttt{ce:label} element.

3. A \texttt{ce:label} may not occur on both the top and the nested level.

The suggested “drop-down menu” item text belonging to an \texttt{id} contains the content of the \texttt{ce:label} or the \texttt{ce:labels} of the sublevel.

\textbf{Elements} \texttt{sb:reference}, \texttt{ce:other-ref}

If beside an \texttt{sb:reference} the parent \texttt{ce:bib-reference} does not contain any other \texttt{sb:reference} nor any \texttt{ce:other-ref}s, then the \texttt{sb:reference} may not be the target of a cross-reference. (The reference must be made to the \texttt{ce:bib-reference}.)

If beside a \texttt{ce:other-ref} the parent \texttt{ce:bib-reference} does not contain any other \texttt{ce:other-ref} nor any \texttt{sb:reference}s, then the \texttt{ce:other-ref} may not be the target of a cross-reference. (The reference must be made to the \texttt{ce:bib-reference}.)

Any elements \texttt{sb:reference} and \texttt{ce:other-ref} that are the target of a cross-reference, must have a \texttt{ce:label} subelement.

All bibliographic references within \texttt{ce:bibliography} must be referred to from within the document (unless the XML file is of the \texttt{HEAD-AND-TAIL} variety). This means that for each \texttt{ce:bib-reference} at least one reference is made to either the \texttt{id} of the \texttt{ce:bib-reference} (and to zero or more child-\texttt{sb:reference}s and child-\texttt{ce:other-ref}s) \texttt{or} to the \texttt{ids} of all child-\texttt{sb:reference}s and all child-\texttt{ce:other-ref}s.

The elements \texttt{sb:reference} and \texttt{ce:other-ref} are “incomplete” cross-reference targets: their \texttt{ce:label} element is not meaningful for cross-referencing purposes without the \texttt{ce:label} element of their parent. This means that, in a one-to-many link with \texttt{sb:reference} and/or \texttt{ce:other-ref} elements, the “drop-down menu” (see earlier in this section) should show a combination of the \texttt{ce:label} elements of the cross-referenced \texttt{sb:reference} or \texttt{ce:other-ref} and that of the parent \texttt{ce:bib-reference} element.

\texttt{XML}

```xml
<ce:para id="p63">...
   Refs. <ce:cross-refs refid="bb2a or3b bib4" id="crs15">[2a,3b,4]</ce:cross-refs>
   ...
<ce:bibliography id="bb11">...
   <sb:reference id="bb2a"><ce:label>(a)</ce:label>...</sb:reference>
   <sb:reference id="bb2b"><ce:label>(b)</ce:label>...</sb:reference>
<ce:bib-reference>
   <sb:reference id="bb3a"><ce:label>(a)</ce:label>...</sb:reference>
   <other-ref id="or3b"><ce:label>(b)</ce:label>...</other-ref>
<ce:bib-reference>
```
Presentation
see Refs. [2a,3b,4]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{[2] & (a)} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle \text{ce:bib-reference id="bib2"} \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:label}[2]\rangle \\
& \quad \langle \text{sb:reference id="bb2a"} \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:label}(a)\rangle \\
\text{[3] & (b)} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle \text{ce:bib-reference id="bib3"} \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:label}[3]\rangle \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:other-ref id="or3b"} \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:label}(b)\rangle \\
\text{[4]} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle \text{ce:bib-reference id="bib4"} \\
& \quad \langle \text{ce:label}[4]\rangle
\end{align*}
\]
Text effects

The text effect elements are listed in the parameter entity %text-effect; and include the elements ce:sup, ce:inf, ce:hsp, ce:vsp, the font-decoration elements ce:underline, ce:cross-out, as well as the five font-changing elements. The element ce:br is also considered to be a text effect element.

The content of the font-changing and font-decoration elements and the text effects ce:sup and ce:inf is described by the parameter entity %richstring.data;. They may contain text, but no footnotes, anchors, cross-references and MathML formulae.

Font-changing and font-decoration elements

The opening tag of a font-changing or font-decoration element changes the properties of the font. The font-decoration elements and most font-changing elements, the font-style changing elements, change only one aspect of the current font, but other font-changing elements, the font-family changing elements, replace the current font. The closing tag undoes the changes and restores the font properties to the values that were in effect at the opening tag.

The font-changing elements are listed in the parameter entity %font-change;. Their meaning is listed in Table 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Sample input</th>
<th>Sample output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Font-decoration elements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:underline</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:underline&gt;any&lt;/ce:underline&gt;</code></td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:cross-out</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:cross-out&gt;any&lt;/ce:cross-out&gt;</code></td>
<td>###</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:italic</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:italic&gt;any&lt;/ce:italic&gt;</code></td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:bold</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:bold&gt;P&lt;/ce:bold&gt;(x)</code></td>
<td>P(x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:small-caps</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:small-caps&gt;Goldfarb&lt;/ce:small-caps&gt;</code></td>
<td>GOLODFARB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Font-style changing elements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:monospace</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:monospace&gt;var&lt;/ce:monospace&gt;</code></td>
<td>var</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:sans-serif</td>
<td><code>&lt;ce:sans-serif&gt;A&lt;/ce:sans-serif&gt;</code></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The default font, i.e. the font that is used when no font-changing element is open, is defined by the journal style. In print that is the journal's typesetting instructions. There are no font-changing elements to set the font to the default font. One can only revert to the default font by closing all font-changing elements.

Combinations of font-changing and font-decoration elements

For all types of font-changing and font-decoration elements that can be combined with each other, the order in which they are opened is irrelevant.

Font-family changing elements ce:sans-serif, ce:monospace. The font-family changing elements ce:sans-serif and ce:monospace are mutually exclusive. If these elements...
are nested, the outer font-family changing element loses its effect until the inner font-family changing element is closed.

**Font-style changing elements** `ce:italic`, `ce:bold` and `ce:small-caps` and **font-decoration elements** `ce:cross-out`, `ce:underline`. The font-style changing elements `ce:italic`, `ce:bold` and `ce:small-caps` and the font-decoration elements `ce:cross-out` and `ce:underline` can be combined with each other and with each of the font-family changing elements. The font-style changing elements have the effect of changing the style of the current font. The font-decoration elements have the effect of adding underlining or cross-out to the current font.

**Text effect element** `ce:br`. Text element `ce:br` can only be used in cells.

### Copy edit considerations

Care must be taken that font-changing elements are switched off to avoid unwanted effects. For instance, compare the following two examples where a formula is structured outside MathML (which is to be avoided):

**XML**

```xml
<ce:italic>f(x<ce:sup>2</ce:sup>)</ce:italic>
```

**Presentation**

\(f(x^2)\)

**Explanation**

Observe that the parentheses and the superior 2 are italicized.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:italic>f</ce:italic>(<ce:italic>x</ce:italic><ce:sup>2</ce:sup>)
```

**Presentation**

\(f(x^2)\)

Font-changing and font-decoration elements cannot contain anchors and cross-references. When such an element occurs in a text with a font change or decoration, the font-changing or font-decoration elements must be closed before the element, opened at the start of the element’s content and closed again at its end, and opened again after the element.

**XML**

```xml
```

**Presentation**

See Ref. [2] for an important restriction.

Font-changing elements should not be used to introduce a style. For instance, if titles are to be displayed in caps and small caps, this should be handled by the document style and not by the use of the element `ce:small-caps`.

### Rendering notes

Rendering applications should be aware that certain glyphs may change appearance when a font-changing element is applied (e.g. a sans-serif “jnodot”).
Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, elements `<ce:italic>`, `<ce:bold>`, `<ce:small-caps>`, `<ce:monospace>` and `<ce:sans-serif>` were called `it`, `b`, `scp`, `ty` and `ssf`, respectively.

As open-face, German (fraktur) and script characters should only appear in math mode, the elements `of`, `ge` and `ac` have no counterparts in DTD 5.0. See the chapter on MathML (Chapter 11, p. 529) for more information.

The elements `<ce:cross-out>` and `<ce:underline>` were introduced in DTD 5.0 by popular demand.
Chapter 7 – The Common Element Pool

Parameter entities

Here we list the parameter entities that are used in the DTDs. Parameter entities are used to define common parts of a DTD, i.e., parts that are (or could be) used several times. We distinguish three groups of parameter entities, according to their role in the DTDs.

Data entities

Data entities contain elements that appear within the text; each data entity contains a group of elements that play a similar role in the structuring of an article, and that therefore appear as alternatives of each other.

```
<!ENTITY % font-change "ce:bold|ce:italic|ce:monospace|ce:sans-serif|ce:small-caps">
<!ENTITY % text-effect "%font-change;|ce:sup|ce:inf|ce:underline|ce:cross-out|ce:hsp|ce:vsp">
<!ENTITY % text-objects "ce:anchor|ce:grant-sponsor|ce:grant-number">
<!ENTITY % lists "ce:def-list|ce:list">
<!ENTITY % math "mml:math|ce:math">
<!ENTITY % display "ce:display|ce:displayed-quote|ce:enunciation">
<!ENTITY % string.data "#PCDATA %local.string.data;">
<!ENTITY % richstring.data "#PCDATA|ce:glyph|%text-effect;|ce:inline-figure %local.richstring.data;">
<!ENTITY % text.data "%richstring.data;|%text-effect;|ce:inline-figure %local.text.data;">
<!ENTITY % textlink.data "%text.data;|ce:inter-ref">
<!ENTITY % textfn.data "%text.data;|ce:footnote|%cross-ref-s; %local.textfn.data;">
<!ENTITY % textref.data "%text.data;|%cross-ref-s;|%inter-ref-s; %local.textref.data;">
<!ENTITY % nondisplay.data "%textref.data;|ce:footnote|ce:anchor %local.nondisplay.data;">
<!ENTITY % note.data "%textref.data;|%display;|%lists;|%text-objects; %local.note.data;">
<!ENTITY % cell.data "%textref.data;|%display;|%lists;|%cell-borders; |tb:alignmark|ce:br %local.cell.data;">
<!ENTITY % spar.data "%textref.data;|%display;|%lists;|ce:footnote| %text-objects; %local.spar.data;">
<!ENTITY % par.data "%textref.data;|ce:float-anchor|%display;|%lists;|ce:footnote| %text-objects; %local.par.data;">
```

The “local” entities, e.g., %local.par.data; or %local.spar.data;, are all declared to be empty in the common element pool. However, they can be used by DTDs to add elements to the content of the data entities. For example, in books it is useful to add information to the text that can later be used to generate an index. This can be done with ce:index-flag. The Elsevier Book DTD therefore declares the following two “local” entities:
The effect is that `ce:index-flag` can appear in any element that has `%par.data;` or `%spar.data;` in its content model.

The above .data entities were introduced to make the DTD more restrictive. Table 4 shows which elements in the common element pool have which parameter entity as content model.

Table 4: Content model of data elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter entity</th>
<th>Elements with that data model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>%string.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:alt-text</code>, <code>ce:article-number</code>, <code>ce:copyright</code>, <code>ce:doi</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:edition</code>, <code>ce:indexed-name</code>, <code>ce:initials</code>, <code>ce:isbn</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:issn</code>, <code>ce:pii</code>, <code>sb:article-number</code>, <code>sb:isbn</code>, <code>sb:issn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%richstring.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:alt-name</code>, <code>ce:anchor</code>, <code>ce:bold</code>, <code>ce:copyright-line</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:cross-out</code>, <code>ce:degrees</code>, <code>ce:first-page</code>, <code>ce:given-name</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:imprint</code>, <code>ce:inf</code>, <code>ce:italic</code>, <code>ce:last-page</code>, <code>ce:monospace</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:ranking</code>, <code>ce:roles</code>, <code>ce:small-caps</code>, <code>ce:suffix</code>, <code>ce:sup</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:underline</code>, <code>sb:date</code>, <code>sb:edition</code>, <code>sb:first-page</code>, <code>sb:issue-nr</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>sb:last-page</code>, <code>sb:location</code>, <code>sb:name</code>, <code>sb:volume-nr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%text.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:collab-aff</code>, <code>ce:compound-formula</code>, <code>ce:compound-name</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:cross-ref</code>, <code>ce:cross-refs</code>, <code>ce:define-term</code>, <code>ce:e-address</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:grant-number</code>, <code>ce:grant-sponsor</code>, <code>ce:index-flag-see</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:index-flag-see-also</code>, <code>ce:index-flag-term</code>, <code>ce:inter-ref</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:inter-ref-title</code>, <code>ce:inter-referencing</code>, <code>ce:intra-ref</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:intra-ref-title</code>, <code>ce:intra-referencing</code>, <code>ce:label</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:miscellaneous</code>, <code>ce:reader-see</code>, <code>ce:see</code>, <code>ce:see-also</code>, <code>ce:surname</code>, <code>sb:collaboration</code>, <code>sb:conference</code>, <code>sb:main-title</code>, <code>sb:subtitle</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%textlink.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:text</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%textfn.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:alt-title</code>, <code>ce:alt-subtitle</code>, <code>ce:chem</code>, <code>ce:dedication</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:presented</code>, <code>ce:subtitle</code>, <code>ce:textfn</code>, <code>ce:title</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%textref.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:glossary-def</code>, <code>ce:glossary-heading</code>, <code>ce:index-heading</code>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ce:textref</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%nondisplay.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:section-title</code>, <code>sb:comment</code>, <code>mml:mtext</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%note.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:note-para</code>, <code>ce:source</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%cell.data;</code></td>
<td><code>entry</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%spar.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:section-para</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%par.data;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:para</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%parsec;</code></td>
<td><code>ce:sections</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%name;</code></td>
<td><code>sb:author</code>, <code>sb:editor</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The general-purpose elements `ce:text`, `ce:textfn` and `ce:textref` use these data entities also and are used as containers in order to avoid mixed content.

To find out which elements can be used in e.g. `%textfn.data;` the parameter entities in its model need to be expanded. Parameter entities in an expanded model also need to be expanded, etc. If we take the “local” entities to be empty, then it becomes clear that `%textfn.data;` can contain everything `%text.data;` can contain as well as the elements `ce:footnote`, `ce:cross-ref`, `ce:cross-refs`, `ce:inter-ref` and `ce:inter-referencing`. Entity `%textref.data;` can contain the same elements as `%textfn.data;` except for `ce:footnote`; additionally elements `ce:inter-ref` and `ce:inter-referencing` are allowed.
The elements `ce:note-para` and `ce:simple-para` are variants of the paragraph element in which fewer structures are allowed. The following elements consist of simple paragraphs: `ce:abstract-sec`, `ce:biography`, `ce:caption`, `ce:legend`, `ce:note` (in the bibliography), `ce:displayed-quote`. The following elements consist of note paragraphs: `ce:article-footnote`, `ce:footnote`, `ce:table-footnote`.

**Content model entities**

Content model entities contain pieces of content model that are shared by several elements.

```xml
<!ENTITY % copyright "ce:copyright, ce:copyright-line?">
<!ENTITY % name "((ce:given-name, ce:surname) | (ce:surname, ce:given-name?)), ce:suffix?, ce:alt-name*">
<!ENTITY % parsec "(ce:para | ce:section)*">
<!ENTITY % titles "((ce:title, ce:subtitle?, (ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle?)*)*)">
<!ENTITY % sb.titles "((sb:title, sb:translated-title?), sb:translated-title?)">
<!ENTITY % cross-ref-s "%cross-ref;|%cross-refs;">
<!ENTITY % inter-ref-s "ce:inter-ref|ce:inter-refs">
```

The following parameter entities are overruled by other DTDs. The local declarations are described in the documentation of the other DTDs. Below are the default values.

```xml
<!ENTITY % see "ce:see">
<!ENTITY % glossary-entry-refs"(ce:see+ | (ce:cross-ref | ce:intra-ref | ce:inter-ref)+">
<!ENTITY % index-entry-refs"(ce:see+ | (ce:cross-ref | ce:intra-ref)+">
<!ENTITY % cross-ref "ce:cross-ref|ce:intra-ref">
<!ENTITY % cross-refs "ce:cross-refs|ce:intra-refs">
```

**Attribute type entities**

Attribute type entities contain sets of possible values for attributes.

```xml
<!ENTITY % abstract-class "(author|editor|graphical|teaser|
  author-highlights|editor-highlights|sda)">
<!ENTITY % copyright-type "(full-transfer|limited-transfer|no-transfer|
  unknown|us-gov|crown|society|other|joint|
  free-of-copyright)">
<!ENTITY % e-address-type "(email|url|social-media)">
<!ENTITY % hline "(bar|tcb|tcb|tsqb|b-sqb|circ|tilde|larr|larr|
  lharu|rharu|tpar|bpar)">
<!ENTITY % language "(de|en|es|fr|it|pt|ru)">
<!ENTITY % language-type "(en|non-en|iso|unknown)">
<!ENTITY % loc "(pre|post)">
```
Parameter entities

Chapter 7 – The Common Element Pool

<!ENTITY % style "(s|d|t|da|dot|b|bl|n)">
<!ENTITY % view "(compact|standard|extended|compact-standard|
standard-extended|all)">
<!ENTITY % vline "(lpar|rpar|lsqb|rsqb|lcub|rcub|lang|rang|vb|sol|
bsol|lceil|rceil|lfloor|rfloor|dharr|uharr|darr|
uarrr|varr)">
<!ENTITY % yesorno "(0|1)">

In addition there are the attribute type entities %iso639; and %glyph-names;.

Entity %iso639; contains the ISO 639 list of language codes. These codes are described in a separate section (p. 192).

Entity %glyph-names; contains the names of additional allowed glyphs (not present as Unicode characters). They are described in the section Elsevier’s additional glyphs (p. 19).
See also the description of ce:glyph.

<!ENTITY % iso639-cur "aa|ab|af|am|ar|as|ay|az|ba|be|bg|bh|bm|bo|br|
cal|co|cs|cy|da|de|dz|el|en|eo|et|eu|fa|fi|fj|
fo|fr|fy|ga|gd|gl|gn|gu|ha|he|hi|hr|hu|ia|id|
ie|ik|is|it|ja|jv|ka|kk|kl|km|ko|ks|ku|ky|la|
lit|lv|m|mi|ml|mn|mr|ms|mt|my|na|ne|
l|no|om|or|pa|pl|ps|pt|qu|rm|ro|ru|rw|sa|
ds|si|sk|sl|sn|so|sq|sr|st|su|sv|sw|ta|
t|th|ti|tk|tl|tn|to|tr|ts|tt|tw|uk|ur|uz|vi|
vo|wo|xh|yi|yo|zh|zu">
<!ENTITY % iso639-obs "">
<!ENTITY % glyph-names "'(S|bigdot|btmg|camb|ctl|dbnd|dcart|dlcorn|dgrv|hbar|heng|herma|hri|hriss|
htzh|ht|jnodot|ld2bd|ld2td|lbd|lbd2bd2|lbd2td2|lbd3|
lozf|lozf||lrd|lri|lris|lris3|ncurt|nsmid|nspar|
p3ash|pdptd|pdtdb|pent|phtkp|pptbd|ptbd|ptbd2d|
qbdn|qbnd|qbnd2d|qbnd2d6|qbnd3|qbnd6|rad|radbd|radbd2|radbd2d|radbd3|
rehrl|resmck|risfl|risfls|sbnd|sbvl|smid|spar|
sqfb|sqfne|sqfne|sqfsw|sqf|sbnd|tbnd|tbnd6|tcart|trisla|trnomeg)"">

Version history

In CEP 1.1.1 value it was added to %language;.

In CEP 1.1.2 ce:br was added to %cell.data; Entities %copyright; and %external-file.att; were introduced while %size-info.att; was removed.

In CEP 1.1.3 %see was introduced.

In CEP 1.1.4 %see; was removed while %glossary-entry-refs; and %index-entry-refs; were added. Entity %common-reqaltimg.att; was added to CEPs 1.1.4 and 1.1.0.1.

In CEP 1.1.5 %text-objects; was added. It replaced element ce:anchor in %note.data;, %spar.data; and %par.data; Entity %language; was removed.

In CEP 1.1.6 elements ce:see and ce:inter-ref were added to entity %glossary-entry-refs; while multiple ce:see elements were made possible in entity %index-entry-refs;.
In CEP 1.2.0 `ce:alt-name` was added to `%name`; and `ce:copyright-line` was added to `%copyright;`. Additionally values `author-highlights`, `editor-highlights` and `sda` were added to `%abstract-class;`, while value `free-of-copyright` was added to `%copyright-type;`.

In CEP 1.4.0 entity `%textlink.data;` was introduced.

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was introduced and value `social-media` was added to `%e-address-type;`. 
## ISO 639 list of language codes

This section gives a description of the two-letter languages codes from International Standard ISO 639. These codes are used by all elements whose `xml:lang` attributes take their values in `%iso639;`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>language</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>language</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>language</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td>Abkhazian</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>ro</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aa</td>
<td>Afar</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Indonesian</td>
<td>rn</td>
<td>Rundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>Interlingua</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sq</td>
<td>Albanian</td>
<td>ie</td>
<td>Interlingue</td>
<td>sm</td>
<td>Samoan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>ik</td>
<td>Inupiaq</td>
<td>sg</td>
<td>Sango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>Irish Gaelic</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hy</td>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>gd</td>
<td>Scots Gaelic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>Assamese</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>sr</td>
<td>Serbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay</td>
<td>Aymara</td>
<td>jw</td>
<td>Javanese</td>
<td>sn</td>
<td>Shona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>az</td>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
<td>kl</td>
<td>Kalaallisut</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>Sindhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba</td>
<td>Bashkir</td>
<td>kn</td>
<td>Kannada</td>
<td>si</td>
<td>Sinhalese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eu</td>
<td>Basque</td>
<td>ks</td>
<td>Kashmiri</td>
<td>sk</td>
<td>Slovak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>Belarusian</td>
<td>kk</td>
<td>Kazakh</td>
<td>sl</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bn</td>
<td>Bengali</td>
<td>km</td>
<td>Khmer</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>Somali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bh</td>
<td>Bihari</td>
<td>rw</td>
<td>Kinyarwanda</td>
<td>st</td>
<td>Southern Sotho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi</td>
<td>Bislama</td>
<td>ky</td>
<td>Kirghiz</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>br</td>
<td>Breton</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>Sudanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bg</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>sw</td>
<td>Swahili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>Burmese</td>
<td>lo</td>
<td>Lao</td>
<td>ss</td>
<td>Swati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>Catalan</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>sv</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zh</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>lv</td>
<td>Latvian</td>
<td>tl</td>
<td>Tagalog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co</td>
<td>Corsican</td>
<td>ln</td>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>tg</td>
<td>Tajik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hr</td>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>lt</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>Tamil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cs</td>
<td>Czech</td>
<td>mk</td>
<td>Macedonian</td>
<td>tt</td>
<td>Tatar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>Malagasy</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>Telugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nl</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>ms</td>
<td>Malay</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dz</td>
<td>Dzongkha</td>
<td>ml</td>
<td>Malayalam</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>Tibetan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>mt</td>
<td>Maltese</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>Tigrinya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eo</td>
<td>Esperanto</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>Maori</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>Tonga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
<td>mr</td>
<td>Marathi</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td>Tsonga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fo</td>
<td>Faroese</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>Moldavian</td>
<td>tn</td>
<td>Tswana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fj</td>
<td>Fijian</td>
<td>mn</td>
<td>Mongolian</td>
<td>tr</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fi</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>Nauru</td>
<td>tk</td>
<td>Turkmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>Nepali</td>
<td>tw</td>
<td>Twi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fy</td>
<td>Frisian</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
<td>uk</td>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gl</td>
<td>Gallegan</td>
<td>oc</td>
<td>Occitan</td>
<td>ur</td>
<td>Urdu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>Georgian</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>Oriya</td>
<td>uz</td>
<td>Uzbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>om</td>
<td>Oromo</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>Panjabi</td>
<td>vo</td>
<td>Wolapik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gn</td>
<td>Guarani</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>Persian</td>
<td>cy</td>
<td>Welsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gu</td>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>pl</td>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>wo</td>
<td>Wolof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha</td>
<td>Hausa</td>
<td>pt</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>xh</td>
<td>Xhosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>Pushto</td>
<td>yi</td>
<td>Yiddish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>qu</td>
<td>Quechua</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>Yoruba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>rm</td>
<td>Rhaeto-Romance</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>Zulu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Views

The need to distinguish several product types and to support these from a single source XML file, has led to the introduction of the view attribute. The following common elements possess a view attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ce:abstract</td>
<td>ce:exam-reference</td>
<td>ce:keywords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:abstract-sec</td>
<td>ce:further-reading</td>
<td>ce:nomenclature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:acknowledgment</td>
<td>ce:further-reading-sec</td>
<td>ce:note-para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:appendices</td>
<td>ce:glossary</td>
<td>ce:para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:bibliography</td>
<td>ce:glossary-sec</td>
<td>ce:section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:bibliography-sec</td>
<td>ce:include-item</td>
<td>ce:simple-para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:biography</td>
<td>ce:index</td>
<td>ce:stereochem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:exam-answers</td>
<td>ce:index-sec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce:exam-questions</td>
<td>ce:intro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some elements in the DTDs also possess this attribute, e.g. body in the JA DTD.

The values that this attribute can take are listed in %view; they are: compact, standard, extended, compact-standard, standard-extended and all (default, meaning all three views). If no view attribute is specified, this is the same as all.

In this model, an application decides it is either “compact”, “standard” or “extended”. An application that has, say, extended views displays all elements whose view attribute has values all, standard-extended and extended and ignores all elements with other values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Render only elements with views</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>compact</td>
<td>all, compact, compact-standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>standard</td>
<td>all, standard, compact-standard, standard-extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extended</td>
<td>all, extended, standard-extended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Online applications such as ScienceDirect® are typically “extended” applications, while the printed version typically is “standard”. Palmtop devices and such could be “compact”.

Online versus extended

While it is useful to visualize “extended” as the online product and standard as the print product, this is not necessarily the case. It should be perfectly possible to print an extended product—or, create a web PDF file for it. There are numerous cases of products where a PDF file appears online of a full journal article, while the printed issue only contains the abstract.

Views should not be confused with electronic components. Electronic components are captured with ce:e-component. These are external files that in principle could contain anything. It is a mistake to think that these can only appear in “extended” views; indeed, they can appear in compact, standard and extended views. On paper, this means showing the ce:alt-e-component subelement, only in electronic products one can, of course, benefit from the real electronic component. Note that a web PDF file, although an “electronic file”, is not suitable for e-components, yet, as explained above, it may well contain the extended view.
Views (figures, tables, textboxes, electronic components) that only appear within some
views, say only in extended views, are contained within ce:floats along with the other
floats. Their ce:float-anchor can be found within an extended section or paragraph.

Hence, e-component vs. conventional and standard view vs. extended view are two inde-
pendent things, indeed all four combinations make sense, including:

- A figure within an extended view. This is a figure that satisfies all the CAP specifi-
cations for artwork regarding file types and resolution.
- An e-component within any view. This can, in principle, be any external compo-
nent varying: audio, video, spreadsheets, source documents. Still images can also be e-components: this signals that the artwork has not undergone the stringent CAP validation. In media that cannot handle the e-component, ce:alt-e-component is used.

Views within views

Applications choose to be exactly one of “compact”, “standard”, or “extended”. If an appli-
cation encounters an element with a view that is not meant for it, it should skip the element
completely, irrespective of what it contains.

For instance, if an “extended” application encounters a section with a compact-standard
view, it ignores that whole section completely. If, within that section there happen to be
paragraphs or sections with views extended, then these will not display in the extended
application at all, and also the paragraphs with the default view will not be picked
up by the extended application. Consequently, views within views only make sense if they
narrow down the view.

Example 1.

The first example deals with a collection of electronic components that are added to the
online version. The printed version only contains a link to the online version.

XML

<ce:appendices>
  <ce:section view="compact-standard" id="s450">
    <ce:label>Appendix A</ce:label>
    <ce:section-title id="st140">Background data</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p350">The online version of this article contains additional background data in the form of Microsoft Excel spreadsheets and in additional maps. Please visit <ce:inter-ref id="ir082" xlink:href="doi:10.1016/j.cagd.2004.01.003">https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cagd.2004.01.003</ce:inter-ref>.
</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
  <ce:section view="extended" id="s460">
    <ce:label>Appendix A</ce:label>
    <ce:section-title id="st150">Background data</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p351">The results of the experiments of the previous sections are included as Microsoft Excel spreadsheets. The first spreadsheet, <ce:cross-ref id="cr040" refid="ec1"/> Spreadsheet 1 is ordered by country, while <ce:cross-references id="crs002" refid="ec2 ec3">Spreadsheets 2 and 3</ce:cross-references> are ordered by population.
</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
</ce:appendices>
Furthermore, the data is displayed in thirty-seven maps of the largest world cities, <ce:cross-refs id="crs003" refid="map1 map2 ... map37">Maps I–XXXVII</ce:cross-refs><ce:float-anchor refid="map1"/>...<ce:float-anchor refid="map37"/>

Example 2
In some publications, it is common to publish the appendices only online. The printed product only contains the main body of the text. This is achieved using ce:appendices with an extended view.

Similarly, there are journals for which some less important articles only appear full text online; the printed product merely contains the head of the article. This is achieved by furnishing body and tail with an extended view only.

Cross-referencing to the right view
It is only allowed to cross-reference to a destination that is contained within equal or wider view than where the cross-reference appears, so as to avoid linking to a destination that does not exist in a certain rendering.

Suppose that there are two sections, one compact-standard and one extended, created in order to obtain two parallel views of the section. Suppose both sections contain a version of the same enunciation Theorem 1. Then the only way to cross-reference to Theorem 1 from within a portion of the text is to also create two parallel paragraphs with different views, each containing a ce:cross-ref to the appropriate version of the enunciation.
Chapter 8

The Elements of the CEP

This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the elements in the “core” common element pool; i.e., it excludes the elements for structuring bibliographic references, MathML and Extended CALS tables.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:abstract**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:abstract ( ce:section-title?, ce:abstract-sec+, ce:figure? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:abstract
id ID #IMPLIED
class %abstract-class; "author"
xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:abstract ( ce:section-title?, ce:abstract-sec+, ce:figure? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:abstract
id ID #IMPLIED
view %view; 'all'
class %abstract-class; "author"
xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:abstract` is used to capture abstracts in a variety of forms.

**Usage**

The word “abstract” has various different meanings in publishing. For instance, a very short article, often in conference proceedings, is called an abstract, and so are short summaries of articles or chapters appearing in the frontmatter. The element `ce:abstract` is used to capture abstracts in the latter sense. It consists of an optional title, one or more abstract-sections, and an optional figure. It has three attributes, `id`, `class` and `xml:lang`. For each combination of `class` and `xml:lang`, only one abstract may exist in the document.

The language of the abstract, when different from the language of the article, should be specified in the `xml:lang` attribute. It takes its values in the ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192).

The type of abstract is specified by the `class` attribute, which takes its values in %abstract-class; containing the following values.

- **author** (default) is used for abstracts supplied by the author.
- **author-highlights** is a short list of article highlights supplied by the author.
- **editor** is used for abstracts supplied by the editor.
- **editor-highlights** is a short list of article highlights supplied by the editor.
- **graphical** is used for graphical abstracts. Only these abstracts may contain the optional `ce:figure`.
- **sda** is used for structural digital abstracts. An SDA is a structured summary of protein interactions mentioned in the article.
- **teaser** is used for short “teaser” abstracts that attract the attention of the reader. Usually, the teaser abstracts are not found in the rendering of the item itself; instead, they are commonly used to create an extended table of contents of an issue (i.e., a table of contents interspersed with teaser abstracts).
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

XML

<ce:abstract id="abs001">
  <ce:section-title id="secti001">Abstract</ce:section-title>
  <ce:abstract-sec id="abss001">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp001">In this document, we introduce
      the new XML DTD.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:abstract-sec>
</ce:abstract>

<ce:abstract id="abs001fr" xml:lang="fr">
  <ce:section-title id="secti002">Résumé</ce:section-title>
  <ce:abstract-sec id="abss002">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp002">Dans ce document, on présente
      le nouveau DTD XML.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:abstract-sec>
</ce:abstract>

Abstract sections may have a section title, and each ce:abstract-sec except the first
must have a section title.

Graphical abstracts have a ce:figure. If they contain text, this text comes in the usual
place, in ce:abstract-sec elements before the figure.

XML

<ce:abstract class="graphical" id="abs002">
  <ce:section-title id="secti003">Graphical abstract</ce:section-title>
  <ce:abstract-sec id="abss003">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp003">Copper chloride-catalyzed S-arylation
      of arenethiols is effected with activated aryl chlorides
      in water by using ethylenediamine as the pair
      ligand/base.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:abstract-sec>
  <ce:figure id="f001">
    <ce:link locator="fx1" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
xlink:href="pii:S09507051150010445/fx1"/>
  </ce:figure>
</ce:abstract>

Presentation

Copper chloride-catalyzed S-arylation of arenethiols is effected with activated aryl chlorides
in water by using ethylenediamine as the pair ligand/base.

![Chemical structure](attachment://chemical_image.png)

XML

<ce:abstract class="author-highlights" id="abs003">
  <ce:section-title id="secti004">Highlights</ce:section-title>
  <ce:abstract-sec id="abss004">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp004">
      • Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
    </ce:simple-para>
  </ce:abstract-sec>
</ce:abstract>
We solve an open problem left by Clifford and Popa. We show that finding $k$ subsets of maximum intersection is NP-hard. We also show that the problem is hard to approximate.
ce:abstract-sec

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:abstract-sec (ce:section-title?, ce:simple-para+)>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:abstract-sec (ce:section-title?, ce:simple-para+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:abstract-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:abstract-sec (ce:section-title?, ce:simple-para+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:abstract-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `ce:abstract-sec` contains a section within the abstract.

Usage

The attribute `role` allows one to categorize abstract sections, and attach a special meaning to them. Applications should ignore roles unknown to them and treat those abstract sections as usual. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. At the time of writing, the following, self-explanatory, roles exist.

- background
- case-study
- conclusion
- discussion
- introduction
- materials-methods
- research-in-context
- results

Version history

The `id` and `view` attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6, while the `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

`ce:abstract`
ce:acknowledgment

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:acknowledgment ( ce:section-title?, ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:acknowledgment
    id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:acknowledgment ( ce:section-title?, ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:acknowledgment
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:acknowledgment ( ce:section-title?, %parsec; )>
<!ATTLIST ce:acknowledgment
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `ce:acknowledgment` is used to capture an acknowledgment section within the body.

Usage

The acknowledgment section has an optional section title and consists of one or more paragraphs and sections. Each type of acknowledgment is to be captured in its own subsection and distinguished by a role. The following roles are defined:

- funding
- contributing
- supporting
- facilities
- supplies
- conflict-of-interest
- sponsor-role

```xml
<ce:acknowledgment id="ceack0010">
    <ce:section-title id="cest0020">Acknowledgment</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="cepara0045">The editors thank Bill Bernickus, Ton Bos, Jeroen Hogendorp, Simon Pepping, Rob Schrauwen, Chris Sturhann, Michael Ward and Ramanathan Ganapathi for their contributions.</ce:para>
</ce:acknowledgment>
```
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

<ce:acknowledgment id="ack0010">
  <ce:section-title id="cest0125">Acknowledgments</ce:section-title>
  <ce:para id="p0165" role="supporting">We thank T. Gonzales at the Texas Advanced Computing Center for providing the super computing system for data analysis, and Ju Li for helpful discussions to improve the manuscript. No conflict of interest declared.</ce:para>

  <ce:section id="sec5" role="funding">
    <ce:section-title id="cest0130">Funding</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p0170">This work is supported by grants (IOS1025947 and MCB1110957) from the National Science Foundation.</ce:para>
  </ce:section>

  <ce:section id="sec6" role="contributing">
    <ce:section-title id="cest0135">Author Contributions</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p0175">K.R.K., C.H.H, and N.G. conducted the experiments, analyzed the data, and wrote the paper. Z.C. and S.X. conducted the experiments. C.Z.J. designed the experiments, analyzed the data, and wrote the paper.</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
</ce:acknowledgment>

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called ack. Then it did not have a ce:section-title. The role and view attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6. In CEP 1.5.0 the model was changed to allow the use of subsections.

See also

ce:grant-number, ce:grant-sponsor
**ce:affiliation**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:affiliation ( ce:label?, ce:textfn )>  
<!ATTLIST ce:affiliation
   id ID #IMPLIED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:affiliation ( ce:label?, ce:textfn, sa:affiliation? )>  
<!ATTLIST ce:affiliation
   id ID #IMPLIED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.5.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:affiliation ( ce:label?, ce:textfn, sa:affiliation?,
   ce:source-text? )>  
<!ATTLIST ce:affiliation
   id ID #IMPLIED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   affiliation-id CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:affiliation ( ce:label?, ce:textfn, sa:affiliation?,
   ce:source-text? )>  
<!ATTLIST ce:affiliation
   id ID #IMPLIED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED
   affiliation-id CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

Affiliations are captured using the element **ce:affiliation**.

**Usage**

An author group (**ce:author-group**) may contain any number of affiliations.

It is allowed to have affiliations with no associated authors or collaborations. Such affiliations cannot have an **id**, because each affiliation with an **id** must be referred to. An affiliation with an **id** must have a **ce:label** element.

Currently no roles have been defined for the optional **role** attribute.

The **ce:label** element does not contain presentational elements, only the label of the affiliation. Linking of affiliations to authors is described under the **ce:author-group** element.

The actual content of the affiliation is found within the **ce:textfn** container subelement.

It is followed by **sa:affiliation** that contains the affiliation again, in a structured way. The element is optional for backward compatibility reasons, but it is required to be present.

The original text of the affiliation can be captured in element **ce:source-text**.
The attribute `id` can be used to link to the affiliation. The attribute `affiliation-id` contains a (globally) unique identification of the affiliation within the document. It is constructed from the content (`ce:textfn`).

**XML**

```xml
<ce:affiliation id="aff1"
    affiliation-id="S9999999416905646-0bedabc19e1fc077d4b6bb3ad8057ac5">
    <ce:label>a</ce:label>
    <ce:textfn>Elsevier, Radarweg 29,
        1043 NX Amsterdam, The Netherlands</ce:textfn>
    <sa:affiliation>
        <sa:organization>Elsevier</sa:organization>
        <sa:address-line>Radarweg 29</sa:address-line>
        <sa:city>Amsterdam</sa:city>
        <sa:postal-code>1043 NX</sa:postal-code>
        <sa:country>The Netherlands</sa:country>
    </sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>

<ce:affiliation id="aff2"
    affiliation-id="S9999999416905646-8e8ac469401077bd905ce2f997b9e7e0">
    <ce:label>b</ce:label>
    <ce:textfn>Elsevier Inc., P.O. Box 945, New York,
        NY 10159-0945, USA</ce:textfn>
    <sa:affiliation>
        <sa:organization>Elsevier Inc.</sa:organization>
        <sa:address-line>P.O. Box 945</sa:address-line>
        <sa:city>New York</sa:city>
        <sa:postal-code>NY 10159-0945</sa:postal-code>
        <sa:country>USA</sa:country>
    </sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>

<ce:affiliation id="aff3"
    affiliation-id="S9999999416905646-5b71a1b83a63dce0701b484123c21c0de">
    <ce:label>c</ce:label>
    <ce:textfn>Elsevier Ltd, The Boulevard, Langford Lane,
        Kidlington, Oxford OX5 1GB, UK</ce:textfn>
    <sa:affiliation>
        <sa:organization>Elsevier Ltd</sa:organization>
        <sa:address-line>The Boulevard</sa:address-line>
        <sa:address-line>Langford Lane</sa:address-line>
        <sa:city>Kidlington</sa:city>
        <sa:state>Oxford</sa:state>
        <sa:postal-code>OX5 1GB</sa:postal-code>
        <sa:country>UK</sa:country>
    </sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>
```

**Version history**

Subelement `sa:affiliation` was added in CEP 1.2.0. Attribute `affiliation-id` was added in CEP 1.5.0.

In CEP 1.6.0 subelement `ce:source-text` was added.
See also

ce:author-group and sa:affiliation
ce:alias

Declaration

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alias ( %string.data; )*>
```

Description

The alias of an author is captured using `ce:alias`.

Usage

Some authors from Asian countries in particular are in the habit of including a westernized version of their name in their article. This “alias” can be captured with `ce:alias`. It should not contain parentheses.

It is important to realize the difference between `ce:alt-name` and `ce:alias`: the alt-name element is intended to capture the author’s “official” name in its native language in case this is different from that of the article; the alias should capture the westernized version of that name.

```xml
<ce:author id="au01" author-id="S0042682216902241-20b4236c673a5744c707e10366c5394e">
  <ce:given-name>Ming Li</ce:given-name>
  <ce:surname>Fu</ce:surname>
  <ce:alt-name>&#x660E;&#x674E;&#x5BCC;</ce:alt-name>
  <ce:alias>Jimmy</ce:alias>
</ce:author>
```

Presentation

Ming Li Fu (明李富) (“Jimmy”)

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.6.0.

See also

`ce:author-group`, `ce:author`, `ce:alt-name`
**ce:alt-e-component**

*Declaration*

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-e-component ( ce:link | ( ce:caption, ce:link? ) )>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.1.6)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-e-component ( ce:link | ( ce:caption+, ce:link? ) )>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-e-component ( ce:link | ( ce:caption+, ce:link? ) )>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-e-component id ID #IMPLIED>
```

*Description*

The element `ce:alt-e-component` contains an alternative to an electronic component, e.g. a frame of a movie.

*Usage*

See `ce:e-component`.

*Version history*

As from CEP 1.1.2 the caption is repeatable. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:alt-name

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:alt-name ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

An alternate name for the author or editor is tagged using ce:alt-name. The attribute xml:lang indicates the language of the alternate name.

Usage

The ce:alt-name element is primarily used to capture the author’s name in a language different from the language of the item. This is common in articles written by Asian authors. It is not meant to capture a nickname, a maiden name or a different spelling of a name. It should not contain parentheses nor the alternate name as an image.

XML

```xml
<ce:author-group id="aug3">
  <ce:author id="au5" author-id="S0042682216902241-08ba49ba0a77935e83f9ae9729ebe981">
    <ce:surname>Jin</ce:surname>
    <ce:given-name>Chao</ce:given-name>
    <ce:alt-name>&#x9773; &#x8D85;</ce:alt-name>
  </ce:author>
</ce:author-group>
```

Presentation

Jin Chao (靳 超)

Rendering notes

The ce:alt-name generates parentheses.

Version history

ce:alt-name was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

ce:author
ce:alt-subtitle

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-subtitle xml:lang %language; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.5, 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-subtitle xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-subtitle id ID #IMPLIED xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-subtitle id ID #IMPLIED xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The element `ce:alt-subtitle` contains the subtitle of an article, chapter, or other item.

Usage

The element `ce:alt-subtitle` is used to capture the subtitle of an item, e.g. a journal article or book chapter, in an alternative language. It has one mandatory attribute `xml:lang`, which specifies the language of the alternative title. See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.

For more information about subtitles, see `ce:subtitle`.

XML

```xml
<ce:title id="t1">The Common Element Pool</ce:title>
<ce:subtitle id="st2">A modular approach to DTD design</ce:subtitle>
<ce:alt-title xml:lang="de">Der Pool der gemeinsamen Elemente</ce:alt-title>
<ce:alt-subtitle xml:lang="de">Eine modulare Weise des DTD Entwurfs</ce:alt-subtitle>
```

Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, the element `sbt` fulfilled the function of both `ce:subtitle` and `ce:alt-subtitle`; the language was specified in the parent `atl` element. In CEP 1.1.1 the value it was added to parameter entity `%language;`. As of CEP 1.1.5, all languages contained in `%iso639`; are allowed. Attribute `id` was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textfn.data;`. 
See also

ce:alt-title, ce:subtitle, ce:title
ce:alt-text

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-text ( %string.data; )>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-text
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:alt-text` contains a text equivalent for an image, audio file, etc.

Usage

The element `ce:alt-text` is used to capture an accurate description of non-text content like images and audio files. It can be used to populate HTML's `alt` attribute.

`ce:alt-text` has two optional attributes. Attribute `id` can be used to identify the element. Attribute `role` can be used to assign a specific role. The following values for `role` have been defined:

- `short` for a short (30 words or less) description,
- `long` for a long description.

There must be one `ce:alt-text` with `role` value `short` and only one `ce:alt-text` for every `role` value. The attribute `role` must be populated.

```xml
<ce:figure id="f055">
...
<ce:alt-text id="at070" role="short">Painting by John William Waterhouse, 'The lady of Shalott', 1888.</ce:alt-text>
...
</ce:figure>
```

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.4.0.

See also

`ce:figure, ce:e-component, ce:table, ce:textbox, ce:inline-figure`
ce:alt-title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-title (%textfn.data;)*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title xml:lang %language; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.5, 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-title (%textfn.data;)*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-title (%textfn.data;)*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title id ID #IMPLIED>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:alt-title (%textfn.data;)*>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title id ID #IMPLIED>
<!ATTLIST ce:alt-title xml:lang %iso639; #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The element **ce:alt-title** contains a title of an article, chapter, or other item, in an alternative language.

Usage

The element **ce:alt-title** is used to capture a title in a language different from the language of the item; it occurs one or more times within its parent element. It has one mandatory attribute **xml:lang**, which specifies the language of the alternative title. See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.

```xml
<ce:title id="t1">The Common Element Pool (CEP)</ce:title>
<ce:alt-title xml:lang="fr">Le Dépôt des Eléments Communs (DEC)</ce:alt-title>
```

Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, the element **at1** fulfilled the function of both **ce:title** and **ce:alt-title**; moreover, it contained the subtitle within it. In CEP 1.1.1 the value it was added to parameter entity %language; As of CEP 1.1.5 the complete list of languages contained in %iso639; can be used. Attribute **id** was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %textfn.data; was added to %textfn.data;.

See also

**ce:alt-subtitle, ce:subtitle, ce:title**
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:anchor**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:anchor ( %richstring.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:anchor
   id ID #REQUIRED
   role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **ce:anchor** is a piece of text that can be the target of a cross-reference.

**Usage**

An anchor is a (possibly empty) piece of text that can be the target of a cross-reference. It is similar to `<A NAME="...">` in HTML.

Anchor is special because it may have empty content, and it is an element referred without possessing a **ce:label** element.

```xml
<ce:anchor id="anc1">CH<ce:inf>3</ce:inf>C<ce:glyph name="tbnd6"/>N (<ce:bold>23</ce:bold>)</ce:anchor>

... a solution containing 20mmol of
<ce:cross-ref id="c4" refid="anc1"><ce:bold>23</ce:bold></ce:cross-ref>
```

The attribute **role** can be used to attach a certain meaning to the anchor. Currently no roles have been defined.

**Light reading**

**ce:anchor** may not be used in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY, HEAD-ONLY or HEAD-AND-TAIL files.
ce:appendices

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{<!ELEMENT } & \text{ce:appendices} ( \text{ce:section}+ )> \\
\text{<!ATTLIST } & \text{ce:appendices view %view; 'all'>}
\end{align*}
\]

Description

The element ce:appendices contains the appendix matter (consisting of one or more appendices, each a ce:section) of a document.

\[
\text{XML}
\begin{align*}
\text{<ce:appendices>}
\text{<ce:section id=’app1’>}
\text{<ce:label>Appendix A</ce:label>}
\text{<ce:section-title id=’st76’>Answers to the exercises</ce:section-title>}
\text{...}
\text{</ce:section>}
\text{<ce:section id=’app2’>}
\text{<ce:label>Appendix B</ce:label>}
\text{<ce:section-title id=’st77’>Basic skills</ce:section-title>}
\text{...}
\text{</ce:section>}
\text{</ce:appendices>}
\end{align*}
\]

Presentation

Appendix A. Answers to the exercises

Appendix B. Basic skills

\[
\text{XML}
\begin{align*}
\text{<ce:appendices view=’extended’>}
\text{<ce:section id=’app1’>Appendix A</ce:section>}
\text{<ce:section-title id=’st43’>Supplementary data</ce:section-title>}
\text{<ce:para id=’p90’>Supplementary data associated with this article ...}
\text{</ce:section>}
\text{<ce:section id=’app1s’ view=’compact-standard’>}
\text{<ce:section id=’app1’>Appendix A</ce:section>}
\text{<ce:section-title id=’st44’>Supplementary data</ce:section-title>}
\text{<ce:para id=’p91’>This appendix contains background data of our experiment in the form of four spreadsheets. ...}
\text{</ce:section>}
\text{</ce:appendices>}
\end{align*}
\]

Appendix A. Supplementary data

Supplementary data associated with this article can be found in the online version, at doi:10.1016/j.endend.2003.07.001.
Explanation

The above presentation is the compact-standard version.

Version history

The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

ce:section
ce:article-footnote

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)
<!ELEMENT ce:article-footnote ( ce:label?, ce:note-para+ )>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:article-footnote ( ce:label?, ce:note-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:article-footnote role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

The element ce:article-footnote is used to capture “article footnotes”. These are footnotes that are commonly displayed at the title, and that contain information relevant to the whole article. Important information that must be presented with any rendering of the article, such as acknowledgment of grants, is usually the content of the ce:article-footnote.

Usage

Each article footnote is a separate ce:article-footnote which consists of the footnote symbol in ce:label and a sequence of note paragraphs, ce:note-para.

XML
<ce:article-footnote>
  <ce:label>&z.star;</ce:label>
  <ce:note-para id="np67">An earlier version of this article appeared in ...</ce:note-para>
</ce:article-footnote>
<ce:article-footnote>
  <ce:label>&z.star;&z.star;</ce:label>
  <ce:note-para id="np68">This work was supported by NSF NYI grant CCR-9457806.</ce:note-para>
</ce:article-footnote>

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, the element was called atlfn. Then it did not contain a separate element for the footnote label. The role attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:article-number

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:article-number ( %string.data; )*>
```

Description

The element **ce:article-number** is used to capture an additional article number of the item.

Usage

Apart from the AID (article ID, captured with element *aid*), an article can have an additional article number. This is captured with **ce:article-number**. It is meant for use in citations and could become part of the article’s DOI.

Figure 8 (p. 85) shows the use of article numbers in a serial issue.

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.4.0.

See also

*aid, ce:include-item, sb:article-number*
ce:associated-resource

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:associated-resource( ce:inter-ref )>

Description

The element ce:associated-resource is used to create a link between a document and its associated resources.

Usage

Many documents are supported by research data. In order to create a link between the document and its associated research data, the element ce:associated-resource is provided. It contains one subelement, ce:inter-ref, which is the actual link. The content of ce:inter-ref may not be empty. The linking role research-data is to be used.

XML

```xml
<ce:associated-resource>
  <ce:inter-ref id="interref1"
    xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/research-data"
    xlink:href="doi:10.17632/xwj98nb39r.1">▲
</ce:associated-resource>
```

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.5.0.

See also

ce:inter-ref
ce:author

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author ( ce:initials?, ce:indexed-name?,
    ce:degrees?, %name;, ce:degrees?,
    ce:ranking?, ce:roles?, ce:cross-ref*,
    ce:e-address*, ce:link? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    author-id CDATA #IMPLIED
    biographyid IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author ( ce:initials?, ce:indexed-name?,
    ce:degrees?, %name;, ce:degrees?,
    ce:ranking?, ce:roles?, ( %cross-ref; )*,
    ce:e-address*, ce:link? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    author-id CDATA #IMPLIED
    biographyid IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author ( ce:initials?, ce:indexed-name?,
    ce:degrees?, %name;, ce:degrees?,
    ce:ranking?, ce:roles?, ( %cross-ref; )*,
    ce:e-address*, ce:link? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    orcid CDATA #IMPLIED
    author-id CDATA #IMPLIED
    biographyid IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author ( ce:initials?, ce:indexed-name?,
    ce:degrees?, %name;, ce:degrees?,
    ce:ranking?, ce:roles?,
    ce:contributor-role*, ce:alias?,
    ( %cross-ref; )*,
    ce:e-address*, ce:link? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    orcid CDATA #IMPLIED
    author-id CDATA #IMPLIED
    biographyid IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author( ce:initials?, ce:indexed-name?,
    ce:degrees?, %name;, ce:degrees?,
    ce:ranking?, ce:roles?,
    ce:contributor-role*, ce:alias?,
    %cross-ref; )*,
    ce:e-address*, ce:link? )>
```
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

<!ATTLIST ce:author
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  orcid CDATA #IMPLIED
  author-id CDATA #IMPLIED
  biographyid IDREF #IMPLIED>

Description

Each author of the item is captured using ce:author.

Usage

The element ce:author consists of optional initials, if these cannot be inferred from the first name (ce:initials), an optional name under which the author should appear in an index (ce:indexed-name), optional degrees (ce:degrees), a possible first (given) name (ce:given-name) followed or preceded by a surname (family name, ce:surname), an optional alternate name (ce:alt-name), an optional generation indication (ce:suffix), more optional degrees (ce:degrees), an optional indication of the importance of the author (ce:ranking), optionally the roles the author has (ce:roles), optionally the role(s) the author has performed in the creation of the work (ce:contributor-role), an alias (ce:alias), cross-references to the author’s affiliation(s) and to author footnotes (ce:cross-ref), a number of electronic addresses of the author (ce:e-address), and a link to a picture of the author (ce:link).

For more details, see these subelements. A ce:cross-ref should refer to a ce:footnote or a ce:correspondence in a ce:author-group (possibly different from the current one). The surname may precede the first name; the order of these elements within ce:author determines the order in which they must be rendered.

The ce:author element has an attribute biographyid which is used to refer to a biography (ce:biography) of the author.

The attribute id can be used to link to the author. The attribute author-id contains a (globally) unique identification of the author within the article. It is constructed from the PII, the given name, the surname, the suffix and the alternate name. Attribute orcid on the other hand contains a unique identification of the author coming from a global author database: the ORCID (Open Research & Contributor ID).

In some cultures, people may have just a single name, which is treated as the surname. This may contradict how the author’s culture feels about this, but the reason is purely functional: what matters is that an author is indexed under the surname; the first name may be abbreviated in the index or the running heads.

If the author is not a person, e.g. an institution or a government body, ce:author is also used, and the name is captured within ce:surname. This should not be confused with a named group of scientists, i.e. a collaboration, which is captured using ce:collaboration.

XML

<ce:author id="au01"
  author-id="S0191260715900341-c1bf40358a2319781b18a1d5e6e8af7">
  <ce:surname>Liszot</ce:surname>
  <ce:given-name>Frenc</ce:given-name>
</ce:author>

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
If the author is deceased, this cannot be indicated within `<ce:author>`; a footnote following the author is to be used. If the author has only supplied initials instead of a full given name, then these are also captured in `<ce:given-name>`. In order to help applications to render the correct initials from a given name, the element `<ce:initials>` has been provided. If (and only if) the initials of the author cannot be inferred from the `<ce:given-name>` element by taking the first letter of each name, preserving dashes, the subelement `<ce:initials>` is used to capture the author’s correct initials. It is used for rendering author names with initials instead of full given names, e.g. in tables of contents and in running heads. Note that `<ce:initials>` does not replace `<ce:given-name>`. In order to help applications to correctly alphabetize a name, the element `<ce:indexed-`
**name** has been provided. If (and only if) it is common to alphabetize the name at a place which cannot be inferred from the **ce:surname**, the subelement **ce:indexed-name** is used. This is only for very exceptional cases, because it is assumed that indexing programs can cope with all names with accented characters.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:author id="au07"
  author-id="S1350448712902784-1bc52f89ab2590e9d9893a705eb5ad71">
  <ce:indexed-name>Gamma-Corporation</ce:indexed-name>
  <ce:surname>&Gamma;-Corporation</ce:surname>
</ce:author>
```

The element **ce:link** can be used to add a picture of the author. This should not be confused with a picture of the author within the biography.

For anonymous authors the value **anonymous** for attribute **role** is defined. No other values are defined.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:author id="au08" role="anonymous"
  author-id="S1350448712902784-db66cd965816a576334ab39de4840767">
  <ce:surname>Anonymous</ce:surname>
</ce:author>
```

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called **au**; it did not contain the initials or indexed name, cross-references and the electronic addresses at this level.

The **author-id** attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0. Parameter entity %cross-ref; was introduced in CEP 1.1.2. In CEP 1.2.0 the attribute **orcid** was added, while element **ce:alt-name** was added to parameter entity %name;. Element **ce:contributor-role** was added in CEP 1.5.0.

Element **ce:alias** was added in CEP 1.6.0.

**See also**

**ce:author-group**, **ce:collaboration**
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:author-group

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author-group ( ( ce:collaboration | ce:author )+, ce:affiliation*, ce:correspondence*, ce:footnote* )>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author-group ( ( ce:collaboration | ce:author | ce:text )+, ce:affiliation*, ce:correspondence*, ce:footnote* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author-group role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:author-group ( ( ce:collaboration | ce:author | ce:text )+, ce:affiliation*, ce:correspondence*, ce:footnote* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:author-group id ID #IMPLIED role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:author-group` contains authors and their affiliations.

Usage

The element `ce:author-group` is an important part of the head of an item. It contains a group of authors and/or collaborations with associated information. Some document types allow more than one author group; this is needed for implicit author–affiliation couplings (see below).

The element `ce:author-group` is also used in a structured list of editors of an issue, `ce:editors`, to capture a group of editors.

Each author group consists of a sequence of authors (`ce:author`) and/or collaborations (`ce:collaboration`), possibly interspersed with free text (`ce:text`). This is followed by a list of affiliations (`ce:affiliation`), correspondence information (`ce:correspondence`) and footnotes (`ce:footnote`).

The affiliation list contains all the affiliations in this author group. Each author or collaboration may either be coupled to several affiliations, or all authors share the same uncoupled affiliations. The authors and/or collaborations on the one hand and affiliations on the other hand can be related to each other in two ways.

- **Explicit.** The relationship between authors and affiliations is indicated by adding a `ce:cross-ref` element within `ce:author`, referring to an `id` of an affiliation. In this case, authors always require a `ce:cross-ref` to an affiliation; collaborations require an affiliation if there are no authors in the same author group. When using explicit coupling, it is allowed to have affiliations without associated authors or collaborations. It is not allowed to couple an author with an affiliation in another author group.
• **Implicit.** All authors in an author group are related to all affiliations present in that author group. Typically, but not necessarily, there will be only one affiliation in the author group. The authors do not have a `ce:cross-ref` element, and the affiliations do not need a `ce:label` subelement.

Especially for the editors of an issue it may occur that some, or usually all, editors are listed without affiliation. In such a case it is important not to create unnecessary `ce:author-group` s. The following rule must be applied: consecutive authors or editors without an affiliation must be captured in a single `ce:author-group`.

The following example shows explicit author-affiliation coupling.

**XML**

```
<ce:author-group id="aug1">
<ce:author id="au1" biographyid="vt1"
  author-id="S0375960116912179-c91dc22919067cc8e50bfc3217b08018">
  <ce:given-name>N.N.</ce:given-name>
  <ce:surname>Jiemela</ce:surname>
  <ce:ranking>*</ce:ranking>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr1" refid="aff1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr2" refid="fn1"><ce:sup>1</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
</ce:author>
<ce:author id="au2" biographyid="vt2"
  author-id="S0375960116912179-5af567f40d81d956d85d5ae703f9ff4d">
  <ce:given-name>R.K.</ce:given-name>
  <ce:surname>Reenivasan</ce:surname>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="aff1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr4" refid="aff2"><ce:sup>b</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
</ce:author>
<ce:author id="au3"
  author-id="S0375960116912179-abe148d56829bcb510545277ae12f689b">
  <ce:given-name>J.R.</ce:given-name>
  <ce:surname>Connelly</ce:surname>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr5" refid="aff2"><ce:sup>c</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
  <ce:cross-ref id="cr6" refid="cor1"><ce:sup>&#x204E;</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
  <ce:e-address id="ea1">russ@vortex.uoregon.edu</ce:e-address>
</ce:author>
<ce:affiliation id="aff1"
  affiliation-id="S0375960116912179-b4618bb95283e41c26f503c13da2201a">
  <ce:label><ce:label>Cryogenic Helium Turbulence Laboratory,
    Department of Physics, University of Oregon, Eugene, OR
    97403, USA</ce:label>
  <sa:affiliation>
    <sa:organization>Cryogenic Helium Turbulence Laboratory</sa:organization>
  </sa:affiliation>
  <sa:organization>Department of Physics</sa:organization>
  <sa:organization>University of Oregon</sa:organization>
  <sa:city>Eugene</sa:city>
  <sa:state>OR</sa:state>
  <sa:postal-code>97403</sa:postal-code>
  <sa:country>USA</sa:country>
</ce:affiliation>
</ce:author-group>
```
The following example is an example of implicit author–affiliation coupling. Unlike the previous example, there are no labels “a” and “b” that make the coupling explicit. All the authors in the author group belong to the affiliation in this author group.

XML

```xml
<ce:author-group id="aug2"
    <ce:author id="au4"
        author-id="S0925231298000939-62fceb0f6d838e505a2d5a41794f85a"
        <ce:given-name>Hirofumi</ce:given-name>
        <ce:surname>Hirose</ce:surname>
        <ce:affiliation id="aff3"
            affiliation-id="S0925231298000939-5cade0ad91b946b3ccceedd1375da5"
            <ce:textfn>Research Center for Advanced Science and Technology (RCAST), The University of Tokyo, 4-6-1 Komaba, Meguro-ku, Tokyo 153, Japan</ce:textfn>
            <sa:affiliation>
                <sa:organization>Research Center for Advanced Science and Technology (RCAST), The University of Tokyo, 4-6-1 Komaba, Meguro-ku, Tokyo 153, Japan</sa:organization>
                <sa:city>Tokyo</sa:city>
                <sa:country>Japan</sa:country>
            </sa:affiliation>
        </ce:affiliation>
    </ce:author>
    <ce:author id="au5"
        author-id="S0925231298000939-f6914667dab3b05d1aa0ff0d40028fd1"
        <ce:given-name>Akira</ce:given-name>
        <ce:surname>Onishi</ce:surname>
        <ce:affiliation id="aff3"
            affiliation-id="S0925231298000939-5cade0ad91b946b3ccceedd1375da5"
            <ce:textfn>Research Center for Advanced Science and Technology (RCAST), The University of Tokyo, 4-6-1 Komaba, Meguro-ku, Tokyo 153, Japan</ce:textfn>
            <sa:affiliation>
                <sa:organization>Research Center for Advanced Science and Technology (RCAST), The University of Tokyo, 4-6-1 Komaba, Meguro-ku, Tokyo 153, Japan</sa:organization>
                <sa:city>Tokyo</sa:city>
                <sa:country>Japan</sa:country>
            </sa:affiliation>
        </ce:affiliation>
    </ce:author>
</ce:author-group>
```
The element `ce:text` is an elementary way to add text before, in between and after author names. It is typically used for an “on behalf of” phrase. Other examples are “on behalf of 50 signatories”, “on behalf of the Editorial Board”, “on behalf of 1234 Canadian physicians”, etc.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:author-group id="aug3">
  <ce:author id="au6"
    author-id="S0022231316904393-64eeb5dc989242a8b7bb90a7ccab4943">
    <ce:given-name>A.</ce:given-name>
    <ce:surname>Jones-Glynn</ce:surname>
    <ce:cross-ref id="cr1" refid="aff1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
  </ce:author>
  <ce:text>on behalf of the</ce:text>
  <ce:collaboration id="cl1"
    collaboration-id="S0022231316904393-1c420a6e6e082ad150c5fc86b75e3e4">
    <ce:text>Colorectal Cancer Annual Consensus Meeting Group</ce:text>
  </ce:collaboration>
  <ce:affiliation id="aff4"
    affiliation-id="S0022231316904393-403635e036802d94c20ec775d7bb1249">
    <ce:label>a</ce:label>
    <ce:textfn>Mount Vernon Cancer Centre, Rickmansworth Road, Northwood HA6 2RN, UK</ce:textfn>
  </ce:affiliation>
</ce:author-group>
```

**Presentation**

A. Jones-Glynn on behalf of the Colorectal Cancer Annual Consensus Meeting Group

*Mount Vernon Cancer Centre, Rickmansworth Road, Northwood HA6 2RN, UK*
Kazunori Tanizaki on behalf of all authors

Department of Cerebrovascular Medicine, National Cerebral and Cardiovascular Center, Suita, Osaka, Japan

Version history

In CEP 1.1.6, subelement `ce:text` was added to the content model and the attribute `role` was added. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

`ce:editors`
**Introduction**

The element `ce:bibliography` is used for the reference list of a document.

**Usage**

The element `ce:bibliography` contains bibliographic references of the document. It can consist of a brief introduction (`ce:intro`) and several subsections, `ce:bibliography-sec`. Often there is just one reference list, in which case the bibliography contains only one `ce:bibliography-sec` without a `ce:section-title`. Each `ce:bibliography-sec` except the first must have a `ce:section-title`, for the first this is optional.

The subelement `ce:section-title` of `ce:bibliography` contains the name of the bibliography, e.g. “References” or “Bibliography”. Subelement `ce:intro` contains a short introduction to the bibliography. It can also contain a simple statement like “Full reference list available online…”.

Each `ce:bibliography-sec` contains one or more bibliographic references, `ce:bib-reference`. Each `ce:bib-reference` must be referred to by means of `ce:cross-ref`. References which are not being referred to, may find a place in the further-reading list, `ce:further-reading`.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, the element `bib1` contained the bibliographic references. It is comparable to `ce:bibliography-sec`, and `ce:bibliography` is a container of the bibliography sections. The `view` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0. Subelement `ce:intro` was added in CEP 1.5.0.

**Light reading**

`ce:bibliography` is part of HEAD-AND-TAIL material.
See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
ce:bibliography-sec

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:bibliography-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:bib-reference+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:bibliography-sec
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6, 1.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:bibliography-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:bib-reference+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:bibliography-sec
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.4.0, 1.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:bibliography-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:bib-reference+,
                               ce:bibliography-sec*)>
<!ATTLIST ce:bibliography-sec
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:bibliography-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:bib-reference*,
                               ce:bibliography-sec*)>
<!ATTLIST ce:bibliography-sec
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element ce:bibliography-sec is a section within the bibliographic references. Bibliography sections can be nested one level deep.

Usage

See ce:bibliography.

Version history

The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6. In CEP 1.4.0 it became possible to nest the ce:bibliography-sec element.

In CEP 1.6.0 the model was changed to allow for a ce:bibliography-sec containing only ce:bibliography-secs.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:bib-reference**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)**

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:bib-reference
 id ID #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.5.0)**

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:bib-reference
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:bib-reference
 id ID #REQUIRED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:bib-reference` is used to capture a bibliographic reference within the reference list or within the further-reading section.

**Usage**

Each entry in a list of bibliographic references (ce:bibliography) or a further-reading list (ce:further-reading) is a ce:bib-reference. The `ce:bib-reference` may be either just a `ce:note` (an endnote), or a sequence of one or more bibliographic references followed by a `ce:note`. The core of each bibliographic reference is a structured reference (sb:reference) or an unstructured reference (ce:other-ref).

The original text of the reference can be captured in element `ce:source-text`.

The `ce:bib-reference` must have an `id` attribute and a `ce:label` subelement. For numbered references, the `ce:label` contains the number (no punctuation is generated by this instance of `ce:label`) and for name/date references it contains name and date in the way the reference is referred to in the text without parentheses. Several possible formats are shown below. Note in particular the full stop in the second example and the “1999a” in the fifth example.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="bib37"><ce:label>[37]</ce:label>
<ce:bib-reference id="bib37"><ce:label>37.</ce:label>
<ce:bib-reference id="bib37"><ce:label>[Go78]</ce:label>
<ce:bib-reference id="bib37"><ce:label>Böhm et al., 1999</ce:label>
<ce:bib-reference id="bib37"><ce:label>Böhm et al., 1999a</ce:label>
```

232 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Name/date references

In case of the name/date referencing style the bibliographic references are printed without a label before the reference, and thus their `ce:label` element is not shown, and may seem irrelevant. However, in name/date references with the same authors and the same year, the “a” and “b” after the year is stored within the `ce:label` element. This is the only place where the “a” or “b” can be found; the `sb:date` does not contain it as it is not a property of the reference but of the document in which the reference appears.

Moreover, some publications may choose to show the `ce:label` element in their presentation. One case in which this happens in almost all applications, is when a reference is one of the targets in a one-to-many cross-reference. In electronic publications such a one-to-many cross-reference may be represented with a “drop-down menu”, which is built up via the `ce:label` elements of the targets (see the section Cross-references and the label element, p. 180).

XML

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="bib12">
  <ce:label>Sheen, 1999a</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr1">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>J.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Sheen</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>
        <sb:maintitle>C<ce:inf>4</ce:inf> gene expression</sb:maintitle>
      </sb:title>
    </sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:issue>
        <sb:series>
        </sb:series>
        <sb:date>1999</sb:date>
      </sb:issue>
      <sb:pages>
        <sb:first-page>187</sb:first-page>
        <sb:last-page>217</sb:last-page>
      </sb:pages>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```

Presentation

Multiple bibliographic references in one \texttt{ce:bib-reference} element

It is possible to group more than one bibliographic reference within a \texttt{ce:bib-reference} element. These may be a mixed sequence of structured and unstructured references.

When one or more of the references in the \texttt{ce:bib-reference} element are cited individually, they all need to have a \texttt{ce:label} element, and at least the ones cited individually need to have an \texttt{id} attribute. When there is a single reference in a \texttt{ce:bib-reference} element, this single reference (\texttt{sb:reference} or \texttt{ce:other-ref}) is not allowed to have a \texttt{ce:label} element and an \texttt{id} attribute.

For cross-references to a \texttt{sb:reference} element, see the section Cross-references and the \texttt{label} element (p. 180).

\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:bib-reference id="bib1">
  <ce:label>[1]</ce:label>
  <ce:other-ref id="or1">
  </ce:other-ref>
  <sb:reference id="sbr2">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>T.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Banks</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>M.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Dine</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:host>
        <sb:issue>
          <sb:series>
            <sb:title>Nucl. Phys. B.</sb:title>
            <sb:volume-nr>479</sb:volume-nr>
            <sb:date>1996</sb:date>
          </sb:series>
          <sb:pages>
            <sb:first-page>173</sb:first-page>
          </sb:pages>
        </sb:issue>
      </sb:host>
    </sb:contribution>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
\end{verbatim}

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:bib-reference id="bib2">
</ce:bib-reference>
\end{verbatim}
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Presentation


With the name/date referencing style, grouping of several `sb:reference` or `ce:other-ref` elements is discouraged.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `bib`. The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6. In CEP 1.6.0 subelement `ce:source-text` was added.

Light reading

In HEAD-AND-TAIL SGML files, `ce:bib-references` need not be referred to.

Known bugs, hacks and problems

It is not possible to have a comment to a multiple reference.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:biography

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

<!ELEMENT ce:biography ( ce:link?, ce:simple-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:biography
    id ID #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:biography ( ce:link?, ce:simple-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:biography
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>

Description

Some journals publish short biographies in their articles. The element ce:biography is used for this purpose.

Usage

The biography element ce:biography contains a short biography of a person, mostly the author in the form of one or more “simple” paragraphs, ce:simple-para. It has an id; the link with the author is established through the biographyid attribute of ce:author. It is also possible to link a name in the text to a ce:biography via a ce:cross-ref.

If the biography contains a photograph of the author, the first subelement ce:link is used to reference the file containing the photograph. It is not appropriate to use ce:inline-figure for the photograph.

XML

<!ENTITY fx1 SYSTEM "fx1" NDATA IMAGE>
...
<ce:biography id="biol">
  <ce:simple-para id="sp58"><ce:bold>Stephen Hawking</ce:bold> holds the chair once held by Isaac Newton as Lucasian Professor in Mathematics at the University of Cambridge...<ce:sp58> </ce:biography>

In some journals or books there are no biographies, but a picture of each author is displayed near the author’s name in the document head. For this, ce:link in ce:author is used.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called vt. Then it did not contain the ce:link subelement; the graphic file was associated to the biography with an attribute. The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0. The role attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.


**ce:bold**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:bold ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element **ce:bold** is a font changing element (p. 184). It is used to obtain bold.

**Usage**

*XML*

```xml
<ce:bold>This text is in bold</ce:bold>
```

*Presentation*

This text is in bold

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called b.

**See also**

For more information see the section on **text effects** (p. 184). See also **ce:cross-out, ce:italic, ce:monospace, ce:sans-serif, ce:small-caps, ce:underline**.
**ce:br**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.6.0)**

\[
\text{<!ELEMENT ce:br EMPTY>}
\]

**Description**

The element `ce:br` is used to create an explicit line break.

**Usage**

If the need arises to indicate an explicit line break `ce:br` can be used within certain context, e.g. within a table cell.

**XML**

```xml
<row>
  <entry>Dairy</entry>
  <entry>8 oz milk<ce:br/>8 oz cottage cheese<ce:br/>8 oz ice cream<ce:br/>1 oz hard cheese<ce:br/>1 cup yogurt</entry>
  <entry>6 servings per day</entry>
  <entry>8 servings per day</entry>
  <entry>10 servings per day</entry>
  <entry>12 servings per day</entry>
</row>
```

**Presentation**

Menu Guidelines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food group</th>
<th>Serving size</th>
<th>Singleton</th>
<th>Twins</th>
<th>Triples</th>
<th>Quads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dairy</td>
<td>8 oz milk</td>
<td>6 servings</td>
<td>8 servings</td>
<td>10 servings</td>
<td>12 servings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 oz cottage cheese</td>
<td>per day</td>
<td>per day</td>
<td>per day</td>
<td>per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 oz ice cream</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 oz hard cheese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 cup yogurt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation**

The line breaks in the second column are a result of the use of element `ce:br` whereas the line breaks in columns 3–6 are created by the rendering application. Note that in the above XML example the header rows are omitted for brevity.

**Version history**

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.2.
ce:caption

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:caption ( ce:simple-para+ )>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:caption ( ce:simple-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:caption
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:caption ( ce:simple-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:caption
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Captions are tagged with `ce:caption`.

Usage

Figures, tables, e-components and textboxes possess captions, structured with `ce:caption`, that give a description of the object. A `ce:caption` consists of one or more simple paragraphs, `ce:simple-para`.

The attribute `xml:lang`, with values in the ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192), indicates the language of the caption, by default the language of the document. This is to support publications that publish captions in different languages.

The attribute `role` allows one to categorize captions. For instance, it makes it possible to mark a caption as “title” and handle it different from ordinary captions. Applications should treat captions with roles unknown to them as ordinary captions, i.e., unknown roles must be ignored. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. The following value for `role` has been defined:

- `title` is used to mark the caption as the title of the figure, table or textbox.

Version history

The `xml:lang` and `role` attributes were added in CEP 1.1.2. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.

See also

`ce:alt-e-component, ce:e-component, ce:figure, ce:table, ce:textbox`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:chem

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:chem ( %textfn.data; )*>
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:chem ( %textfn.data; )*>

Description

A displayed chemical formula is captured using ce:chem.

Usage

The element ce:chem is one of the possible subelements of ce:formula. It contains the text of the chemical formula to be displayed. The equation number is separately captured in the ce:label child element of the ce:formula parent.

XML

<ce:formula id="ch2">
  <ce:label>(2)</ce:label>
</ce:formula>

Inline chemical formulae may be entered as part of the running text, without a special tag.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, both displayed mathematical and displayed chemical formulae were captured in the element fd. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %textfn.data;.

Rendering notes

The content is rendered within the formula area of ce:formula, possibly followed by the equation number.
ce:collab-aff

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:collab-aff ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:collab-aff ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:collab-aff adds an affiliation-like phrase to a collaboration.

Usage

See ce:collaboration.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP
collaboration

declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)
<!ELEMENT ce:collaboration ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:text, ce:cross-ref*, ce:collab-aff? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:collaboration
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.1.6)
<!ELEMENT ce:collaboration ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:text, ( %cross-ref; )*, ce:collab-aff? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:collaboration
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:collaboration ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:text, ( %cross-ref; )*, ce:collab-aff?, ce:e-address*, ce:author-group* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:collaboration
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:collaboration ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:text, ( %cross-ref; )*, ce:collab-aff?, ce:e-address*, ce:author-group* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:collaboration
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  collaboration-id CDATA #IMPLIED>

description

The name of a collaboration is captured in the ce:collaboration element.

usage

A collaboration denotes a group of authors who present themselves under a common name: the collaboration name. The element ce:collaboration is used to capture such a collaboration. It contains an optional name under which the collaboration should appear in an index (ce:indexed-name), a container for the actual name (ce:text), optional cross-references to affiliations or footnotes (ce:cross-ref), an optional collaboration affiliation (ce:collab-aff), a number of electronic addresses of the collaboration (ce:e-address), and nested author groups for capturing the members of the collaboration (ce:author-group).

xml

242 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
The collaboration name can be used in an author group `ce:author-group` instead of or in addition to the names of one or more of its member authors. A `ce:collaboration` element can be the only element in an author group, or its author group can contain the names of other collaborations and the names of individual authors.

XML
```
<ce:author-group id="aug1">
  <ce:author id="au1" author-id="S0168583X16910346-6481c621ba47a2bade4fa090792df441">
    <ce:given-name>Th.J.</ce:given-name>
    <ce:surname>Jansen</ce:surname>
  </ce:author>
  <ce:collaboration id="coll2" collaboration-id="S0168583X16910346-a0ad87f45fd2c4f3e36e7048f8427e4b">
    <ce:text>The ISOLDE Collaboration</ce:text>
    <ce:collab-aff>Cryogenic Helium Turbulence Laboratory ...</ce:collab-aff>
  </ce:collaboration>
</ce:author-group>
```

Presentation

Th.J. Jansen for The ISOLDE Collaboration

If (and only if) it is common to alphabetize the name at a place which cannot be inferred from the `ce:collaboration`, the subelement `ce:indexed-name` is used. This is only for very exceptional cases, because it is assumed that indexing programs can cope with all names with accented characters.

XML
```
<ce:collaboration id="coll3" collaboration-id="S0168583X16920019-25c92aa6e75482d7c7dfaa04fb9a5ad7">
  <ce:indexed-name>Alpha Collaboration</ce:indexed-name>
  <ce:text>&alpha; Collaboration</ce:text>
</ce:collaboration>
```

Sometimes a collaboration adds an affiliation-like phrase to its name. This can be captured in the `ce:collab-aff` element.

XML
```
<ce:collaboration id="coll4" collaboration-id="S0168583X16920020-d889e3eaca03f39b10bd08d92616021">
  <ce:collab-aff>Stockholm&ndash;London&ndash;Amsterdam</ce:collab-aff>
</ce:collaboration>
```
The members of a collaboration can be captured with one or more `ce:author-groups`. These author groups can contain affiliations but may not contain other collaborations.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:collaboration id="coll5"
  collaboration-id="S0375947410006238-8e5e7dc199a89feebfd506962f714ea3">
  <ce:text>NEMO-3 Collaboration</ce:text>
  <ce:author-group id="aug2">
    <ce:author id="au2"
      author-id="S0375947410006238-70dd83a707624a54d8e4194bfbd48e55">
      <ce:given-name>J.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Argyiades</ce:surname>
      <ce:affiliation id="aff1">
        <ce:label>a</ce:label>
        <ce:textfn>LAL, ...</ce:textfn>
      </ce:affiliation>
    </ce:author>
    <ce:author id="au3"
      author-id="S0375947410006238-ecbbacc219cc2d69ed60e04ed9178b2e">
      <ce:given-name>R.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Arnold</ce:surname>
      <ce:affiliation id="aff1">
        <ce:label>a</ce:label>
        <ce:textfn>LAL, ...</ce:textfn>
      </ce:affiliation>
    </ce:author>
  </ce:author-group>
</ce:collaboration>
```

A collaboration should not be confused with a non-person author (captured using `ce:surname`).

**Version history**

Parameter entity `%cross-ref;` was introduced in CEP 1.1.2. Subelements `ce:e-address` and `ce:author-group` were added in CEP 1.2.0. Attribute `collaboration-id` was added in CEP 1.5.0.

**See also**

`ce:author, ce:author-group, ce:collab-aff, ce:indexed-name`
ce:compound-formula

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-formula ( %text.data; )*>
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-formula ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The formula of a chemical compound within a stereochemistry abstract is captured using ce:compound-formula.

Usage

See ce:stereochem.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called compound-f. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
ce:compound-info

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-info ( ce:list-item+ )>

Description

Part of a stereochemistry abstract is additional itemized information about a chemical compound. The element ce:compound-info provides a way to capture this.

Usage

See ce:stereochem.
**ce:compound-name**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-name ( %text.data; )*>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-name ( %text.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The name of a chemical compound within a stereochemistry abstract is captured using `ce:compound-name`.

**Usage**

See `ce:stereochem`.

**Version history**

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`. 
**ce:compound-struct**

**Declaration**

**Model** (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:compound-struct ( ce:link )>
```

**Description**

The purpose of the element `ce:compound-struct`, part of a stereochemistry abstract, is to provide a link to a graphic file showing a chemical structure.

**Usage**

See `ce:stereochem`.

---

Page 248

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
ce:conflict-of-interest

Declaration

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

XML

<ce:conflict-of-interest id="coi01">
  <ce:para>The author has reported to <ce:italic>CHEST</ce:italic> that no potential conflicts of interest exist with any companies/organizations whose products or services may be discussed in this article.</ce:para>
</ce:conflict-of-interest>

Usage

The element ce:conflict-of-interest is used to capture the “Declaration of Competing Interest” statement (the preferred name for Conflict of Interest statement) outside of the Acknowledgment sections.

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.6.0.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:contributor-role

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:contributor-role ( %string.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:contributor-role
role CDATA #IMPLIED
degree CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The role the author has performed in the creation of the work is in ce:contributor-role.

Usage

An author can perform several roles in the creation of a work. The CRediT taxonomy defines the following fourteen roles:

- Conceptualization
- Data curation
- Formal analysis
- Funding acquisition
- Investigation
- Methodology
- Project administration
- Resources
- Software
- Supervision
- Validation
- Visualization
- Writing - original draft
- Writing - review & editing

These roles can be captured with element ce:contribution-role. The role is in attribute role in the form of a URI. Only the above-mentioned roles are acceptable. In case more than one author has the same role it is possible to add a degree (lead, equal or supporting) in attribute degree, again in the form of a URI. The element contains a description of the role.

Note: The URIs below may not exist.

```xml
<ce:author id="au19">
  ...
  <ce:contributor-role role="http://dictionary.casrai.org/Conceptualization" degree="http://dictionary.casrai.org/Contributor_Roles/Conceptualization/equal">
    Conceptualization
  </ce:contributor-role>
  <ce:contributor-role role="http://dictionary.casrai.org/Methodology">
    Methodology
  </ce:contributor-role>
</ce:author>
```
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

<ce:contributor-role role="http://dictionary.casrai.org/Contributor_Roles/Writing_%E2%80%93_original_draft">Writing - original draft</ce:contributor-role>

...<ce:author>

Version history

Element `ce:contributor-role` was introduced in CEP 1.5.0.

See also

`ce:author`


**ce:copyright**

### Declaration

#### Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:copyright ( %string.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:copyright
type %copyright-type; #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>
```

### Description

The element `ce:copyright` contains information about the copyright owner of the document, or of a component of the document.

### Usage

The element `ce:copyright` is used to capture the copyright holder and status of an item. As an optional element within `ce:figure`, `ce:textbox` and `ce:e-component`, it can also be used to indicate the copyright holder of such an object.

It has two mandatory attributes, `type` and `year`. The latter contains the copyright year while the former, which takes its values in `%copyright-type;`, contains the copyright status, indicated by the following values (the copyright statuses refer to [20]):

- **crown** is used when the author claims Crown copyright. [Copyright status: 004.]
- **free-of-copyright**: this value is used when the item has no copyright, for example in case of an index. [Copyright status: 000.]
- **full-transfer**: this value is used when a full transfer to one of the publisher’s companies has been received. [Copyright status: 002.]
- **joint** is used when a full transfer has been received for an article in a journal whose copyright is owned jointly by one of the publisher’s companies and a society. [Copyright status: 002.]
- **limited-transfer** is used when the author has granted only limited rights; special care must be taken for its production. [Copyright status: 005.]
- **no-transfer** is used when there is an unresolvable copyright problem and the article may not be published (in principle, documents with this copyright status cannot occur). This should not be confused with copyright status 001, when copyright has not yet been transferred. Within `ce:figure`, `ce:textbox` or `ce:e-component` it is used to signal that the object may not appear online. [Copyright status: 007.]
- **other** is used when copyright owner is different from the journal’s copyright owner, e.g. the authors or their employing institutions. This copyright type is also used in the `ce:copyright` within a `ce:figure`, `ce:textbox` or `ce:e-component`. [Copyright status: 006 or 008.]
- **society** is used when a full transfer has been received for an article in a journal whose copyright is owned by a society. [Copyright status: 002.]
- **unknown**: this value is used when the article may be published but the actual status is unknown. This is, for instance, the case when the copyright transfer form has not yet been received from the author. [Copyright status: 001.]
• us-gov is used when the author is a US government employee and will not transfer copyright. [Copyright status: 003.]

The content of ce:copyright is the copyright holder. Only if the value of type is crown, no-transfer, other, unknown or us-gov, may the content be empty.

The presentation of the copyright notice of an article depends on (i) the article’s copyright status, (ii) the content of the ce:copyright element, and (iii) the base data of the journal or book, in particular its copyright owner. It is explained in full detail in [21]. Some examples are given below.

XML
<ce:copyright type="full-transfer" year="2012">Elsevier Ireland Ltd</ce:copyright>
<ce:copyright type="society" year="2012">Society of Cardiology</ce:copyright>
<ce:copyright type="unknown" year="2012"></ce:copyright>

Presentation
© 2012 Elsevier Ireland Ltd. All rights reserved.
© 2012 Society of Cardiology. Published by Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.
© 2012 Published by Elsevier B.V.

Explanation
Note that in the second example, the publishing company is inferred from the base data, it is not present in the XML file. Moreover, in the third example, the “published by” information is also inferred from the journal base data. The text would be different if the journal’s copyright holder is not one of the publisher’s companies.

Version history

In CEP 1.2.0 value free-of-copyright was added to entity %copyright-type;.

See also

ce:copyright-line
ce:copyright-line

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:copyright-line ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:copyright-line contains a verbatim text to be used as copyright line.

Usage

The element ce:copyright-line contains verbatim text to be used as copyright line. It is used in the Elsevier Book DTDs and in DTDs where the copyright statuses as defined in ce:copyright are not (yet) applicable. It is generated from the ce:copyright element.

The element was introduced in version 5.2.0 of the Journal Article DTD. Until further notice it is only to be used when instructed.

XML

<ce:copyright-line>© 2013 Elsevier B.V.</ce:copyright-line>

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0.
ce:correspondence

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.2.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:correspondence ( ce:label, ce:text )>
<!ATTLIST ce:correspondence
    id ID #REQUIRED>

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:correspondence ( ce:label, ce:text, sa:affiliation? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:correspondence
    id ID #REQUIRED>

Description

The element ce:correspondence is used to indicate the corresponding author or authors, and possibly the correspondence address.

Usage

The element ce:correspondence is used to indicate that each author linked to it is a corresponding author. The link is established through a ce:cross-ref within ce:author, and it must be the target of at least one such cross-reference. To this end, the element ce:correspondence has an id attribute and a ce:label subelement—the latter contains the symbol displayed at the footnote.

It is also possible to have several corresponding authors, each with their own id and ce:label element.

The content can be merely “Corresponding author.” or it can contain the correspondence address, which might differ from the author’s affiliation. Where possible the structured address information is to be captured in sa:affiliation.

XML
<ce:correspondence id="cor1">
    <ce:label>&#x0204E;</ce:label>
    <ce:text>Correspondence to: A.Z. Breif, Content Architect, Elsevier, Radarweg 29, 1043 NX Amsterdam, The Netherlands. Tel.: +31 20 4859999.</ce:text>
    <sa:affiliation>
        <sa:organization>Elsevier</sa:organization>
        <sa:address-line>Radarweg 29</sa:address-line>
        <sa:city>Amsterdam</sa:city>
        <sa:postal-code>1043 NX</sa:postal-code>
        <sa:country>The Netherlands</sa:country>
    </sa:affiliation>
</ce:correspondence>

Version history

Subelement sa:affiliation was added in CEP 1.4.0.
See also

`ce:author-group` and `sa:affiliation`
**ce:cross-out**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-out ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:cross-out` is related to the font changing elements (p. 184). It is used to obtain crossed-out text.

**Usage**

To obtain crossed-out (strike-through) text, use `ce:cross-out`.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:cross-out>This text is crossed-out</ce:cross-out>
```

**Presentation**

This text is crossed-out

**See also**

For more information see the section on **text effects** (p. 184). See also `ce:bold`, `ce:italic`, `ce:monospace`, `ce:sans-serif`, `ce:small-caps`, `ce:underline`. 
ce:cross-ref

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```html
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-ref refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```html
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-ref id ID #IMPLIED refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```html
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-ref id ID #IMPLIED refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Description

Simple cross-references to targets within the same document instance are tagged using `ce:cross-ref`.

Usage

A cross-reference is a reference to another element in the document instance. The mandatory attribute `refid` contains a valid ID.

XML

```xml
see <ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="tbl4">Table 4</ce:cross-ref>
according to <ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="enun7">Lemma 1.6</ce:cross-ref>
in (<ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="bib37">Smith et al., 1998</ce:cross-ref>)
<ce:cross-ref id="cr3" refid="fn2"><ce:sup>2</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>
```

Presentation

```xml
see Table 4
according to Lemma 1.6
in (Smith et al., 1998)
```

The content of `ce:cross-ref` is popularly referred to as “the text to click on”. In an electronic rendering, clicking on the text immediately leads to the destination. The content is the full designation of the destination, e.g. “Fig. 4” rather than “4”. Presentation, such as superior for a reference to a footnote, is tagged explicitly.

The element `ce:cross-ref` may be empty. This can happen, for instance, in a glossary or index. The rendering application must then provide another way to reach the destination.

Version history

In DTD 4, the element `cross-ref` allows one-to-many links. The new element `ce:cross-reff` has been introduced for that purpose. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

258 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Rendering notes

Element `ce:cross-ref` has no influence on where its target appears in the paper or online versions. For instance, float placement is arranged using `ce:float-anchor`; where the `ce:cross-ref` that points to the float appears is immaterial.

Copy edit considerations

It sometimes happens that cross-references, especially to bibliographic references, only appear within artwork. It is then required to change the text, e.g. the figure caption, in such a way that the object can be referred to using `ce:cross-ref`.

See also

For more information, see the section Cross-references and the label element (p. 180), as well as the elements `ce:cross-refs, ce:intra-ref, ce:intra-refs, ce:inter-ref, ce:inter-refs.`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:cross-refs

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-refs (%text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-refs
  refid IDREFS #REQUIRED>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-refs (%text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-refs
  id ID #IMPLIED
  refid IDREFS #REQUIRED>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:cross-refs (%text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:cross-refs
  id ID #IMPLIED
  refid IDREFS #REQUIRED>

Description

Extended cross-references to multiple targets within the same document instance are tagged using ce:cross-refs.

Usage

An extended cross-reference is a reference to several other elements in the document instance. The mandatory attribute refid contains a list of valid IDs. There must be more than one target; for single targets ce:cross-ref is used.

XML
see <ce:cross-refs id="crs3" refid="tbl4 tbl5">Tables 4 and 5</ce:cross-refs>
see <ce:cross-refs id="crs3" refid="pl12 pl13 pl14">Plates II&ndash;IV</ce:cross-refs>
in <ce:cross-refs id="crs3" refid="bib1 bib2 bib3">[1&ndash;3]</ce:cross-refs>
in (<ce:cross-refs id="crs3" refid="bib19 bib20">Jones, 2001a,b</ce:cross-refs>)

Presentation
see Tables 4 and 5
see Plates II–IV
in [1–3]
in (Jones, 2001a,b)

The content is the full designation of the destination, e.g. “Figs. 4 and 5” or “Tables 7–10”. Presentation, such as superior for a reference to a footnote, is tagged explicitly.

Due to the one-to-many nature of ce:cross-refs, it is a complicated element. The content of ce:cross-refs is popularly referred to as “the text to click on”. When users click on this text, the rendering application may provide the user with a list of the targets that this ce:cross-refs points to. An important role is played by the ce:label elements of the...
destinations, that can be used to construct such a list. For more information, see the section Cross-references and the label element (p. 180).¹

The element ce:cross-ref may be empty. This can happen, for instance, in a glossary or index. The rendering application must then provide another way to reach the destination.

Version history

In DTD 4, the element cross-ref was used for both one-to-one and one-to-many links. The element ce:cross-ref now only allows one-to-one links. The id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

Copy edit considerations

It sometimes happens that cross-references, especially to bibliographic references, only appear within artwork. It is then required to change the text, e.g. the figure caption, in such a way that the object can be referred to using ce:cross-ref.

Rendering notes

This section deals with the online rendering of one-to-many links.

Rendering one-to-many links is, of course, cumbersome. In the PDF rendering, the content of ce:cross-refs is displayed, and a link to only the first destination is made. In an online rendering, this is inadequate. An important role is played by the ce:label element of the target.² These labels are used to create a drop-down menu of targets, or they are rendered sequentially in-line.

Since the inline representation is the most popular, we describe it in more detail here.

XML

see Refs. <ce:cross-refs id="crs4" refid="bib7 bib8 bib9 bib10">[7–10]</ce:cross-refs> for more information.

Presentation

see Refs. [7], [8], [9], and [10] for more information.

Explanation

The hyperlinks to the four bibliographic references are not created by examining the content of the ce:cross-refs element, but by pulling out the content of the ce:label elements of the targets. The content of ce:cross-refs is in fact a collapsed version of these ce:labels.

It is wrong to examine the content of the element ce:cross-refs and to build logic for expanding the text. A situation that is not uncommon is that an author refers to five chemical reactions (21)–(25), but that three of them are actually presented on a graphic, say Scheme VII. Since these are not coded in XML, it is impossible to refer to the individual reactions. This is done as follows.

XML

... reactions <ce:cross-refs id="crs7" refid="f21 sc7 f25">(21)–(25)</ce:cross-refs> ...

¹ In XML files used for online rendering, it is possible to convert ce:cross-refs to the XLink-compliant ce:intra-refs, which already contains the designations of the targets.

² Note that this is a simplification, used for brevity. In truth, the section title or other portions of the destination also play a role. This is explained in the section Cross-references and the label element (p. 180). In this section we talk about the ce:label element to explain the general concept.
Presentation

... reactions (21), Scheme VII, (25) ...

Explanation

The ce:label elements of the targets lead the reader to the correct destination.

It is difficult to construct a sentence that works well with the content of ce:cross-ref as well as with the expansion of all the ce:labels of the target objects. For instance, suppose that the text contains “... in Figs. 4(a) and 5(b)–(d) ...” while the labels are “Fig. 4” and “Fig. 5”, then the way described above to construct the online sentence loses crucial information about which subfigures are meant. In such cases the use of ce:cross-ref is preferred.

See also

For more information, see the section Cross-references and the label element (p. 180), as well as the elements ce:cross-ref, ce:intra-ref, ce:intra-refs, ce:inter-ref, ce:inter-refs.
ce:data-availability

Declaration

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:data-availability ( ce:section-title?, ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:data-availability
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>

Description

The element ce:data-availability contains a data availability statement for the article.

Usage

The element ce:data-availability is used to capture a Data Sharing Statement in a paper.

The data sharing or data availability statement may contain a title and free text. Whether this text should follow an explicit format or not is as of now undecided, and may depend on the requirements in a scientific discipline.

XML

```
<ce:data-availability id="da1">
  <ce:section-title id="st1">Data sharing</ce:section-title>
  <ce:para id="p1">The code for the modelling is available from the first author on request.</ce:para>
</ce:data-availability>
```

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.6.0.

See also

ce:associated-resource
Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:date-accepted EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:date-accepted
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:date-accepted EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:date-accepted
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The `ce:date-accepted` element is used to capture the acceptance date of the article. It is an optional, empty element within the frontmatter.

Usage

Three attributes, `day`, `month`, `year` are used to store the day, month and year respectively. The latter two attributes are mandatory. The values are numbers, not padded with zero.

```xml
<ce:date-accepted day="29" month="2" year="2000"/>
```

Presentation

Accepted 29 February 2000

```xml
<ce:date-accepted month="8" year="2002"/>
```

Presentation

Accepted August 2002

In case the acceptance date is not to be rendered, the `role` value `suppressed` can be used.

```xml
<ce:date-received day="8" month="9" year="2017"/>
<ce:date-revised day="14" month="11" year="2017"/>
<ce:date-accepted day="15" month="12" year="2017"
role="suppressed"/>
```

Presentation

Received:
8 September 2017
Revised:
14 November 2017
Available online:
18 December 2017
Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called acc. Attribute role was added in CEP 1.6.0.

See also

ce:date-received, ce:date-revised
ce:date-received

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:date-received EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:date-received
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The `ce:date-received` element is used to capture the received date of the article. It is an optional, empty element within the frontmatter.

Usage

Three attributes, `day`, `month`, `year` are used to store the day, month and year respectively. The latter two attributes are mandatory. The values are numbers, not padded with zero.

```xml
<ce:date-received day="20" month="5" year="1964"/>
```

Presentation

Received 20 May 1964

Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `re`.

See also

`ce:date-accepted`, `ce:date-revised`
ce:date-revised

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:date-revised EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:date-revised
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>

Description

The `ce:date-revised` element is used to capture the revised date(s) of the article, also known as “revised version received” date.

It is an optional, empty element within the frontmatter, where it may occur multiple times.

Usage

Three attributes, `day`, `month`, `year` are used to store the day, month and year respectively. The latter two attributes are mandatory. The values are numbers, not padded with zero.

XML

```xml
<ce:date-revised day="1" month="4" year="1998"/>
<ce:date-revised day="23" month="11" year="1999"/>
```

Presentation

Revised 1 April 1998 and 23 November 1999

XML

```xml
<ce:date-revised day="14" month="7" year="2003"/>
<ce:date-revised day="5" month="4" year="2004"/>
<ce:date-revised day="19" month="4" year="2004"/>
```

Presentation

Revised 14 July 2003, 5 April 2004 and 19 April 2004

Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `rv`.

See also

`ce:date-accepted, ce:date-received`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:dedication

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:dedication ( %textfn.data; )*>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:dedication ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:dedication role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:dedication ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:dedication id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:dedication (%textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:dedication id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

A dedication within the head of an article is captured using ce:dedication.

Usage

The element ce:dedication is an optional subelement of the head of a document. It contains the full text of a dedication.

XML

```xml
<ce:dedication id="ded23">Dedicated to Professor C. Böhm
on the occasion of his 60th birthday.</ce:dedication>
```

Rendering notes

The text “Dedicated to” is not generated.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called ded. The role attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6, while the id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %textfn.data;.
**ce:def-description**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-description ( ce:para+ )>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-description ( ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:def-description
 id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **ce:def-description** is used to capture the description within an entry in a **ce:def-list**.

**Usage**

See **ce:def-list**.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called dd. The **id** attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.


Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:def-list**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-list ( ce:label?, ce:section-title?,
                        ( ce:def-term, ce:def-description? )+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:def-list
         id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-list ( ce:label?, ce:section-title?,
                        ( ce:def-term, ce:def-description? )+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:def-list
         id ID #IMPLIED
         role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **ce:def-list** contains a list of terms and definitions.

**Usage**

The element **ce:def-list**, definition list, is modeled after HTML’s DL. Its purpose is to capture terms and definitions.

A definition list has an optional label (**ce:label**) and an optional title (**ce:section-title**). It has an optional **id** attribute so that it can become the target of cross-references.

The list itself is a sequence of definition terms, **ce:def-term**, and optional definition descriptions, **ce:def-description**, which consist of one or more paragraphs, **ce:para**. The **ce:def-term** may possess an **id** so that it can be referred to, but due to the efforts needed to create these cross-references, this seldom happens in practice. The defined term can be linked to a location elsewhere, for instance to the definition in the item’s content.

If used to capture terms and definitions, as in **ce:nomenclature**, the term is always contained in the **ce:def-term** immediately preceding the **ce:def-description**.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called **dl**. The **role** attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.

**See also**

**ce:list, ce:nomenclature**
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:def-term**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-term ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:def-term
id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:def-term ( %textref.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:def-term
id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:def-term` is used to capture the term defined or explained in an entry of a `ce:def-list`.

**Usage**

See `ce:def-list`.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `dt`. In CEP 1.5.0 the model of `ce:def-term` was changed to `%textref.data;` making it possible to add cross-references. Also, entity `%math;` was added to `%textref.data;`.
ce:degrees

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:degrees ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

Titles before or after an author name are captured using ce:degrees.

Usage

The element ce:degrees is used for academic degrees, titles of nobility or dignity, military or police ranks, etc. It may occur before and/or after the name.

XML

<ce:degrees>Prof. Dr. Ing.</ce:degrees>
<ce:given-name>Wolfgang</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Bohm</ce:surname>

<ce:degrees>Sir</ce:degrees>
<ce:given-name>Michael</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Attiya</ce:surname>
<ce:degrees>Ph.D. (Oxon), KBE, FRCS</ce:degrees>

<ce:degrees>Captain</ce:degrees>
<ce:given-name>Jean-Luc</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Picard</ce:surname>

<ce:given-name>Patricia D.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Smith</ce:surname>
<ce:degrees>(Mrs.)</ce:degrees>

Presentation

Prof. Dr. Ing. Wolfgang Bohm
Sir Michael Attiya, Ph.D. (Oxon), KBE, FRCS
Captain Jean-Luc Picard
Patricia D. Smith (Mrs.)

The element should not be confused with ce:suffix or ce:roles.

Rendering notes

The second ce:degrees generates a comma, unless it begins with a parenthesis.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called degs.

See also

ce:author, ce:suffix, ce:roles
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:display

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:display ( ce:figure | ce:table | ce:textbox |
                   ce:e-component | ce:formula )>

Description

The element ce:display is a container element for displayed figures, tables, textboxes, e-components and formulae.

Usage

To indicate that a figure, table, textbox, e-component or formula is “displayed” — which means that it must appear free-standing with white space above and below at the exact position where the element occurs in the document — it should be embedded in a ce:display element.

See also

ce:e-component, ce:figure, ce:table, ce:formula, ce:textbox
ce:displayed-quote

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:displayed-quote ( ce:simple-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:displayed-quote
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:displayed-quote ( ce:simple-para+, ce:source? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:displayed-quote
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:displayed-quote` is used to capture displayed quotes.

Usage

Displayed quotes are pieces of text, mostly but not necessarily quotations, often presented with a certain indent and some white space above and below. They contain one or more simple paragraphs, `ce:simple-para`. The optional subelement `ce:source` is used to describe the source of the text.

```
XML
<ce:displayed-quote id="dq1">
  <ce:simple-para id="sp11">&ldquo;Everything has a version number&rdquo; and &ldquo;Who is in the dark, should switch on the light&rdquo; are CAM mottos. </ce:simple-para>
</ce:displayed-quote>
```

```
XML
<ce:displayed-quote id="dq2">
  <ce:simple-para id="sp12">Louis, I think this is the beginning of a beautiful friendship.</ce:simple-para>
  <ce:source id="src1">Rick Blain (ce:italic)Casablanca(ce:italic)</ce:source>
</ce:displayed-quote>
```

The attribute `role` allows one to categorize displayed quotes. For instance, it makes it possible to mark “poetry” displayed quotes, and handle these in different ways than ordinary displayed quotes. Applications should treat displayed quotes with roles unknown to them as ordinary displayed quotes, i.e., unknown roles must be ignored. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. The following value for `role` has been defined:

- poetry signals that the `ce:displayed-quote` contains a table which is used for the stanza of a poem, and that the rows should be printed with the normal line distance.

```
XML
```
Just before our love got lost you said
I am as constant as a northern star
And I said, constant in the darkness
Where’s that at?
If you want me I’ll be in the bar

On the back of a cartoon coaster
In the blue tv screen light
I drew a map of Canada
Oh Canada
And your face sketched on it twice

Presentation
Just before our love got lost you said
I am as constant as a northern star
And I said, constant in the darkness
Where’s that at?
If you want me I’ll be in the bar

On the back of a cartoon coaster
In the blue tv screen light
I drew a map of Canada
Oh Canada
And your face sketched on it twice

Version history
Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called qd. Subelement ce:source was introduced in CEP 1.2.0.

Light reading
ce:displayed-quote may not be used in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY, HEAD-ONLY or HEAD-AND-TAIL files.

See also
ce:textbox (for pull-quotes)
ce:dochead

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT ce:dochead ( ce:textfn, ce:dochead? )>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:dochead ( ce:textfn, ce:dochead? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:dochead
id ID #IMPLIED>

Description

The element ce:dochead contains the document heading or article type of the article.

Usage

A document heading or article type usually appears above the title. There is a wide variety of examples, such as “Short Communication”, “Erratum”, “Fundamental Study”. Such headings are captured using ce:dochead.

XML

<ce:dochead id="dh1">
  <ce:textfn>Short Communication</ce:textfn>
</ce:dochead>

It is possible to nest a ce:dochead to obtain a second-order document heading. It is not allowed to nest deeper.

Although usually items with the same ce:dochead are grouped in a table of contents under a similar heading, e.g. “Short communications”, this heading must not be inferred from the document headings of the items. The ce:dochead is only used to display a document heading above the title.

Some article types contain a ce:dochead but no ce:title.

Version history

The id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

Light reading

The ce:dochead appears also in HEAD-ONLY and HEAD-AND-TAIL as well as in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY files.

See also

ce:doctopics
ce:doctopic

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT ce:doctopic ( ce:text, ce:doctopic? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:doctopic
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:doctopic ( ce:text, ce:doctopic? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:doctopic
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

The element ce:doctopic contains a topic in a topic hierarchy.

Usage

See ce:doctopics.

To identify Continuing Medical Education content the role value cme can be used. For instance,

XML

  <ce:doctopic id="doct1" role="cme">
    <ce:text>CME article</ce:text>
  </ce:doctopic>

Version history

The id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.
ce:doctopics

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:doctopics ( ce:doctopic+)>
```

Description

The element *ce:doctopics* is used to associate an item with one or more topic hierarchies.

Usage

The table of contents of a book or journal issue is only one way to list the items it consists of. It is contained in a file structured according to a book's DTD or content-transport schema. For instance, the proceedings of a large conference may be published in the order of the presentations at that conference. Besides this, it may be useful to associate the item with one or more topic hierarchies, in order to group items of the same scientific relevance. These hierarchies provide other ways to gain access to the items of a book or journal issue; in a sense tables of content different from the one that represents the physical publication can be generated from the topic hierarchies.

For instance, a proceedings about document structuring, whose articles appear in the order of the time when the presentations were given, might contain articles about “XML”, “SGML”, etc., and within the first category, articles about “XML schemas”, “Schematron”, “Relax NG”; but the proceedings might have another division depending on whether the article concerns theoretical aspects, practical aspects or actual implementations in software. The following example illustrates this.

```xml
XML
<ce:doctopics>
  <ce:doctopic role="languages" id="dt1">
    <ce:text>XML</ce:text>
    <ce:doctopic id="dt2">
      <ce:text>XML schemas</ce:text>
    </ce:doctopic>
  </ce:doctopic>
  <ce:doctopic role="theory and practice" id="dt3">
    <ce:text>Parsers</ce:text>
  </ce:doctopic>
</ce:doctopics>
```

Presentation

This would generate no output for the item itself, but the item, entitled “An editing tool based on schemas” might appear thus in an online rendering of the topic hierarchy, which resembles a common directory structure:
All articles with equal topic hierarchy end up in the same leaf node of the hierarchy.

The optional attribute role can be used to name topic hierarchies.

Keywords and classification codes, captured with ce:keywords are another way to apply structure to a collection of items. Keywords are mostly designed to ease searching, and typically apply to documents that may occur in many different products. For instance, the mathematics subject classification applies to items of many different journals as well as to books and book chapters. The topic hierarchies, however, are meant mostly for creating alternative tables of content depending on criteria of, say, one certain multi-volume book project.

See also
c:dochead, ce:keywords
ce:document-thread

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:document-thread ( ce:refers-to-document+ )>

Description

The element ce:document-thread contains a sequence of document identifiers related to the item.

Usage

A document thread consists of one or more references to other items, captured with element ce:refers-to-document. It is used, for instance, to link an erratum to the original document. An online application can then create a link from the erratum to the original document and, perhaps more importantly, a link from the original document to the erratum.

Discussion threads can be quite complex: In a discussion thread of five documents, the documents could refer to the first one (except the first one itself of course) while the fifth document could also refer to the second and fourth document. An online application could then generate all the links as described in this paragraph (12 in total).

XML

```xml
<ce:document-thread>
  <ce:refers-to-document id="rt1">
    <ce:pii>S0165-0114(04)00081-8</ce:pii>
  </ce:refers-to-document>
  <ce:refers-to-document id="rt2">
    <ce:pii>S0165-0114(02)00276-2</ce:pii>
    <ce:doi>10.1016/S0165-0114(02)00276-2</ce:doi>
  </ce:refers-to-document>
</ce:document-thread>
```

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0 and replaced ce:article-thread.

See also

ce:refers-to-document
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:doi**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:doi ( %string.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:doi` contains the DOI of the item.

**Usage**

Each item can have a DOI, a *digital object identifier*, see [http://www.doi.org](http://www.doi.org). To identify the document, `ce:doi` is populated with the DOI of the document.

The DOI co-exists beside the PII. An item can have a PII, but not a DOI, for instance if the journal does not have an online appearance.

The DOI of a bibliographic reference can also be captured with `ce:doi`.

```xml
<ce:doi>10.1016/j.sedgeo.2003.11.025</ce:doi>
```

**Presentation**

[https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sedgeo.2003.11.025](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sedgeo.2003.11.025)

```xml
```

**Presentation**


```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="b111">
  <ce:label>Lesch, 2004</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr175">
    ....
    <sb:host>
      ....
      <ce:doi>10.1016/j.compag.2004.11.004</ce:doi>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```

**Presentation**


**Rendering notes**

DOIs are always presented as a permanent URL link.

**See also**

`aid`, `jid`, `ce:pii`
ce:e-address

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:e-address ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:e-address
type %e-address-type; "email">
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:e-address ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:e-address
 id ID #IMPLIED
type %e-address-type; "email">
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:e-address ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:e-address
 id ID #IMPLIED
type %e-address-type; "email"
xlink:href CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The purpose of the `ce:e-address` element is to capture the electronic address(es) of the authors of the document.

Usage

Each author or collaboration can have zero or more electronic addresses which are tagged using `ce:e-address`. The attribute `type` denotes the type of the electronic address. Its values (collected in `%e-address-type;`) are email, url and social-media. email, the default value, is an email address, and url is a complete URL, beginning with `http://`. The electronic address can also be a social media site indicated by type `social-media`. The element then contains the social media’s “handle”.

In all cases the URI is to be captured in attribute `xlink:href`.

XML

```xml
<ce:e-address id="ea1" type="email"
xlink:href="mailto:t.smid@math.au.nl">t.smid@math.au.nl</ce:e-address>
<ce:e-address id="ea2" type="url"
<ce:e-address id="ea3" type="social-media" xlink:href="https://twitter.com/OnThisDayinMath">@OnThisDayinMath</ce:e-address>
```

Character entities are not allowed in the content of `ce:e-address` with the exception of `&amp;` (used for an ampersand within a URL).
Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called ead. The id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 the xlink:href attribute was added and value social-media was added to parameter entity %e-address-type;. Also, entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

ce:author and ce:collaboration
ce:e-component

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)

<!ELEMENT ce:e-component (ce:label?, ce:caption?, ce:copyright?,
( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component)+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEP 1.1.2)

<!ELEMENT ce:e-component (ce:label?, ce:caption*, ( %copyright; )?,
( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component )+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.3, 1.1.4)

<!ELEMENT ce:e-component (ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component )+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.5, 1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT ce:e-component (ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component )+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEP 1.2.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:e-component (ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ce:keywords*,
( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component )+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

( %copyright; )?, ce:keywords*,
( (ce:link, ce:alt-e-component?) | ce:e-component )+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:e-component
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

Electronic components are objects such as applets and video and audio sources, spreadsheets, etc., as well as images that do not satisfy the CAP requirements for ce:figure. The element ce:e-component is provided for this purpose.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Usage

The element `ce:e-component`, short for electronic component, contains objects that exist in electronic form, and need to be presented to the reader of an electronic rendition of the document. The element has an optional subelement `ce:alt-e-component` which is used instead in media that cannot handle the electronic component, e.g. in print or in a web PDF file. Below we call these media “non-electronic media” and it is worth remembering that that includes the web PDF file.

Electronic components should not be confused with “views”, see Views (p. 193).

XML structure of an electronic component

As for other cases where `ce:link` is used, the type of destination can be inferred from the entity’s declaration. For a `ce:e-component`, NDATA types APPLICATION, AUDIO, VIDEO and XML can appear — these are exclusively used in `ce:e-component`. The NDATA type IMAGE can also appear, this is used for “Non-CAP” artwork, i.e., artwork meant for online display not satisfying the CAP artwork specifications.

The `ce:e-component` can be “floating” or “displayed”. While the distinction “floating” and “display” may make little difference in most online representations, it does for the embedded `ce:alt-e-component`.

A displayed e-component is contained in a `ce:display` element. In an electronic rendering, the displayed e-component should appear at the position where the `ce:display` occurs. What this means for each e-component type (e.g., audio) is up to the application. Non-electronic media display the embedded `ce:alt-e-component` instead, as if it were a displayed figure, see below.

A floating e-component is contained within `ce:floats`. A `ce:float-anchor` appears in the text, and acts as an anchor near to which the e-component should appear. Each floating e-component must have exactly one `ce:float-anchor`. (With one exception, see the description of `ce:float-anchor`.) Non-electronic media render the embedded `ce:alt-e-component` instead, as if it were a floating figure, see below.

The subelement `ce:label` contains the name or label of the electronic component. The caption (`ce:caption`), consisting of one or more paragraphs (`ce:simple-para`), contains descriptive text about the e-component. There can be multiple captions for different roles and/or languages; each caption must have a different role or language.

Optional subelements `ce:alt-text` can be used to capture alternative descriptions of the e-component. Possible values for the `role` attribute are `short` for a short description (30 words or less) and `long` for a long description. Different alternative texts must have a different role.

The optional subelement `ce:source` is used to describe the source of the figure. The optional `ce:copyright` element can be used if the copyright owner differs from the article’s copyright owner.

The optional `ce:keywords` subelements are used to capture keywords for the e-component. They can be different from the keywords of the item. Normally these are not rendered but are used to improve searching and annotation. The same constraints as for the item keywords apply (e.g., allowed class values, nesting).

The attribute `role` is used to indicate the role or alternative presentation style of the e-component. The following roles are defined.
Additionally the following roles are defined for EMC content. These enable the creation of the required icons and associated links in EMC treaties.

- emc-arbre
- emc-autoevaluation
- emc-clinique
- emc-iconosup
- emc-interactive
- emc-legal
- emc-patient
- emc-podcast
- emc-quotidien
- emc-supplementaire
- emc-video

**Alternative e-component**

An optional `ce:alt-e-component` can be included in the e-component. This contains a `ce:link` to an object that is suitable for presentation in non-electronic media. For example, a significant frame (still image) from a video is an example of content of the alternative e-component.

Each `ce:alt-e-component` should be treated exactly like a `ce:figure`. All rules for figures apply. If the e-component is floating or displayed, the `ce:alt-e-component` will behave like a floating or displayed figure, respectively. Its label is the `ce:label` of the parent e-component, and its caption is the `ce:alt-e-component`’s own caption. If the caption is absent this means that the alternative e-component has no caption; it does not mean that the parent’s caption should be used.

Quite the opposite situation occurs if `ce:alt-e-component` is not encountered within a certain e-component in non-electronic media. It is up to the document’s style to decide what to do with the e-component in such a situation; the default is to ignore the e-component altogether, another style might print a list of e-component captions.

**Cross-referencing and nesting**

The attribute `id` can be the target of a cross-reference or of a link from a foreign document. The `ce:e-component` can be, but does not have to be, referred to from within the text.

The element `ce:e-component` may be nested; this is mainly to be able to furnish each subcomponent with its own caption. The rules are identical to the rules for `ce:figure`. Within a nested `ce:e-component` it is not allowed to nest further `ce:e-components`.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Background

The element `ce:e-component` behaves much like `ce:figure` and `ce:textbox`. It is important to realize the implication of this. In HTML, the external files might well be referenced directly, i.e. they are accessed via the `A` element, e.g.

```html
for more detail, see CNN's <A HREF="korea.mpg">report of
President Kim Dae-jung's visit to North-Korea</A>.
```

In XML files the element `ce:inter-ref` — the counterpart of HTML’s `A` element — are not used to access external files belonging to the document. Instead, these files are accessed through the `ce:link` element embedded in `ce:figure`, `ce:e-component`, etc., and cross-references within the document are made using `ce:cross-ref`.

```xml
<!ENTITY korea SYSTEM "korea" NDATA VIDEO>
<!ENTITY korea-frame SYSTEM "korea-frame" NDATA IMAGE>
... for more detail, see CNN's <ce:cross-ref id="cr44" refid="ec1">report of President Kim Dae-jung's visit to North-Korea</ce:cross-ref>.
<ce:e-component id="ec1">
  <ce:label>Video 1</ce:label>
  <ce:caption id="c4">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp5">Coverage of South-Korean President Kim Dae-jung's historic visit to North-Korea and welcome by Dear Leader Kim Jong-il on Pyongyang International Airport.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:caption>
  <ce:copyright type="other" year="2000">CNN</ce:copyright>
  <ce:alt-e-component id="aec1">
  </ce:alt-e-component>
</ce:e-component>
```

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, the element `upi` existed. It had a different purpose: the `ce:e-component` is specifically for electronic components such as audio and video clips and spreadsheets, etc., whereas `upi` could contain any object that should not appear in print (hence the name, unprinted item). The `ce:e-component` can appear in print — the `ce:alt-e-component` is shown instead.

In order to create portions of text, which may include figures, tables or electronic components, that should only appear in certain renditions of the document, the `view` attribute of various elements can be used, see Views (p. 193).

In CEP 1.1.0 a list of subelements `ce:link` and `ce:e-component` became possible. As from CEP 1.1.2, the caption has become repeatable for different languages and roles. Parameter entity `%copyright` was introduced as well.

Subelement `ce:source` was introduced in CEP 1.1.3. The attribute `role` was added in
CEP 1.1.5. Subelement ce:keywords was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.4.0 the subelement ce:alt-text was introduced.
**ce:edition**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:edition (%string.data;)*>
```

**Description**

*ce:edition* contains the edition of an item.

**Usage**

The element *ce:edition* is used to capture the text that describes the edition of an item. The text contains no closing punctuation.

```xml
```

**Version history**

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.2.
ce:editors

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.2–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:editors (ce:author-group+ )>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:editors (ce:author-group+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:editors role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:editors` is a container element that is used for capturing the editors and their affiliations.

Usage

If the need arises to capture the names, degrees, affiliations of editors, the `ce:editors` container element is used, that consists of one or more `ce:author-group` elements. Within this container, the editor names and affiliations are captured as if they were authors. The fact that the `ce:author-group` elements are contained within `ce:editors` indicates that the persons, institutions or collaborations captured with `ce:author` or `ce:collaboration` are editors. In other words, the container element `ce:editors` gives the instruction “for author, read editor”.

All the rules for `ce:author-group` apply, including the rules for implicit and explicit couplings with the affiliations.

```xml
<ce:editors>
  <ce:author-group id="aug1">
    <ce:text>Edited by</ce:text>
    <ce:author id="au1" author-id="S0033838916901118-8f87802707501c003ee301d9d8dbee8">
      <ce:given-name>Jerald P.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Kuhn</ce:surname>
      <ce:degrees>M.D.</ce:degrees>
    </ce:author>
    ...
  </ce:author-group>
</ce:editors>
```

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.2. The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:enunciation

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:enunciation ( ce:label, ce:section-title?,
  ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:enunciation
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:enunciation` is used to capture enunciations. Enunciations is the catch-all phrase given to the category of structure elements that occur frequently in, e.g., mathematical papers: theorems, lemmas, propositions, proofs, corollaries, definitions, remarks, etc. However, enunciations are not restricted to mathematics.

Usage

The element `ce:enunciation` consists of a mandatory `ce:label` element, an optional title `ce:section-title` and one or more paragraphs. The `ce:enunciation` can be cross-referenced and therefore has an `id` attribute.

The `ce:label` contains the full designation of the enunciation, e.g. “Lemma 1.6” or “Remark”. The `ce:section-title` is used to capture additional information, e.g. “Fermat’s Theorem”.

```xml
<ce:enunciation id="enun37">
  <ce:label>Theorem 1.12</ce:label>
  <ce:para id="p1">
    <ce:italic>Let</ce:italic>
    <mml:math altimg="si301.gif">
      <mml:mrow>
        <mml:mi>V</mml:mi>
      </mml:mrow>
    </mml:math>
    <ce:italic>be a set. Then the cardinality of the powerset of</ce:italic>
    <mml:math altimg="si302.gif">
      <mml:mrow>
        <mml:mi mathvariant="script">P</mml:mi>
      </mml:mrow>
    </mml:math>,
    <mml:math altimg="si303.gif">
      <mml:mrow>
        <mml:mi>V</mml:mi>
      </mml:mrow>
    </mml:math>
  </ce:para>
</ce:enunciation>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
is strictly greater than the cardinality of \( |V| \).

Suppose not, and \( V \neq \emptyset \) (for \( V = \emptyset \) the theorem is clear). Then there is a bijective mapping \( f : V \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(V) \). Let \( a = f^{-1}(2) \)
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Presentation

Theorem 1.12. Let $V$ be a set. Then the cardinality of the powerset of $V$, $\mathcal{P}(V)$, is strictly greater than the cardinality of $V$.

Proof. Suppose not, and $V \neq \emptyset$ (for $V = \emptyset$ the theorem is clear). Then there is a bijective mapping $f : V \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(V)$. Let $a = f^{-1}(\{x \in V \mid x \notin f(x)\})$. Then $a \in f(a) \iff a \notin f(a)$. Contradiction. □

Explanation

Note that in this example certain spaces are “generated” by the XML. For instance, the space between “Let” and “$V$” is generated by the whitespace characters between <ce:italic> and <ml:math altimg="si301.gif">. See also the section Whitespace in the XML file (p. 12).

XML

<ce:enunciation id="25">
<ce:label>Theorem 1.25</ce:label>
<ce:section-title id="stPT">Pythagoras’ Theorem</ce:section-title>
<ce:para id="pPT">In a right-angled triangle the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides.</ce:italic></ce:para>

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Let} & \\
\text{Suppose not,} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Let} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\text{Then} & \\
\end{align*}
\]
Presentation

Theorem 1.25 (Pythagoras’ Theorem). In a right-angled triangle the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called enun.

Copy edit considerations

It is well-known that certain enunciations, such as theorems and lemmas, are usually rendered in italics while others, such as definitions, are not. The ce:enunciation element has no provision to indicate a type; italics must be indicated explicitly.

Rendering notes

The ce:label element is rendered in the style of the journal — i.e. if the style is to present the ce:label in bold, this should not be explicitly marked up. The ce:section-title, whose standard presentation is italics, generates parentheses. Closing full stops are generated.

Light reading

ce:enunciation may not be used in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY, HEAD-ONLY or HEAD-AND-TAIL files.
ce:exam-answers

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:exam-answers (ce:section-title?, %parsec; )>
<!ATTLIST ce:exam-answers
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

`ce:exam-answers` is used to capture the answers for a Continuous Medical Examination or similar.

Usage

`ce:exam-answers` has a similar content model to `ce:section`. Therefore it can accommodate a wide range of forms of examination answers. However, it can neither have a `ce:label` nor subsections.

XML

```xml
<ce:exam-answers id="exa1">
  <ce:section-title id="st4">Answers ...</ce:section-title>
  <ce:para id="p142">Identification ...</ce:para>
  <ce:para id="p143">
    <ce:display>
      <ce:table id="cme-ans" frame="none">
        <ce:caption id="c3">Questions 1-30, ...</ce:caption>
        <tgroup cols="4" colsep="0" rowsep="0" align="char">
          <tbody>
            <colspec colnum="1" colwidth="5pc" char="." charoff="50">
            <colspec colnum="2" colwidth="5pc" char="." charoff="50">
            <colspec colnum="3" colwidth="5pc" char="." charoff="50">
            <colspec colnum="4" colwidth="5pc" char="." charoff="50">
            <row>
              <entry>1. c</entry>
              <entry>9. b</entry>
              <entry>17. a</entry>
              <entry>25. a</entry>
            </row>
            ...
          </tbody></tgroup>
        </ce:table>
      </ce:display>
    </ce:para>
  </ce:exam-answers>
```

Version history

This element is new in DTD 5. The `view` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0.
ce:exam-questions

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:exam-questions ( ce:section-title?, %parsec; )>
<!ATTLIST ce:exam-questions
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

ce:exam-questions is used to capture the questions for a Continuous Medical Examination or similar.

Usage

ce:exam-questions has a similar content model to ce:section. Therefore it can accommodate a wide range of forms of examination questions. However, it can neither have a ce:label nor subsections.

An example of examination questions is shown in Figs. 9 and 10.

Version history

This element is new in DTD 5. The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0.
To obtain the 15 Category I CME credits, the entire examination of lessons from Volume 81 of *Fertility and Sterility*® must be taken. The answer sheet will be available in the June 2004 issue and will be graded. A 70% passing score must be achieved and documentation will be mailed with the corrected examination to the participant.

**SART and ASRM. 81:1207–20 (Lesson 16)**

*Objective:* To summarize the procedures and outcomes of assisted reproductive technologies (ART) initiated in the United States during 2000

1. For all IVF cycles in the Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology (SART) 2000 registry, what was the approximate percentage of singleton deliveries?
   - a) 60%
   - b) 65%
   - c) 70%
   - d) 75%
   - e) 80%

2. Using deliveries per transfer from the SART 2000 data, what is the approximate reduced likelihood for success in a woman aged >40 compared with a woman <35 years?
   - a) 40%
   - b) 50%
   - c) 60%
   - d) 70%
   - e) 80%

**Virro et al. 81:1289–95 (Lesson 17)**

*Objective:* To determine the relationship between sperm chromatin structure assay parameters (DNA fragmentation index, DFI; high DNA stainability, HDS) and IVF and IVF/intracytoplasmic sperm injection outcomes

1. When fertilization is on day 1 and blastocyst development is on day 5, on which day does embryo genome expression begin?
   - a) day 1
   - b) day 2
   - c) day 3
   - d) day 4
   - e) day 5

---

Figure 9: An example of Continuing Medical Education Questions. Its XML coding can be found in Fig. 10.
To obtain the 15 Category I CME credits, the entire examination of lessons from Volume 81 of *Fertility and Sterility* must be taken. The answer sheet will be available in the June 2004 issue and will be graded. A 70% passing score must be achieved and documentation will be mailed with the corrected examination to the participant.

---

**SART and ASRM. 81:1207–20 (Lesson 16)**

**Objective:** To summarize the procedures and outcomes of assisted reproductive technologies (ART) initiated in the United States during 2000.

1. For all IVF cycles in the Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology (SART) 2000 registry, what was the approximate percentage of singleton deliveries?
   - a) 60%
   - b) 65%
   - c) 70%
   - d) 75%
   - e) 80%

2. Using deliveries per transfer from the SART 2000 data, what is the approximate reduced likelihood for success in a woman aged >40 compared with a woman <35 years?
   - a) 40%
   - b) 50%
   - c) 60%
   - d) 70%
   - e) 80%

---

**Virro et al. 81:1289–95 (Lesson 17)**

**Objective:** To determine the relationship between sperm chromatin structure assay parameters (DNA fragmentation index, DFI; high DNA stainability, HDS) and IVF and IVF/intracytoplasmic sperm injection outcomes.

1. When fertilization is on day 1 and blastocyst development is on day 5, on which day does embryo genome expression begin?

---

Figure 10: XML of the examination questions shown in Fig. 9.
ce:exam-reference

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:exam-reference ( ce:inter-ref )>
<!ATTLIST ce:exam-reference
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `ce:exam-reference` is used to create a link to an associated examination that is in a separate article.

Usage

Sometimes the examination associated with an article is not published as part of the article but as a separate article. The element `ce:exam-reference` can be used to create a link in the article to the examination.

Only the values `pii` and `doi` for the scheme in `xlink:href` are allowed.

```
<ce:exam-reference>
  <ce:inter-ref id="interref7" xlink:href="pii:S0004-3702(02)00193-5">See the examination questions in the following article.</ce:inter-ref>
</ce:exam-reference>
```

Version history

This element is new in DTD 5. The `view` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0.

Rendering notes

The text of `ce:exam-reference`, i.e., the text of the contained `ce:inter-ref` element, is rendered as a separate paragraph.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:figure**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption?, ce:copyright?,
 ( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.1.2)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ( %copyright; )?,
 ( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.3–1.1.5)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.1.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEP 1.2.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ce:keywords*,
( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:alt-text*, ce:source?,
( %copyright; )?, ce:keywords*,
( ce:link | ce:figure )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:figure
 id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element **ce:figure** is used to insert a figure in the document.
Usage

Most articles contain artwork in one form or another, and the element `ce:figure` is used to insert the figure. The attribute `id` is used when referring to the figure.

XML

```xml
<ce:cross-ref id="cr5" refid="fig4">Fig. 4</ce:cross-ref>
<ce:cross-ref id="cr6" refid="fig4">Fig. 4(a)</ce:cross-ref>
```

Explanation

It is common that the text refers to parts of a figure while in fact the whole figure is cross-referenced. Indeed, in most cases the subfigure will be an integral part of the external artwork file.

Attribute `role` can be used to assign a specific role. No roles are currently defined.

Three kinds of figure are distinguished: floating and displayed figures, and figures in graphical abstracts. Floating figures are embedded in a `ce:floats` element, displayed figures are embedded in a `ce:display` element, and a figure in a graphical abstract is the (optional) subelement of `ce:abstract` behind `ce:abstract-sec`. The latter play a special role in a graphical abstract (`ce:abstract`): these are floating, and are not referred to. Their placement is governed by the style of the graphical abstract. There can be only one such figure per abstract. Otherwise, no floating figures may occur in an abstract. (Cross-references to figures are, however, allowed, albeit highly discouraged.)

Floating figures are figures which appear near a point in the text where they are mentioned, mostly at the top or the bottom of the page, spanning one or more columns if needed. Floating figures must be referred to from within the document. To indicate where a floating figure should appear, the element `ce:float-anchor` is used, referring to a `ce:figure` within `ce:floats`. Hence, a floating figure has at least one `ce:cross-ref` or `ce:cross-refs` pointing to it, and exactly one `ce:float-anchor`. (With one exception, see the description of `ce:float-anchor`.)

XML

```xml
<ce:cross-ref id="cr5" refid="fig4">Fig. 4</ce:cross-ref>
<ce:float-anchor refid="fig4"/>
```

A displayed figure, obtained by embedding the figure in a `ce:display` element, is a figure which is displayed on a line of its own, separated from the surrounding text by white space, on the spot where it appears in the file.

Figures can be nested one level deep, i.e., a figure within a figure cannot contain yet another figure.

The subelement `ce:label` contains the name of the figure, e.g. “Fig. 2”, “Diagram B”, “Scheme 6” or “Plate III”. For floating figures it is mandatory.

The optional subelement `ce:caption` contains descriptive text of the figure in the form of one or more simple paragraphs, `ce:simple-para`. As from CEP 1.1.2, multiple captions for different languages and/or roles are supported. Different captions must have a different role or language.

Optional subelements `ce:alt-text` can be used to capture alternative descriptions of the image. For a short description (30 words or less) attribute `role` with value `short` must be
used. It can be used to populate HTML's alt attribute. For a long description value long
must be used. Different alternative texts must have a different role.

XML

```
<ce:figure id="f055">
  ...
  <ce:alt-text id="at070" role="short">Painting by John William
  Waterhouse, 'The lady of Shalott', 1888.</ce:alt-text>
  <ce:alt-text id="at071" role="long">This painting illustrates Alfred
  Tennyson's poem 'The Lady of Shalott'. Draped over the boat is the
  fabric the lady wove in a tower near Camelot. But she brought a
  curse on herself by looking directly at Sir Lancelot. With her
  right hand she lets go of the chain mooring the boat. Her mouth is
  slightly open, as she sings 'her last song'. She stares at a
  crucifix lying in front of her. Beside it are three candles, often
  used to symbolise life. Two have blown out. This suggests her life
  will end soon, as she floats down the river.</ce:alt-text>
  ...
</ce:figure>
```

The optional subelement `ce:source` is used to describe the source of the figure. The optional
subelement `ce:copyright` is used if the copyright owner of the figure is different
from that of the item.

The optional `ce:keywords` subelements are used to capture keywords for the figure. They
can be different from the keywords of the item. Normally these are not rendered but are
used to improve searching and annotation. The same constraints as for the item keywords
apply (e.g., allowed class values, nesting).

**Figures without subfigures**

In this subsection it is assumed that the `ce:figure` does not contain any `ce:figure`
subelements.

One or more `ce:link` elements provide the link with the external artwork file(s). The artwork
files are to be displayed in the order of the `ce:link` elements.

XML

```
<!ENTITY gr2ab SYSTEM "gr2ab" NDATA IMAGE>
<!ENTITY gr2c SYSTEM "gr2c" NDATA IMAGE>

<ce:figure id="fig2">
  <ce:label>Fig. 2</ce:label>
  <ce:caption id="c2">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp2">Caption, caption, caption ...</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:caption>
  <ce:link locator="gr2ab" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
    xlink:href="pii:S1570870515002772/gr2ab"/>
  <ce:link locator="gr2c" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
    xlink:href="pii:S1570870515002772/gr2c"/>
</ce:figure>
```


Figures with nested figures

Instead of just ce:links, the top-level figure may contain any combination of ce:link and ce:figure. Nested ce:figures are used if the subfigures need their own captions or copyright statement. A nested ce:figure may only contain ce:links, no ce:figures.

The qualification “displayed” or “floating” is irrelevant for a subfigure. The subfigures are displayed within the main figure in the order which they appear.

Nested figures may have an id and may be the target of a ce:cross-ref. However, the effect is undefined: “clicking” on the cross-reference may lead to the whole figure or the nested figure alone. It is recommended only to cross-reference the top-level figure.

XML

```xml
<ce:figure id="fig2">  
  <ce:label>Fig. 2</ce:label>  
  <ce:caption id="c4">  
    <ce:simple-para id="sp8">(a) Caption. (b) Caption. (c) Caption ...</ce:simple-para>  
  </ce:caption>  
  <ce:figure id="fig2c">  
    <ce:copyright type="other" yr="2000">Copyright</ce:copyright>  
    <ce:link locator="gr2c" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4" xlink:href="pii:S1570870515002772/gr2c"/>  
  </ce:figure>  
</ce:figure>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family

303
External entities

In practice, the external entities used in the `ce:link` element within a figure will be of notation data type IMAGE. Usage of the other notation types is presently undefined.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `fig`. As from CEP 1.1.2, multiple captions are supported. Parameter entity `%copyright;` was introduced as well. Subelement `ce:source` was introduced in CEP 1.1.3.

The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6. Subelement `ce:keywords` was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.4.0 the subelement `ce:alt-text` was introduced.

Copy edit considerations

In some articles, figures called, say, “Fig. 5(a)” and “Fig. 5(b)” exist, which are to be treated as floating or displayed objects in their own right. These figures are called improper subfigures. In such cases, it is inappropriate to use the nested `ce:figure` construction; these figures are independent top-level `ce:figures`.

Light reading

No floating `ce:figure` may be used in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY, HEAD-ONLY or HEAD-AND-TAIL files.

See also

`ce:abstract, ce:display, ce:float-anchor, ce:floats, ce:inline-figure, ce:keywords`
ce: first-page

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce: first-page ( %richstring.data; )>>

Description

The first page of an item called by a hub file is captured using ce: first-page.

Usage

See ce: pages.

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

ce: include-item, ce: last-page
ce:float-anchor

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:float-anchor EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:float-anchor
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>

Description

The element ce:float-anchor is a marker to indicate that a floating figure, table, textbox or e-component must appear in the vicinity.

Usage

To indicate that a figure, table, textbox or e-component is “floating”, it is embedded within ce:floats, collected at the beginning of the document.

The anchor, in the form of the empty ce:float-anchor element with a refid attribute pointing to the figure, table, textbox or e-component within ce:floats, tells the rendering application that the float should be placed at a suitable place near the anchor. This anchor is often, but not always, placed after the first cross-reference to that object. There must be exactly one anchor for each floating object. (With one exception: it is possible that a paragraph containing a float anchor is present in two views. In such a case there are two float anchors for the floating object. This should be avoided when possible.)

The ce:float-anchor itself generates no presentation, it marks the place near which the floating object must appear. Its refid attribute may not point to any object outside ce:floats.

See also

ce:display, ce:e-component, ce:figure, ce:floats, ce:table
ce:floats

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:floats ( ce:figure*, ce:table*, ce:textbox*, ce:e-component* )>

Description

The element ce:floats is a container element for floating figures, tables, textboxes and e-components.

Usage

To indicate that a figure, table, textbox or e-component is “floating”, it should be embedded in a ce:floats element, a container for all floats located at the beginning of the document, as a child of the top element.

The approximate position of the floating object is indicated by a ce:float-anchor element. This anchor is often, but not always, placed near the first cross-reference to that object.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, floats were placed within the in-line text.

See also

ce:display, ce:e-component, ce:figure, ce:float-anchor, ce:table
**ce:footnote**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:footnote ( ce:label, ce:note-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:footnote id ID #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:footnote ( ce:label, ce:note-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:footnote id ID #REQUIRED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

Footnotes are captured using **ce:footnote**.

**Usage**

The element **ce:footnote** is used for footnotes. Footnotes are objects, which in print appear at the bottom of the page. The **ce:footnote** element contains the footnote text and additionally it is an “anchor” nearest to which the footnote should appear. The actual reference in the text is made by a **ce:cross-ref**.

Each footnote must be referred to. It has an attribute **id** so that it can be referenced. The mandatory subelement **ce:label** contains the number of the footnote. The footnote text itself consists of one or more note paragraphs, **ce:note-para**.

```xml
<ce:cross-ref id="cr8" refid="fn1"><ce:sup>1</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref>

<ce:footnote id="fn1">
  <ce:label>1</ce:label>
  <ce:note-para id="np3">In XML files used for online rendering, it is possible ...</ce:note-para>
</ce:footnote>
```

**Version history**

The **role** attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.

**See also**

**ce:article-footnote, ce:table-footnote, ce:cross.refs**
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

\textbf{ce:formula}

\textbf{Declaration}

\textbf{Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)}
\[
\texttt{<!ELEMENT \textit{ce:formula} ( ce:label?, ( mml:math | ce:chem | ce:link | ce:formula+ ) )>}
\]
\[
\texttt{<!ATTLIST \textit{ce:formula} id ID #IMPLIED>}
\]

\textbf{Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)}
\[
\texttt{<!ELEMENT \textit{ce:formula}( ce:label?, ( %math; | ce:chem | ce:link | ce:formula+ ) )>}
\]
\[
\texttt{<!ATTLIST \textit{ce:formula} id ID #IMPLIED>}
\]

\textbf{Description}

A displayed formula is captured using \textit{ce:formula}.

\textbf{Usage}

The element \textit{ce:formula} is one of the possible subelements of \textit{ce:display}. It contains a mathematical formula \textit{mml:math}, a strip-in image (p. 23) of a mathematical formula, a chemical formula \textit{ce:chem}, a \textit{ce:link} to the image of a formula, or nested \textit{ce:formula} elements. The number of the formula is captured in the optional \textit{ce:label} element.

A \textit{mml:math} element in a \textit{ce:formula} should not have the value \textit{block} for the \textit{display} attribute, but rather the default value \textit{inline}. This is so because it is inline with respect to the containing \textit{ce:formula} and to the formula number that the element \textit{ce:label} generates.

\textit{XML}
\[
\begin{verbatim}
<ce:formula id="ch2">
  <ce:label>(2)</ce:label>
  <ce:chem>TLC (CH\textsubscript{2}Cl\textsubscript{2}/MeOH): \textit{R}\textsubscript{f} = 0.45; IR: 3423 cm\textsuperscript{-1} (NH).</ce:chem>
</ce:formula>
\end{verbatim}
\]

\textit{Presentation}

TLC (CH\textsubscript{2}Cl\textsubscript{2}/MeOH): \textit{R}\textsubscript{f} = 0.45; IR: 3423 cm\textsuperscript{-1} (NH). \hspace{1cm} (2)

\textit{XML}
\[
\begin{verbatim}
<ce:formula id="f7a"><ce:label>(7a)</ce:label>
  <mml:math altimg="si56.gif">
    \alpha = \int \frac{d}{\text{mm:mi}<\text{mm:mi>}}
  \end{verbatim}
\]

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
The requirements for nested displayed formulae are described by three rules. The first two are:

1. The ce:label element may occur at the nested level.
2. **ce:label** elements may not occur at both the main level and the nested level.

These rules imply the following error table for nested equations. Here a 0 or 1 means that an **id** or a **ce:label** is absent or present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Main level</th>
<th>Nested level</th>
<th>Error status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>id</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>id’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additionally there is a rule that if the **id** attribute appears at the main level, it is not possible to mix unnumbered and numbered subequations. For example, in the example above, it is not allowed to leave out one of the **ce:label** elements (5a) or (5b). To be precise:

3. If there is an **id** attribute at the main level and a **ce:label** element at the nested level, then all nested formulae must have a **ce:label** element.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, displayed formulae were directly captured in the element **fd**, without top **mml:math** or **ce:chem** element. Element **ce:math** was added in CEP 1.5.0.

**Rendering notes**

A formula element is rendered in the block that is generated by its parent **ce:display** element. If it has a label, its space is split into two areas. In the formula area, which is the larger (usually left-hand) area, the contained formula is rendered as an inline formula. In the label area, which is the other area, the formula label is rendered.
See also

ce:math
ce:further-reading

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

`<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading ( ce:section-title, ce:further-reading-sec+ )>`

`<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>`

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.4.0)

`<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading (ce:section-title?, ce:further-reading-sec+ )>`

`<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>`

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

`<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading (ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
    ce:further-reading-sec+ )>`

`<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>`

Description

The element `ce:further-reading` contains a list of bibliographic references which are meant as further reading material.

Usage

The element `ce:further-reading` is an optional part of the tail. It contains bibliographic references which are meant for further reading.

A further-reading list has a `ce:section-title`, which contains the name of the list, e.g. “Further reading”. The optional `ce:intro` contains a brief introduction. It can also contain a simple statement like “Full reference list available online...”. The list itself contains one or more sections, `ce:further-reading-sec`. Each `ce:further-reading-sec` can also have a `ce:section-title`, which is a second-order heading. All further-reading sections except the first must have a `ce:section-title`, for the first this is optional.

The further-reading section contains any combination of bibliographic references, `ce:bib-reference`, and paragraphs, `ce:para`. Unlike the `ce:bib-references` within an ordinary bibliography (`ce:bibliography`), each `ce:bib-reference` may or may not be referred to by means of `ce:cross-ref` or `ce:cross-refs`. In further-reading lists, the references are often interspersed with text; this is why paragraphs can be inserted between the entries. This is different from the `sb:comment` and `ce:note` which exist within `ce:bib-reference`, since those elements belong uniquely to the specific reference.
Version history

The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.0. Subelement ce:section-title was made optional in CEP 1.1.6. Subelement ce:intro was added in CEP 1.5.0.

Light reading

ce:further-reading is part of HEAD-AND-TAIL material.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
ce:further-reading-sec

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading-sec( ce:section-title?, ( ce:para | ce:bib-reference )+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6, 1.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading-sec( ce:section-title?, ( ce:para | ce:bib-reference )+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:further-reading-sec( ce:section-title?, ( ce:para | ce:bib-reference )+, ce:further-reading-sec* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:further-reading-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `ce:further-reading-sec` is a section within the further-reading list. Further-reading sections can be nested one level deep.

Usage

See `ce:further-reading`.

Version history

The `view` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6. In Elsevier Book 5.4.0 it became possible to nest the `ce:further-reading-sec` element.
**ce:given-name**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:given-name ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The given name of an author or editor (also known as forename, Christian name) is tagged using `ce:given-name`.

**Usage**

For non-Western persons, the `ce:given-name` is unreliable, and therefore the `ce:given-name` and `ce:surname` should always be used together.

```xml
<ce:author id="au09"
   author-id="S999999941690045X-f91973f1483ad67401eae2e306936b98">
   <ce:given-name>Franklin D.</ce:given-name>
   <ce:surname>Roosevelt</ce:surname>
<ce:author>
```

**See also**

`ce:author`
ce:glossary

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary ( ce:section-title, ce:intro?,
                      ce:glossary-sec+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
                      ce:glossary-sec+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

A glossary is a list of terms or symbols, sometimes with a definition, and sometimes with a reference to the occurrence in the text, appearing in the backmatter of an article.

Usage

A glossary consists of one or more ce:glossary-sec, each containing a subsection within the glossary.

The section title, ce:section-title, contains the title of the glossary, e.g. “Glossary”.

The subelement ce:intro, consisting of one or more paragraphs, is an introductory section at the beginning of the glossary.

Often, a glossary is not subdivided into subsections, in which case it contains just one ce:glossary-sec. If there are subsections, each subsequent ce:glossary-sec must have a ce:section-title, whereas this is optional for the first.

A glossary (section) contains one or more entries, described under ce:glossary-entry.

Version history

Subelement ce:section-title was made optional in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:glossary-def

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-def ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEP 1.1.6)
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-def ( %textref.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-def ( %textref.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-def id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-def ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-def id ID #IMPLIED>

Description

Within a glossary entry, ce:glossary-def is used to capture the definition of a glossary item.

Usage

See ce:glossary-entry.

Version history

In CEP 1.1.6 the content model was extended making it possible to use cross-references (ce:cross-ref, ce:cross-refs, ce:intra-ref and ce:intra-refs) in the content. The id attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 the model of ce:glossary-def was changed to %note.data; making it possible to add lists. Also, entity %math; was added to %note.data;.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:glossary-entry

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.3)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-entry ( ce:glossary-heading, ce:glossary-def*,
( %cross-ref; )*, ce:glossary-entry* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-entry
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.4, 1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-entry ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:glossary-heading,
ce:glossary-def*, ( %glossary-entry-refs; )?, ( ce:see-also |
ce:glossary-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-entry
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-entry ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:glossary-heading,
ce:glossary-def*, ( %glossary-entry-refs; )?, ( ce:see-also |
ce:glossary-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-entry
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The glossary or a glossary section consists of one or more glossary entries. The element `ce:glossary-entry` is provided in order to capture such an entry.

Usage

A `ce:glossary-entry` consists of an optional `ce:indexed-name` with the term under which the entry should appear in a glossary, a mandatory `ce:glossary-heading`, followed by zero or more `ce:glossary-defs`, an optional list of `ce:cross-ref` and `ce:intra-ref` (provided the DTD supports this element), and zero or more see-also references, nested glossary entries and reader-see references.

A glossary entry has an optional `id` attribute, which can be used to make cross-references from expressions in the text to the terms in the glossary.

Glossary heading and definition

A glossary heading, `ce:glossary-heading` contains the term.

A glossary entry may or may not have accompanying definitions. An example where it has none is when it contains nested entries. The following has one or two definitions per entry.
XML

```xml
<ce:glossary-entry id="gle001">
  <ce:glossary-heading><ce:italic>a</ce:italic></ce:glossary-heading>
  <ce:glossary-def id="gld001">acceleration (m/s<ce:sup>2</ce:sup>)</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>

<ce:glossary-entry id="gle002">
  <ce:glossary-heading><ce:italic>e</ce:italic></ce:glossary-heading>
  <ce:glossary-def id="gld002">charge of an electron (1.6022&middot;10<ce:sup>&minus;19</ce:sup>C), base of natural logarithm (2.718281828)</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>

<ce:glossary-entry id="gle003">
  <ce:glossary-heading><ce:italic>F</ce:italic></ce:glossary-heading>
  <ce:glossary-def id="gld004">force (N)</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>
```

**Presentation**

- \( a \), acceleration (m/s\(^2\))
- \( e \), charge of an electron (1.6022 \cdot 10^{-19} \text{ C})
- \( F \), force (N)

**Cross-references**

If there are page numbers or section numbers referring to the place in the text where the term is used, they can be tagged using the `ce:cross-ref` and `ce:intra-ref` subelements, see the first example above. Depending on the value of `%cross-ref`; the `ce:intra-ref` may or may not be present; this depends on which DTD the glossary is structured with.

Of course, reference to page numbers is not appropriate in electronic media. Therefore, the `ce:cross-ref` and `ce:intra-ref` may also be empty here, meaning that the rendering application must provide another way to establish a “clickable” link, e.g. by turning the whole entry into a hyperlink or by providing a button.

**Nested glossary entries**

Glossary entries can be nested. Two sublevels are allowed.

```xml
<ce:glossary-entry id="gle045">
  <ce:glossary-heading>\&lt;ce:monospace\>biographyid</ce:monospace\>, attribute of \ce:monospace\>author</ce:monospace\></ce:glossary-heading>
  <ce:glossary-def id="gld049">link to the author’s biography</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>

<ce:glossary-entry id="gle046">
  <ce:glossary-heading>\&lt;ce:monospace\>year</ce:monospace\></ce:glossary-heading>
  <ce:glossary-entry id="gle047">
    <ce:glossary-heading>\&lt;ce:monospace\>year</ce:monospace\></ce:glossary-heading>
  </ce:glossary-entry>
</ce:glossary-entry>
```
attribute of <ce:monospace>date-accepted</ce:monospace>
</ce:glossary-heading>
<ce:glossary-def id="gld050">year of acceptance</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>
<ce:glossary-entry id="gle048">
<ce:glossary-heading>
attribute of <ce:monospace>copyright</ce:monospace>
</ce:glossary-heading>
<ce:glossary-def id="gld051">copyright year</ce:glossary-def>
</ce:glossary-entry>

Presentation
biographyid, attribute of author, link to the author’s biography
year
attribute of date-accepted, year of acceptance
attribute of copyright, copyright year

Version history

Parameter entity %glossary-entry-refs; and element ce:indexed-name were introduced in CEP 1.1.4. In CEP 1.1.6 element ce:see and ce:inter-ref were added to parameter entity %glossary-entry-refs;.
ce:glossary-heading

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-heading ( %textref.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-heading ( %textref.data; )*>

Description

Within a glossary entry, \texttt{ce:glossary-heading} is used to capture the item that is defined.

Usage

See \texttt{ce:glossary-entry}.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity \%math; was added to \%textref.data;.
ce:glossary-sec

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
                           ce:glossary-entry+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:glossary-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
                           ce:glossary-entry+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:glossary-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>

Description

The element ce:glossary-sec is a section within the glossary.

Usage

See ce:glossary.

Version history

The view attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:glyph**

**Declaration**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:glyph EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:glyph
ame %glyph-names; #REQUIRED>
```

**Description**

Symbols for which no Unicode code point exists, may be captured in a `ce:glyph` element.

**Usage**

The Elsevier Grid contains a small number of symbols for which no Unicode code point exists. This concerns especially symbols for chemistry and linguistics. Such symbols can be captured using the `ce:glyph` element. It has a required `name` attribute, which contains the name of the glyph. Its value must be one of a list of names enumerated in the DTD. See the section on glyphs (p. 19) for an overview.

It is expected that newer versions of Unicode will incorporate some or all of the glyphs defined by `ce:glyph`. Unicode characters are always preferred over `ce:glyph`.

```xml
Bi(NO<inf>3</inf>)<ce:glyph name="rad"/>5H<inf>2</inf>O
```

```xml
XML

C<ce:glyph name="dbnd"/>N bond
```

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, all non-ascii symbols were entered as character entities.

**Rendering notes**

A glyph element is rendered with the glyph of that name that is shown in the Elsevier Grid, or with a similar glyph in a different font/style.
**ce:grant-number**

### Declaration

**Model (CEPs 1.1.5, 1.1.6)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:grant-number ( %text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:grant-number  
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:grant-number ( %text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:grant-number  
  id ID #IMPLIED  
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT ce:grant-number ( %text.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:grant-number  
  id ID #IMPLIED  
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

### Description

The element `ce:grant-number` contains the identification of a grant under which the document was written.

### Usage

The element `ce:grant-number` is linked to a `ce:grant-sponsor` through its mandatory `refid` attribute.

```
<ce:grant-number refid="grant4">EF-2008.001</ce:grant-number>
```

For more information, see `ce:grant-sponsor`.

### Version history

`ce:grant-number` was added in CEP 1.1.5. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

### See also

`ce:grant-sponsor`
**ce:grant-sponsor**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.5–1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:grant-sponsor ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:grant-sponsor
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #FIXED "http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/grant-sponsor"
  xlink:href CDATA #IMPLIED
  sponsor-id CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:grant-sponsor ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:grant-sponsor
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #FIXED "http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/grant-sponsor"
  xlink:href CDATA #IMPLIED
  sponsor-id CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:grant-sponsor` contains the name of an organisation that supported the authors.

**Usage**

Funding received by the authors of scientific works is acknowledged in the acknowledgement section, in footnotes or elsewhere in the document. The elements `ce:grant-number` and `ce:grant-sponsor`, modeled after elements in the NLM Publishing DTD, allow tagging the grant information.

The content of the element `ce:grant-sponsor` is an organisation that supported the authors. The optional attribute `xlink:href` contains a URI that belongs to the funding body or the grant scheme of the funding body. The `id` attribute is the target of one or more `ce:grant-number` elements containing the identifications of the grants that were awarded by the authors. The attribute `sponsor-id` can be used to uniquely identify the sponsor.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:acknowledgment id="ack1">
  <ce:para id="p414">This work was supported by the <ce:grant-sponsor xlink:href="http://www.pharmafoundation.org/" id="GS1">Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America Foundation</ce:grant-sponsor>, the <ce:grant-sponsor xlink:href="http://www.energy.gov" id="GS2">United States Department of Energy</ce:grant-sponsor> Office of Science (BER) grant number <ce:grant-number refid="GS2">DE-FG02-04ER63803</ce:grant-number>, the <ce:grant-sponsor xlink:href="http://www.nih.gov" id="GS3">National...</ce:grant-sponsor>
</ce:para>
```

326 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Institutes of Health, National Science Foundation FIBR Award EF-0425719, the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Proteomics Initiative (HHSN268200248178C), the Whitaker Foundation, and Cellicon Biotechnologies, Inc.

Version history

ce:grant-sponsor was added in CEP 1.1.5. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

ce:grant-number
ce:hsp

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:hsp EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:hsp
    sp NMTOKEN "1.0">
```

Description

The element `ce:hsp` is used to create explicit horizontal space.

Usage

The element `ce:hsp` should be used as little as possible. Should the need arise to indicate explicitly the insertion of spaces, `ce:hsp` can be used. The element has one attribute, `sp`, which denotes the width of the space measured in “em”s of the current font. The default value if `sp` is omitted is 1.0.

```xml
... concludes the proof.<ce:hsp sp="1.0"/>&squ;
```

```presentation
... concludes the proof. □
```

The value of `sp` is a positive floating number. It is not possible to use `ce:hsp` for kerning or creating compound symbols.

See also

```xml
&nbsp;, &puncsp;
```
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:imprint**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.1–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:imprint ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The imprint of e.g. a book project can be captured with element `ce:imprint`.

**Usage**

The element `ce:imprint` is used in the identification portions of books DTDs and identifies the imprint under which the book project is published.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:imprint>Academic Press</ce:imprint>
<ce:imprint>Churchill Livingstone</ce:imprint>
```

**Version history**

This element was added in CEP 1.1.1.
The element `ce:include-item` is used to call documents (articles, chapters, appendices, etc.) into the central hub XML file for books or journal issues.

### Usage

The `ce:include-item` element is used to call lower-level files such as chapters into the central hub XML file for books or journal issues.

The subelements `ce:pii` and `ce:doi` are used to identify the called document. Its attribute `role` can be used to inform the application about the type of document to expect, e.g. a chapter, an index or a glossary.

The `ce:include-item` element also contains a title (`ce:title`) and possibly a subtitle (`ce:subtitle`), and it may contain a sequence of titles (`ce:alt-title`) and subtitles (`ce:alt-subtitle`) in an alternative language. The page range or page ranges of the included item can be given in `ce:pages`. In case an article has an article number and no page range, element `ce:article-number` can be used. These elements are present to aid in identifying the referred documents, but more importantly, to enable rendering a table of contents using the hub XML file.

In journal issue files the titles are not used. In case a hub file does contain titles, the title elements can be used to display a different title, e.g. an abbreviated one.

XML
The attribute **role** allows one to categorize the included items. For instance, it makes it possible to mark “add-on” items, and handle these in different ways than ordinary items. Applications should treat **ce:include-items** with roles unknown to them as ordinary items, i.e., unknown roles must be ignored. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. The following values for **role** have been defined:

- **add-on** is used in the issue hub to indicate that the item is an add-on item. The main item does not use this attribute. Included items that belong to a section of abstracts, or news items, etc., do not possess this attribute.
- **index**, glossary, and bibliography are used in an MRW hub to indicate that the item is an index, glossary or bibliography, respectively.

**Version history**

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. In CEP 1.1.1 the titles were made optional. In CEP 1.6.0 subelement **ce:article-number** was added.
ce:index

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<![ELEMENT ce:index ( ce:section-title, ce:intro?, ce:index-sec+ )>
<![ATTLIST ce:index id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
view %view; 'all'>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<![ELEMENT ce:index ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
ce:index-sec+ )>
<![ATTLIST ce:index id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

An index is a list of terms (index entries) and references to places in the text that are relevant to each term.

Usage

An index is a list of terms (index entries) and references to places in the text that are relevant to each term. The index entries are divided in sections. It is possible to nest terms.

The subelement `ce:intro`, consisting of one or more paragraphs, is an introductory section at the beginning of the index.

If there is more than one `ce:index-sec`, then each must have a `ce:section-title`, except for the first which is optional.

Different types of indexes are possible, e.g. author index, subject index, name index, and formula index. An entry in an author index is the name of an author in the work; an entry in a subject index is a concept described in the work for which the subject index is compiled; an entry in a name index is the name of a person referred to in the text of the work; an entry in a formula index is a (chemical) formula occurring in the text of the work. The type of index can be indicated by the attribute `role`. Currently the following roles are defined:

- author
- case
- category
- drug
- element
- material
- notation
- subject
- technique
Index sections are lists of index entries, `<ce:index-entry>`. Each index entry starts with text describing the index entry, the index heading (`<ce:index-heading>`). This can be followed by a “see” reference or a number of cross-references. These can be followed by “see also” references and nested index entries in an arbitrary order.

Cross-references within the index can occur and are of two types: “see” (`<ce:see>`) and “see also” (`<ce:see-also>`). A “see” reference points to a term that is preferred over the present one. A “see also” reference points to a term that is related to the present one.

Most index entries point to one or more places in the text that is relevant to that index entry. This is achieved through the `<ce:cross-ref>` or `<ce:intra-ref>` element. The latter is to be used for referencing to documents that are part of a collection, for instance a major reference work.

The following example is based on a major reference work:

```xml
<ce:index id="ix01" role="subject">
  <ce:section-title id="st38">Subject Index</ce:section-title>
  ...
  <ce:index-sec id="ids5">
    <ce:index-entry id="idx33">
      <ce:index-heading>continuing professional education (CPE)</ce:index-heading>
    </ce:index-entry>
    <ce:index-entry id="idx34">
      <ce:index-heading>in clinical psychology</ce:index-heading>
    </ce:index-entry>
    <ce:intra-ref id="iar44" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666020439#p035"/>5</ce:intra-ref>
    <ce:index-entry id="idx35">
      <ce:index-heading>initiatives</ce:index-heading>
    </ce:index-entry>
    <ce:intra-ref id="iar45" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666020439#p254"/>45</ce:intra-ref>
  </ce:index-sec>
  ...
</ce:index>
```
<ce:index-heading>credits</ce:index-heading>

<ce:index-entry id="idx41">
<ce:index-heading>mandatory requirements</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar50" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666020427#p735">195</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx42">
<ce:index-heading>and recredentialing</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar51" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666020427#p599">185</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx43">
<ce:index-heading>definitions</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar52" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666020439#p771">25</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:see-also refid="idx97">mandatory continuing professional education (MCPE)</ce:see-also>

<ce:index-entry id="idx44">
<ce:index-heading>continuity theory, and bereavement</ce:index-heading>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx45">
<ce:index-heading>conversion disorder</ce:index-heading>
<ce:see refid="idx46">conversion neurosis</ce:see>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx46">
<ce:index-heading>conversion neurosis</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar54" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666052541#p961">25</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx47">
<ce:index-heading>mandatory continuing professional education (MCPE)</ce:index-heading>
<ce:intra-ref id="iar106" xlink:href="pii:B0895560666052541#p683">255</ce:intra-ref>
</ce:index-entry>

Presentation

Subject Index

continuing professional education (CPE)
in clinical psychology 5
initiatives 45
and cognitive style 205
categories 80
criticisms 200
for practitioners 150
credits
mandatory requirements 195
and recredentialing 185
definitions 25
*see also* mandatory continuing professional education (MCPE)
continuity theory, and bereavement 250
conversion disorder
*see* conversion neurosis
conversion neurosis 25
...
mandatory continuing professional education (MCPE) 255
...

**Version history**

Subelement *ce:section-title* was made optional in CEP 1.1.6.

**See also**

*ce:index-entry, ce:index-sec, ce:see, ce:see-also*
ce:indexed-name

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:indexed-name (%string.data; )*> 

Description

If the author’s or collaboration’s name is to be alphabetized differently than expected, the element ce:indexed-name is used.

Usage

See ce:author.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, the element was called index.
ce:index-entry

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.2)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-entry ( ce:index-heading, ( ce:see | ( %cross-ref; )+ )?, ( ce:see-also | ce:index-entry )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-entry
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.3)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-entry ( ce:index-heading, ( ( %see; ) | ( %cross-ref; )+ )?, ( ce:see-also |
                             ce:index-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-entry
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.4, 1.1.5)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-entry ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:index-heading, ( %index-entry-refs; )?, ( ce:see-also
                             | ce:index-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-entry
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.4.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-entry ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:index-heading, ( %index-entry-refs; )?, ( ce:see-also
                             | ce:index-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-entry
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-entry ( ce:indexed-name?, ce:index-heading, ( %index-entry-refs; )?, ( ce:see-also
                             | ce:index-entry | ce:reader-see )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-entry
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Every index entry is captured using `ce:index-entry`.

Usage

The element `ce:index-entry` consists of an optional `ce:indexed-name` with the term under which the entry should appear in an index, a `ce:index-heading`, which is optionally followed by a “see” reference to another index entry (`ce:see`) or a number of
cross-references, optionally followed by a mixture of “see-also” references to other index entries (ce:see-also), sub-index entries and general references (ce:reader-see).

The cross-references can be either a ce:cross-ref or a ce:intra-ref. The latter is to be used for referencing to documents that are part of a set, for instance a major reference work. For some examples, see ce:see and ce:see-also.

Version history

Parameter entity %see; and element ce:reader-see were introduced in CEP 1.1.3. Parameter entity %index-entry-refs; and element ce:indexed-name were introduced in CEP 1.1.4. In CEP 1.1.6 multiple ce:see elements were made possible in parameter entity %index-entry-refs;.

See also

ce:index, ce:see, ce:see-also, ce:reader-see
ce:index-flag

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag ( ce:index-flag-term, ce:index-flag-see?, ( ce:index-flag-see-also | ce:index-flag )* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-flag
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:index-flag` is used by book indexers and supports the process to generate back-of-book indices.

Usage

The element `ce:index-flag` allows a term to be marked for inclusion in an index. Its content model is closely related to that of `ce:index-entry`, and it is possible to generate an index entry from the flagged index term.

Content for element `ce:index-flag` consists of a required element `ce:index-flag-term`, followed by optional/repeatable `ce:index-flag-see` and/or `ce:index-flag-see-also` and/or nested `ce:index-flag` elements.

The element `ce:index-flag` has one required attribute, `id`.

```xml
<ce:para id="p24">One of the enemies of the ant is the aardvark<ce:index-flag id="a1234"><ce:index-flag-term>aardvark</ce:index-flag-term><ce:index-flag-see-also>anteater</ce:index-flag-see-also></ce:index-flag> ...
</ce:para>
```

Secondary index terms are marked up as nested `ce:index-flag` elements.

```xml
</ce:caption>
```

Because the element `ce:index-flag` has an ID, it can (and should) be the target of a `ce:intra-ref` element in the Index. This gives the possibility that in a hyperlinked PDF or HTML file, the reader can click on the entry terms in the Index and reach the exact location in the text. Without `ce:index-flag` elements the targets are at paragraph level.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

XML

<ce:index-entry id="idx1260">
  <ce:index-heading>Lagerung</ce:index-heading>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:index-entry id="idx1270">
  <ce:index-heading>bei Herzinsuffizienz</ce:index-heading>
</ce:index-entry>

<ce:intra-ref xlink:href="pii:B978-3-437-46192-7.10014-2#idx0041">19</ce:intra-ref>

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0.

Rendering notes

This element should not be rendered in either electronic or hardcopy versions of the book.

Web platforms may use the ce:index-flag element to generate additional, hyperlinked, indexes, for example, per chapter, or for a selected set of chapters or volumes.
ce:index-flag-see

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-see ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-see ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:index-flag-see is used to delimit a term to be indexed, within the content model of the ce:index-flag element.

Usage

Within ce:index-flag, the element ce:index-flag-see is used to create a “see” entry. This corresponds to a ce:see within an index entry.

XML
<ce:para id="560">text text ...
<ce:index-flag id="a1234">
  <ce:index-flag-term>acquired immune
deficiency syndrome</ce:index-flag-term>
  <ce:index-flag-see>AIDS</ce:index-flag-see>
</ce:index-flag> ... end of paragraph.
</ce:para>

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

ce:index-flag
ce:index-flag-see-also

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-see-also( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-see-also( %text.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:index-flag-see-also is used to delimit a term to be indexed, within the content model of the index-flag element.

Usage

In order to flag a term for a “see also” index entry, the element ce:index-flag-see-also is used. It corresponds to a ce:see-also within an index entry.

See ce:index-flag for a usage example.

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
ce:index-flag-term

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-term ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-flag-term ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:index-flag-term is used to delimit a term to be indexed, within the content model of the ce:index-flag element.

Usage

The ce:index-flag-term contains the term to be indexed within a ce:index-flag element. It corresponds with the ce:index-heading within a ce:index-entry.

Content for index-flag-term consists of the text.data parameter entity from the Common Element Pool (CEP). See ce:index-flag for a usage example.

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
ce:index-heading

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-heading ( %textref.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:index-heading ( %textref.data; )*>

Description

The heading of an index entry is captured using ce:index-heading.

Usage

Each index entry starts with a descriptive text, the heading.
For some examples, see ce:see and ce:see-also.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %textref.data;.

See also

ce:index, ce:index-entry, ce:see, ce:see-also
ce:index-sec

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
                    ce:index-entry+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:index-sec ( ce:section-title?, ce:intro?,
                    ce:index-entry+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:index-sec
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

The element `ce:index-sec` is a section within the index.

Usage

See `ce:index`.

Version history

The `view` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:inf

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inf ( %richstring.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inf loc %loc; "post">
```

Description

Subscripts are captured using ce:inf.

Usage

Subscripts (inferior text) are captured using ce:inf.

The optional attribute loc can have the values pre and post, the latter is equivalent to omitting the attribute altogether. If loc is equal to pre this is to signify that the element belongs to the subsequent object.

XML

```xml
<ce:sup loc="pre">238</ce:sup><ce:inf loc="pre">92</ce:inf>U
```

Presentation

\(238^{\text{VI}}\)

By default, a super- and subscript appearing at one object will be displayed stacked, i.e. above each other. Staggered super- and subscripts (for example, \(R_i^k\)) can only be used in math mode.

See also

ce:sup
**ce:initials**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:initials ( %string.data; )*>
```

**Description**

In order to assist applications that need to determine the correct initials based on the given name, the element `ce:initials` has been provided. It is only used if the initials cannot be inferred from the given name by taking the first letters, preserving dashes.

The element is used by applications that want initials in running heads or in tables of content rather than the full given name.

Note that `ce:initials` does not replace `ce:given-name` if the author only supplied initials.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:author id="au16"
    author-id="S9999999416900783-10e76d4f2692a57af941f01a2922dbef">
    <ce:initials>J.W.Th.</ce:initials>
    <ce:given-name>Joannes Wilhelmus Theodorus</ce:given-name>
    ...
</ce:author>
```

**Usage**

See `ce:author`.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, the element was called `inits`. 
### ce:inline-figure

#### Declaration

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.2.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inline-figure (ce:link )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inline-figure baseline NMTOKEN "0.0">
```

**Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inline-figure (ce:link, ce:alt-text* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inline-figure baseline NMTOKEN "0.0">
```

#### Description

The element *ce:inline-figure* is used to insert an image in the running text, e.g. a symbol that does not occur in the standard character set.

#### Usage

An in-line figure, also less accurately known as fixed graphic, is a figure that occurs exactly at the point where it occurs in the document instance. It consists of a *ce:link* element, which refers to the external artwork file, optionally followed by *ce:alt-text* elements. At least one *ce:alt-text* is expected to be present; it must have a *role* attribute with value *short* and is used to capture a short (30 words or less) and accurate description of the in-line figure. Additionally a *ce:alt-text* with a long description can be added.

The bounding box of an in-line figure is as tight as possible. The vertical position of the in-line figure is controlled by the attribute *baseline*, whose default value is 0.0. It denotes the fraction of the height that appears below the baseline.

**XML**

```xml
A<ce:inline-figure baseline="0.33">
    <ce:link locator="fx1" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role=
        "http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
        xlink:href="pii:S2212095515009153/fx1"/>
    <ce:alt-text id="at004" role="short">Box representing an inline figure.</ce:alt-text>
</ce:inline-figure>Ω
```

**Presentation**

![Box representing an inline figure.](pii:S2212095515009153/fx1)

**Explanation**

Since the value of *baseline* is 0.33, the baseline is at one-third of the in-line figure, represented by the box, i.e., one-third of the graphic is below the baseline.

An in-line-figure appears in the running text like a character would do. No spaces or new-lines are generated before or after an in-line figure. This makes it different from a displayed figure which appears on a line of its own with vertical space above and below it, see *ce:figure*. The graphic file is shown as is, i.e. it will not adapt to the surrounding font size or style, as would a *ce:glyph*.

In-line figures should not occur too deeply in the parse tree of the document.
Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called inline-fig. In CEP 1.4.0 the subelement ce:alt-text was introduced.

See also

ce:alt-text, ce:figure, ce:glyph
ce:inter-ref

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED
  versionurl CDATA #IMPLIED
  versiondate CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The `ce:inter-ref` element is used to reference an object “not under control of the publisher”. Examples are HTML pages on the World-Wide Web, records in third-party on-line databases. The `ce:inter-ref` element is a simple link according to the XLink standard.

Usage

The `ce:inter-ref` is a versatile element used to refer to foreign objects. Its content is popularly seen as “text to click on”, but it may be empty.

The attribute `xlink:href` determines the actual link. Its value is a URI-reference (URI: Universal Resource Identifier) according to RFC2396. The URI-reference consists of three parts:

- the protocol or scheme, which is the part up to the colon; the allowed schemes are documented below;
- the resource identifier, which is the part from the colon to the end or up to the hash sign; in the text below we will refer to it as the locator;
- the fragment identifier, which is the part after the hash sign; it may be an ID in the target document, or a more complicated XPath expression; the fragment identifier is optional.

For rules regarding the encoding of URI-references, see the sections on rendering and copy edit considerations below.

The attribute `xlink:role` is used to indicate what kind of object is to be expected at the other end of the link. Its value is a URI of the form

http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/<role name>

Currently any MIME type can be used as well as the following six role names:
A number of schemes to be used in \texttt{xlink:href} are allowed, see Table 6 (p. 366). (See [28] for the latest list of allowed schemes.) For each value of the scheme different rules may apply. These are described below.

The scheme in \texttt{xlink:href} is equal to \texttt{afnd}

The locator is an Allele Frequency Net Database ID which identifies a record in AFND. AFND provides a central source, freely available to all, for the storage of allele frequencies from different polymorphic areas in the Human Genome. No roles are to be specified.

\texttt{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:inter-ref id="interref241"
    xlink:href="afnd:AFND001243">AFND001243</ce:inter-ref>
\end{verbatim}

The HTTP URL for an AFND record is constructed by prepending the ID with \texttt{http://www.allelefrequencies.net/population/}. The resulting link of the above example is:

\texttt{Presentation}

AFND001243

The scheme in \texttt{xlink:href} is equal to \texttt{aoi}

The locator is an astronomical object identifier (aoi). It consists of the doi of the article, followed by the text \\texttt{&}, followed by the agreed object name. No roles are to be specified. Note that, if there is a space in the aoi, it is encoded as \\texttt{%20}.

\texttt{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:inter-ref id="interref1"
    xlink:href="aoi:10.1016/j.newast.2003.11.001&CF%20Pup">CF Pup</ce:inter-ref>
\end{verbatim}

The scheme in \texttt{xlink:href} is equal to \texttt{arxiv}

The locator is a number of a preprint in the \texttt{arXiv.org} e-Print archive. The attribute \texttt{xlink:role} is mandatory here; currently the only allowed value is \texttt{preprint}.

\texttt{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:inter-ref id="interref8"
    xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/preprint"
\end{verbatim}

The HTTP URL for an arXiv number is constructed by prepending the number with \texttt{http://arXiv.org/abs/}. The resulting link of the above example is:

\texttt{Presentation}

1606.04017

Note that older preprint numbers have a different format. For example, \texttt{xlink:href= "hep-th/9112009"}. 

352 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ascl

The locator is an ASCL number. The Astrophysics Source Code Library is a free on-line registry for source codes of interest to astronomers and astrophysicists. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="ascl:1201.001">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an ASCL number is constructed by prepending the ASCL number with http://ascl.net/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
1201.001

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to astm

The locator is an ASTM number, assigned by the American Society for Testing and Materials. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="astm:G63">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an ASTM number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.astm.org/Standards/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
G63

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ccdc

The locator is a CCDC number, assigned by the Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="ccdc:AI631510">...</ce:inter-ref>

The Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre has not yet created an HTTP URL construct for the CCDC numbers.

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to cran

The locator is a CRAN ID, assigned by the Comprehensive R Archive Network for binary distributions of the base system and contributed packages (http://cran.r-project.org/). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="cran:optimx">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for a CRAN ID is constructed by prepending the package id with: http://CRAN.R-project.org/package=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
optimx
The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `ctgov`

The locator is an NCT number, the National Library of Medicine’s unique identifier for a record at ClinicalTrials.gov. No roles are to be specified.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref10" xlink:href="ctgov:NCT00222573">NCT00222573</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for an NCT number is constructed by prepending the number with `http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/`. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

NCT00222573

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `doi`

The locator is a digital object identifier (DOI, see www.doi.org). No roles are to be specified. The path may contain an ID within the target document, in the form of a fragment identifier.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref2" xlink:href="doi:10.1016/S0004-3702(02)00193-5">...</ce:inter-ref>
```

**Standards Note:** The `doi` scheme is officially recognized as part of the `info` URI scheme. In this scheme the above `xlink:href` would become

`xlink:href="info:doi:10.1016/S0004-3702(02)00193-5"

The form according to the `info` URI scheme is not (yet) allowed in the Common Element Pool.

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `eslide`

The locator is an ID of a high-resolution slide hosted on a server. The attribute `xlink:role` is mandatory here, with value `external-e-component`.

```xml
```

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `fiz`

The locator addresses a document in the FIZ database (www.fiz-karlsruhe.de). The attribute `xlink:role` is mandatory here; currently the only allowed value is `inspec` (denoting an `inspec` record). Note that the colon in the FIZ code is encoded as `%3A`.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref3" xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/inspec" xlink:href="fiz:85%3A2535122">...</ce:inter-ref>
```

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `flybase`

The locator is a FlyBase number. FlyBase is an online Bioinformatics database and the primary repository of genetic and molecular data for the insect family Drosophilidae (www.flybase.org). No roles are to be specified.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="flybase:123456">...</ce:inter-ref>
```
The HTTP URL for a FlyBase URI is constructed by prepending the FlyBase number with http://flybase.org/reports/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

FBgn0036925

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to fungidb

The locator is a FungiDB ID. FungiDB is an integrated genomic and functional genomic database for the kingdom Fungi (fungidb.org/fungidb/). No roles are to be specified.

XML

<xlink:href="fungidb:BDEG03263">...

The HTTP URL for a FungiDB ID is constructed by prepending the FungiDB ID with http://fungidb.org/gene/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

BDEG03263

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ftp, ftsp, http, https or mailto

The locator is a URL. Optionally a role can be specified: it must then be a MIME type or the value “qr-code”. The path may contain a named location within the target document (this is the part which comes after the # in the HREF attribute of HTML's A element), in the form of a fragment identifier. ftp, ftsp, http, https and mailto are officially recognized URI schemes.

XML


XML

<xlink:href="mailto:r.schrauwen@elsevier.com">r.schrauwen@elsevier.com</xlink:href>

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to geoscenic

The locator is a GeoScenic number. GeoScenic is a national archive of the vast collections of geological photographs of the British Geological Survey. No roles are to be specified.

XML

<xlink:href="geoscenic:P572412">...

The HTTP URL for a GeoScenic URI is constructed by prepending the GeoScenic number with http://geoscenic.bgs.ac.uk/asset-bank/action/search?exactMatch=true&attribute_1000=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

P572412
The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `igan`

The locator is an IGSN number, an International Geo Sample Number, assigned by the System for Earth Sample Registration (http://www.geosamples.org/). No roles are to be specified.

XML

```
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="igan:HRV0035F0">...</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for an IGSN number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.geosamples.org/profile?igan=. The resulting link of the above example is:

*Presentation*

HRV0035F0

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `mgi`

The locator is an MGI number, is the international database resource for the laboratory mouse, providing integrated genetic, genomic, and biological data to facilitate the study of human health and disease (www.informatics.jax.org). No roles are to be specified.

XML

```
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="mgi:2448567">...</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for an MGI URI is constructed by prepending the MGI number with http://www.informatics.jax.org/accession/. The resulting link of the above example is:

*Presentation*

2448567

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `mi`

The locator is an MI number which identifies a record in the EMBL-EBI IntAct database for Molecular Interactions. No roles are to be specified. Example:

XML

```
MI:<ce:inter-ref id="interref14"
xlink:href="mi:0218">
0218</ce:inter-ref>
```

Note that only the number is linked.

The HTTP URL is constructed from the MI URI by prepending the MI number with http://www.ebi.ac.uk/ontology-lookup/?termId=MI:. The resulting link of the above example is:

*Presentation*

MI:0218

Note: This protocol is used in the FEBS structured summaries. There the content of the `ce:inter-ref` element is the name of the interaction.

The scheme in `xlink:href` is equal to `mint`

The locator is a MINT number which identifies a record in the Molecular INTeraction database. No roles are to be specified. Example:
Note that only the number is linked.

The HTTP URL is constructed from the MINT URI by prepending the MINT number with http://mint.bio.uniroma2.it/mint/search/interaction.do?interactionAc=
MINT-. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
MINT-6166710

Note: This protocol is used in the FEBS structured summaries. There the string 'MINT-' is included in the content of the ce:inter-ref element.

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-geo

The locator is an NCBI GEO accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-geo:GSE6364">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI GEO accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/query/acc.cgi?acc=.
The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
GSE6364

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-mga

The locator is an NCBI MGA accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-mga:AMAAA0000001">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI MGA accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/nuccore/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
AMAAA0000001

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-mmdb

The locator is an NCBI MMDB accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-mmdb:51190">...</ce:inter-ref>
The HTTP URL for an NCBI MMDB accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?cmd=search&db=structure&doptcmdl=genbank&term=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

51190

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-n

The locator is an NCBI nucleotide accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML

<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-n:AB026824">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI nucleotide accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?cmd=search&db=nucleotide&doptcmdl=genbank&term=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

AB026824

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-p

The locator is an NCBI protein accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML

<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-p:Q9JJS7">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI protein accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?cmd=search&db=protein&doptcmdl=genbank&term=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

Q9JJS7

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-tnm

The locator is an NCBI Taxonomy accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML

<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="ncbi-tnm:7254">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI Taxonomy accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Taxonomy/Browser/wwwtax.cgi?id=. The resulting link of the above example is:
The scheme in xlink:href is equal to ncbi-wgs

The locator is an NCBI WGS accession number, assigned by the NIH genetic sequence database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, an annotated collection of all publicly available DNA sequences). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="ncbi-wgs:AAAA01000001">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NCBI WGS accession number is constructed by prepending the accession number with: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?cmd=search&db=nucleotide&doptcmdl=genbank&term=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
AAAA01000001

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to nif-antibody

The locator is an NIF Antibody registry number. The Antibody Register is a set of unique identifiers for antibody reagents and keeps track of data generated using a specific antibody (www.antibodyregistry.org). No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="nif-antibody:AB_54620">...</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for an NIF Antibody registry URL is constructed by prepending the NIF number with http://antibodyregistry.org/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
AB_54620

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to omim

The locator is an OMIM number which identifies a record in Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man, a database containing a catalog of human genes and genetic disorders. No roles are to be specified.

XML
MIM <ce:inter-ref id="interref11" xlink:href="omim:601240">601240</ce:inter-ref>

Note that only the number is linked.

The HTTP URL for an OMIM number is constructed by prepending the OMIM number with http://omim.org/entry/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
601240
The scheme in xlink:href is equal to pdb

The locator is a Worldwide Protein Data Bank accession number which identifies a record in the Worldwide Protein Data Bank. Example:

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref15" xlink:href="pdb:2pmz">2pmz</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for viewing the molecule in the FirstGlance tool is constructed from the PDB URI by prepending the PDB accession number with http://firstglance.jmol.org/fg.htm?mol=. The resulting link of the above example is:

```
Presentation
2pmz
```

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to pmid

The locator is a Pubmed ID which identifies an abstract at Pubmed. No roles are to be specified. Example:

```xml
PMID: <ce:inter-ref id="interref16" xlink:href="pmid:19011746">19011746</ce:inter-ref>
```

Note that only the number is linked.

The HTTP URL for PMIDs is constructed from the PMID URI by prepending the PMID with http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/. The resulting link of the above example is:

```
Presentation
PMID: 19011746
```

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to pride

The locator is a ProteomeXchange ID which identifies a dataset in ProteomeCentral. Data deposits into the ProteomeXchange (of which PRIDE is a large contributor) is mandatory for the proteomics community. No roles are to be specified.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref65" xlink:href="pride:PXD000770">PXD000770</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for a ProteomeXchange ID is constructed by prepending the ID with http://proteomecentral.proteomexchange.org/cgi/GetDataset?ID=. The resulting link of the above example is:

```
Presentation
PXD000770
```

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to rgd

The locator is an RGD number. The Rat Genome Database (www.rgd.mcw.edu) is a collection of genetic and genomic information about the rat. No roles are to be specified.

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="rgd:1351014">...</ce:inter-ref>
```
The HTTP URL for an RGD number is constructed by prepending the RGD number with http://rgd.mcw.edu/rgdweb/report/gene/main.html?id=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
1351014

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to share

The locator is a SHARE file name. SHARE is a web portal for creating and sharing executable research papers. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="share:XP-TUe_TTC11_GrGen_v2.vdi">...
</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for a SHARE file is constructed by prepending the file name with http://share20.eu/?page=ConfigureNewSession&vdi=. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation
XP-TUe_TTC11_GrGen_v2.vdi

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to sid

The locator holds the non-formatted PII of the article itself, a slash and the so-called anchor text corresponding to the enclosed structure reference. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref9" xlink:href="sid:S0040403901014216/2"><ce:bold>2</ce:bold>
</ce:inter-ref>

This scheme is used for Dymond linking (i.e. external object linking for chemical structures).

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to tair

The locator is an Arabidopsis number assigned by TAIR. The Arabidopsis Information Resource (TAIR) maintains a database of genetic and molecular biology data for the model higher plant Arabidopsis thaliana. No roles are to be specified.

XML
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="tair:AT1G01020">AT1G01020</ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for a TAIR number is constructed by prepending the number with http://www.arabidopsis.org/servlets/TairObject?type=locus&name=. The example results in the following link:

Presentation
AT1G01020

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to uniprotkb

The locator is a Uniprot number which identifies a record in UniProtKB, the Universal Protein Resource Knowledgebase. No roles are to be specified. Example:

XML
Note that only the number is linked.

The HTTP URL is constructed from the UniProtKB URI by prepending the UniProtKB number with http://www.uniprot.org/uniprot/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

uniprotkb:Q9H0H5

Note: This protocol is used in the FEBS structured summaries. There the content of the ce:inter-ref element is the name of the protein.

**The scheme in xlink:href is equal to wb-gene**

The locator is a WormBase gene number. WormBase is an international consortium providing the research community with information concerning the genetics, genomics and biology of *C. elegans* and related nematodes. No roles are to be specified. Example:

**XML**

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="wb-gene:WBGene00010049">...
</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for a WB Gene URI is constructed by prepending the WB Gene number with http://www.wormbase.org/species/c_elegans/gene/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

WBGene00010049

**The scheme in xlink:href is equal to wb-protein**

The locator is a WormBase protein number. WormBase is an international consortium providing the research community with information concerning the genetics, genomics and biology of *C. elegans* and related nematodes. No roles are to be specified. Example:

**XML**

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="wb-protein:WP:CE02807">...
</ce:inter-ref>
```

The HTTP URL for a WB Protein URI is constructed by prepending the WB Protein number with http://www.wormbase.org/species/c_elegans/protein/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

WP:CE02807

**The scheme in xlink:href is equal to wb-strain**

The locator is a WormBase strain number. WormBase is an international consortium providing the research community with information concerning the genetics, genomics and biology of *C. elegans* and related nematodes. No roles are to be specified. Example:

**XML**

```xml
<ce:inter-ref id="interref4"
xlink:href="wb-strain:RB877">...
</ce:inter-ref>
```
The HTTP URL for a WB Strain URI is constructed by prepending the WB Strain number with http://www.wormbase.org/species/c_elegans/strain/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

RB877

The scheme in xlink:href is equal to zfin

The locator is a ZFIN number. The Zebrafish Model Organism Database (ZFIN) is an on-line database of information for zebrafish researchers. No roles are to be specified. Example:

XML

<ce:inter-ref id="interref4" xlink:href="zfin:ZDB-GENO-960809-7">... </ce:inter-ref>

The HTTP URL for a ZFIN URI is constructed by prepending the ZFIN number with http://zfin.org/. The resulting link of the above example is:

Presentation

ZDB-GENO-960809-7

Web resources

Links to Web resources are subject to so-called reference rot. A link to a resource may stop working after some time ("link rot"), or the linked content may change over time ("content drift") possibly to the extent that it becomes no longer representative of the initially referenced content.

A solution to this problem is to create a snapshot of the linked content and then preserve its URL and the date of access. These can be captured in attributes versionurl and versiondate, respectively. The former attribute can contain multiple URLs.

Relation with DTD 4

Prior to DTD 5, inter-ref had three attributes: locator-type, locator and object-type.

locator-type corresponds to the scheme part of xlink:href. The schemes have the same names as the former locator-type attribute, except for xxx-archive, which now is called arxiv, in agreement with the change of name of the preprint service it refers to.

locator corresponds to the path part of xlink:href.

object-type corresponds to xlink:role. The roles have the same names as the former object-type attribute, prepended by the string http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/.

XLink aspects

ce:inter-ref has an attribute xlink:type with the fixed value simple. This makes it into a simple link according to the XLink standard. The xlink:href and xlink:role attributes comply with the XLink requirements for a simple link. Thus ce:inter-ref can be processed by general XLink software.
Rendering notes

If the rendering application cannot deal with `ce:inter-ref`, or the scheme in attribute `xlink:href`, it should not complain and merely output the content of the element. If the content is empty, then the rendering application may provide another method to reach the destination, e.g. a button or a hyperlink containing the `xlink:href` attribute. The element `ce:inter-ref` does not generate any presentation.

Decoding the URI

The value of the attribute `xlink:href` is a URI-reference. Therefore it is encoded according to the rules for URIs. It is also XML encoded. The URI-encoded `xlink:href` values can be used in web products as follows.

First the XML encoding (character entities) must be resolved, which is automatically done by parsers and other XML tools.

In the `ftp`, `ftps`, `http`, `https` or `mailto` schemes the `xlink:href` values are URLs or email addresses. They can be used directly as URLs in web products.

In the other schemes the `xlink:href` values are not URLs. When URLs are constructed from these values, they must be properly encoded. The identifiers in the `xlink:href` values may contain special characters, esp. `&` and `?`. These characters have a reserved meaning in a URL. Therefore they must be escaped as `%26` and `%3F`.

For example, the following is (theoretically) a valid `xlink:href` value:

doi:10.1049/S0004&3702(02)00193?5

But the following URL, derived from it, is not valid:

https://doi.org/10.1049/S0004&3702(02)00193?5

The valid form of the derived URL is

https://doi.org/10.1049/S0004%263702(02)00193%3F5

Linking services

The `xlink:href` attribute uses a number of privately defined schemes, which can only be resolved by special algorithms containing knowledge of the specific scheme. Often such an algorithm resolves the `ce:inter-ref` element to a hyperlink on the web with an http URL. Collections of such resolved hyperlinks may be held in linking services. The links in such services are so-called third-party links, one end of which is the `ce:inter-ref` element in the article, the other end being the resolved URL. To make it easier to use a `ce:inter-ref` element as a link end for such third-party links, it has a required ID attribute.

Copy edit considerations

The value of the attribute `xlink:href` is a URI-reference. Therefore it must be encoded according to the rules for URIs. After its URI-encoded form has been determined, it must also be XML encoded, i.e., the XML-reserved characters must be encoded as character entities, esp. `&`, must be encoded as `&amp;`.

In the `ftp`, `ftps`, `http`, `https` or `mailto` schemes the `xlink:href` values are URLs or email addresses. It may be assumed that the URL as given by the author in the manuscript is correct, and can be inserted as is in the XML file, after XML encoding (esp. `&`).

It is useful to check whether the general form of the URL is correct. `ftp`, `ftps`, `http` and `https` URLs have the following general form:
http://server.domain.cy/path/to/file?arg1=value1&arg2=value2#name
where the CGI arguments (the part between the ? and the #) and the fragment identifier (the part after the #) are optional. A mailto email address has the following general form:
mailto:i.person@domain.cy
For the other URI schemes usually only the identifier is given in the manuscript, and the proper URI form must be determined. The following rules are applicable.

- The URI-encoded form of the identifier may only consist of alphanumeric characters and characters from the set 
  "-" | "." | "," | ":" | ":" | "*" | ":" | ":" | "(" | "")"
- In addition, in URIs of the doi, arxiv, and sid schemes, the character "/" may appear, as follows:
doi. doi:10.publid/identifier
arxiv. arxiv:/category/number
sid. sid:pii/fid
- All other characters must be escaped. The escaped form is of the form \%hex, where hex denotes the hexadecimal ASCII value of the character, e.g. \%3A for the colon and \%20 for the space.

For example, the FIZ identifier 85:2535122 and the astronomical object ‘LC 123’ must be marked up with the following xlink:href values:
xlink:href="fiz:85%3A2535122"
xlink:href="aoi:LC%20123"

**Version history**

As of CEP 1.1.5, the inter-ref scheme pii is deprecated.

The genbank scheme is deprecated as it is replaced by the various ncbi schemes. Scheme embl is a synonym for genbank and is hence also deprecated.

Attributes `versionurl` and `versiondate` were added in CEP 1.5.0. Also, entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

**See also**

`ce:cross-ref, ce:cross-refs, ce:inter-ref, ce:inter-refs, ce:intra-ref, ce:intra-refs, ce:grant-sponsor`
Table 6: Allowed inter-ref schemes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scheme</th>
<th>Explanation/source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afnd</td>
<td>Allele Frequency Net Database ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aoi</td>
<td>Astronomical object identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arxiv</td>
<td>arXiv.org e-print archive address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascl</td>
<td>Astrophysics Source Code Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astm</td>
<td>ASTM number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioproject</td>
<td>Biological Project Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccdc</td>
<td>CCDC number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cran</td>
<td>CRAN ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cryptodb</td>
<td>CryptoDB ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctgov</td>
<td>ClinicalTrials.gov record number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doi</td>
<td>Digital object identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embl</td>
<td>EMBL accession number (deprecated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eslide</td>
<td>eSlide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiz</td>
<td>FIZ database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flybase</td>
<td>Bioinformatics database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ftp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ftps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungidb</td>
<td>FungiDB ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genbank</td>
<td>Genbank accession number (deprecated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geoscenic</td>
<td>Geoscenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gsa</td>
<td>Genome Sequence Archive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>http</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>https</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igsn</td>
<td>International Geo Sample Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mgi</td>
<td>Mouse Genome Informatics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>MI number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mint</td>
<td>MINT number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm</td>
<td>Multimedia ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-geo</td>
<td>NCBI GEO accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-mga</td>
<td>NCBI MGA accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-mmdb</td>
<td>NCBI MMDB accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-n</td>
<td>NCBI Nucleotide accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-p</td>
<td>NCBI Protein accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-tmm</td>
<td>NCBI Taxonomy accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncbi-wgs</td>
<td>NCBI WGS accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nif-antibody</td>
<td>NIF Antibody Registry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omim</td>
<td>OMIM number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pdb</td>
<td>Protein Data Bank accession number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plasmodb</td>
<td>PlasmoDB ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pmid</td>
<td>Pubmed ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pombase</td>
<td>PomBase ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pride</td>
<td>ProteomeXchange dataset ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rgd</td>
<td>Rat Genome Database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrrid</td>
<td>SciCrunch Research Resource Identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>Executable research papers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sid</td>
<td>Structure ID in item, Dymond linking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tair</td>
<td>Arabidopsis number (TAIR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toxodb</td>
<td>ToxoDB ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tritrypdb</td>
<td>TritrypDB ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniprotkb</td>
<td>Uniprot number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wb-gene</td>
<td>WormBase for gene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wb-protein</td>
<td>WormBase for protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wb-strain</td>
<td>WormBase for strain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zfin</td>
<td>Zebrafish model organism database</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ce:inter-ref-end

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-end ( ce:inter-ref-title? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref-end
xlink:type ( locator ) #FIXED "locator"
xlink:label ( inter-ref-end ) #FIXED "inter-ref-end"
xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-end ( ce:inter-ref-title? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref-end
xlink:type ( locator ) #FIXED "locator"
xlink:label ( inter-ref-end ) #FIXED "inter-ref-end"
xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED
versionurl CDATA #IMPLIED
versiondate CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Each `ce:inter-ref-end` element denotes a link target within an `ce:inter-refs` element.

Usage

See `ce:inter-ref` and `ce:inter-refs`.

Version history

Attributes `versionurl` and `versiondate` were added in CEP 1.5.0.
ce:inter-ref-title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-title ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref-title xlink:type ( title ) #FIXED "title">

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-title ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref-title xlink:type ( title ) #FIXED "title">

Description

The ce:inter-ref-title element contains the text for one destination, to show for the parent ce:inter-ref-end element when multiple links are shown in a selection list.

Usage

See ce:inter-refs.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:inter.refs**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-refs ( ce:inter-refs-text?, ce:inter-ref-end+, ce:inter-refs-link )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-refs
xlink:type ( extended ) #FIXED "extended">
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-ref-refs ( ce:inter-refs-text?, ce:inter-ref-end+, ce:inter-refs-link )>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-ref-refs
id ID #IMPLIED
xlink:type ( extended ) #FIXED "extended">
```

**Description**

The `ce:inter-refs` element is the one-to-many-links version of `ce:inter-ref`, *q.v.* It is an extended link according to the XLink standard.

**Usage**

The `ce:inter-refs` element contains a `ce:inter-refs-text` element, one or more `ce:inter-ref-end` elements and a `ce:inter-refs-link` element.

The `ce:inter-refs-text` element contains the text that is popularly seen as “text to click on”; it may be absent. It is the text seen in a rendering of the document, e.g., “Parts I–IV”. Both the hyperlinks to the individual destinations and descriptive labels (e.g., “Part III”) are included in the other subelements of the parent `ce:inter-refs`.

Each `ce:inter-ref-end` element denotes a link target. Its attribute `xlink:href` determines the actual link. Its attribute `xlink:role` is used to indicate what kind of object is to be expected at the other end of the link. Both attributes follow the same rules as the attributes of the same name of `ce:inter-ref`, *q.v.* The subelement `ce:inter-ref-end` contains an optional `ce:inter-ref-title` element, whose content is the text to show for this link when multiple links are shown in a selection list.

The `ce:inter-refs-link` element is empty. Its presence is required by the XLink standard.

```xml
<ce:inter-refs id="irs1">
  <ce:inter-refs-text id="interref3">
    AI631510&ndash;AI631512</ce:inter-refs-text>
  <ce:inter-ref-end xlink:href="genbank:AI631510">
    <ce:inter-ref-title>AI631510</ce:inter-ref-title>
  </ce:inter-ref-end>
  <ce:inter-ref-end xlink:href="genbank:AI631511">
    <ce:inter-ref-title>AI631511</ce:inter-ref-title>
  </ce:inter-ref-end>
</ce:inter-refs>
```
ce:inter-refs

Presentation

AI631510–AI631512 (in the PDF file)
AI631510, AI631511 and AI631512 (in a fictive online environment)

XLink aspects

ce:inter-refs has an attribute xlink:type with the fixed value extended. This makes it into an extended link according to the XLink standard. Its child elements also have several fixed xlink attributes, which determine their XLink meaning, in compliance with the XLink standard. Thus ce:inter-refs can be processed by general XLink software.

The same example, with all fixed attributes shown explicitly:

XML

```
<ce:inter-refs id="irs5" xlink:type="extended">
  <ce:inter-refs-text id="interref3" xlink:type="resource"
    xlink:label="inter-refs-start">
    AI631510–AI631512
  </ce:inter-refs-text>
  <ce:inter-ref-end xlink:type="locator"
    xlink:label="inter-ref-end" xlink:href="genbank:AI631510">
    <ce:inter-ref-title xlink:type="title">AI631510</ce:inter-ref-title>
  </ce:inter-ref-end>
  <ce:inter-ref-end xlink:type="locator"
    xlink:label="inter-ref-end" xlink:href="genbank:AI631511">
    <ce:inter-ref-title xlink:type="title">AI631511</ce:inter-ref-title>
  </ce:inter-ref-end>
  <ce:inter-ref-end xlink:type="locator"
    xlink:label="inter-ref-end" xlink:href="genbank:AI631512">
    <ce:inter-ref-title xlink:type="title">AI631512</ce:inter-ref-title>
  </ce:inter-ref-end>
  <ce:inter-refs-link xlink:type="arc"
    xlink:from="inter-refs-start" xlink:to="inter-ref-end"/>
</ce:inter-refs>
```

Its interpretation in terms of the XLink standard is as follows. A link is indicated from the current position (the local resource) to some other positions not in this document (the remote resources).

The ce:inter-refs-text element is the local resource, which is indicated by its attribute xlink:type="resource".

The ce:inter-ref-end elements are the remote resources, which is indicated by their xlink:type="locator" attribute.

The actual links are created by the ce:inter-refs-link element, which is indicated by its xlink:type="arc" attribute. It links from xlink:from="inter-refs-start" to xlink:to="inter-ref-end". The former points to the ce:inter-refs-text element, which has the xlink:label="inter-refs-start" attribute. The latter points to
both `ce:inter-ref-end` elements, which both have the `xlink:label="inter-ref-end"` attribute.

Each of the `ce:inter-ref-end` elements has an optional `ce:inter-ref-title` element, with an `xlink:type="title"` attribute. They serve as a human readable title of the `ce:inter-ref-end` element, making it easier for applications to create the selection list for one-to-many links.

**Linking services**

The same considerations regarding linking services apply as for `ce:inter-ref`, *q.v.* The `ce:inter-ref-title` has a required ID attribute, since it is the local resource, which can be the link end of third-party links.

**Version history**

The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

**Rendering notes**

The text contained in `ce:inter-refs-text` appears in any rendering. The destinations contained in `ce:inter-ref-title` can be used to obtain a selection list.

**See also**

`ce:cross-ref, ce:cross-refs, ce:inter-ref`
ce:inter-refs-link

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

`<!ELEMENT ce:inter-refs-link EMPTY>`

`<!ATTLIST ce:inter-refs-link`

  `xlink:type` (arc) #FIXED "arc"
  `xlink:from` (inter-refs-start) #FIXED "inter-refs-start"
  `xlink:to` (inter-ref-end) #FIXED "inter-ref-end"`

Description

The `ce:inter-refs-link` element is empty. Its presence in `ce:inter-ref` is required by the XLink standard.

Usage

See `ce:inter-ref`.
ce:inter-refs-text

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-refs-text ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-refs-text
    id ID #IMPLIED
    xlink:type ( resource ) #FIXED "resource"
    xlink:label ( inter-refs-start ) #FIXED "inter-refs-start">

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:inter-refs-text ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:inter-refs-text
    id ID #IMPLIED
    xlink:type ( resource ) #FIXED "resource"
    xlink:label ( inter-refs-start ) #FIXED "inter-refs-start">

Description

The ce:inter-refs-text element contains the text that is popularly seen as “text to click on” within a ce:inter-refs element. Clicking on this text may lead to more than one destination.

Usage

See ce:inter-refs.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #FIXED "simple"
  xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The `ce:intra-ref` element is used to reference an object “under control of the publisher”. Examples are cross-references to destinations within other chapters of the same book. The `ce:intra-ref` element is a simple link according to the XLink standard.

Usage

The `ce:intra-ref` element is a versatile element used to refer to foreign objects under control of the publisher. Its content is popularly seen as “text to click on”, but it may be empty. The target, given in the attribute `xlink:href` must be outside the document that contains `ce:intra-ref`.

An example is a cross-reference to a section in another chapter of a book. The element `ce:cross-ref` cannot be used, since the destination ID must be in the same file.

While `ce:inter-ref` takes the user out of the application, `ce:intra-ref` remains within the realm of the application; in practice, the destination will be within the same book or serial issue. In such cases, the XML validation tools, run on the whole collection of files belonging to the book, check that the destination IDs exist. However, the application must not assume that the target is in existence in the application. The application activates the link when the target document is present.

The attribute `xlink:href` determines the actual link. The attribute `xlink:role` is used to indicate what kind of object is to be expected at the other end of the link. Both attributes follow the same general rules as the attributes of the same name of `ce:inter-ref`, q.v. In the element `ce:intra-ref` there are only two valid values for the scheme in `xlink:href`: pii and doi. These schemes do not allow a value for the `xlink:role` attribute.

```xml
<ce:intra-ref id="intraref1" xlink:href="pii:S0140-6736(05)70368-8">...</ce:intra-ref>
```

374 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
The \textit{pii} scheme is most commonly used for referring to destinations \textit{within} other chapters of the same book. The destination ID is found after the \#. 

\textit{XML}
\begin{verbatim}
<ce:intra-ref id="intraref2"
    xlink:href="pii:S0004-3702(02)00193-5">...</ce:intra-ref>
\end{verbatim}

\textit{XML}
\begin{verbatim}
<ce:intra-ref id="intraref3"
    xlink:href="pii:S0004-3702(02)00193-5#sec7">...</ce:intra-ref>
\end{verbatim}

**Relation with DTD 4**

Element \textit{intra-ref} of DTD 4.3 and earlier was used in the context of linked textboxes. Since linked textboxes are now an integral part of the item, \textit{ce:cross-ref} can be used for that purpose.

**XLink aspects**

\textit{ce:intra-ref} has an attribute \textit{xlink:type} with the fixed value \textit{simple}. This makes it into a simple link according to the XLink standard. The \textit{xlink:href} and \textit{xlink:role} attributes comply with the XLink requirements for a simple link. Thus \textit{ce:intra-ref} can be processed by general XLink software. For more information, see \textit{ce:inter-ref}.

**Rendering notes**

If the rendering application cannot deal with \textit{ce:intra-ref}, or the scheme in attribute \textit{xlink:href}, it should not complain and merely output the content of the element. If the content is empty, then the rendering application may provide another method to reach the destination, e.g. a button or a hyperlink containing the \textit{xlink:href} attribute. The element \textit{ce:intra-ref} does not generate any presentation.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, \textit{intra-ref} used a location mechanism based on entities. It was only useful for cross-referencing between linked textboxes and the main document. Linked textboxes are now included in the main file itself, and the usage has changed to cross-references between book chapters, indexes, etc.

As of CEP 1.1.5, the \textit{intra-ref} scheme doi is deprecated. In CEP 1.5.0 entity \texttt{%math;} was added to \texttt{%text.data;}.

**See also**

\textit{ce:cross-ref, ce:cross-refs, ce:inter-ref, ce:inter-refs, ce:intra-refs}
ce:intra-ref-end

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref-end ( ce:intra-ref-title? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref-end
xlink:type ( locator ) #FIXED "locator"
xlink:label ( intra-ref-end ) #FIXED "intra-ref-end"
xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
xlink:href CDATA #REQUIRED>

Description

Each ce:intra-ref-end element denotes a link target within an ce:intra.refs element.

Usage

See ce:intra.refs.
ce:intra-ref-title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref-title ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref-title
oxlink:type ( title ) #FIXED "title"> 

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref-title ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref-title
oxlink:type ( title ) #FIXED "title"> 

Description

The ce:intra-ref-title element contains the text for one destination, to show for the parent ce:intra-ref-end element when multiple links are shown in a selection list.

Usage

See ce:intra-refs.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
ce:intra-refs

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT ce:intra-refs ( ce:intra-refs-text, ce:intra-ref-end+, ce:intra-refs-link )>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-refs
xlink:type ( extended ) #FIXED "extended">

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:intra-refs ( ce:intra-refs-text, ce:intra-ref-end+, ce:intra-refs-link )>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-refs
id ID #IMPLIED
xlink:type ( extended ) #FIXED "extended">

Description

The ce:intra-refs element is the one-to-many-links version of ce:intra-ref, q.v. It is an extended link according to the XLink standard.

Usage

The function of the element ce:intra-refs is identical to ce:inter-refs, but the existence of the destinations is guaranteed. This is similar to the simple-link variant ce:intra-ref.

The ce:intra-refs element contains a ce:intra-refs-text element, one or more ce:intra-ref-end elements and a ce:intra-refs-link element.

The ce:intra-refs-text element contains the text that is popularly seen as “text to click on”; it may be absent. It is the text seen in a rendering of the document, e.g. “[37, Sections 7–10]”. Both the hyperlinks to the individual destinations and descriptive labels (e.g., “[37, Section 9]”) are included in the other subelements of the enclosing ce:intra-refs.

Each ce:intra-ref-end element denotes a link target. Its attribute xlink:href determines the actual link. Its attribute xlink:role is used to indicate what kind of object is to be expected at the other end of the link. Both attributes follow the same rules as the attributes of the same name of ce:intra-ref, q.v. The subelement ce:intra-ref-end contains an optional ce:intra-ref-title element, whose content is the text to show for this link when multiple links are shown in a selection list.

The ce:intra-refs-link element is empty. Its presence is required by the XLink standard.

XML

```xml
<ce:intra-refs id="iars263">
  <ce:intra-refs-text id="intraref8">Figs. 1 and 2 in Chapter 2</ce:intra-refs-text>
  <ce:intra-ref-end xlink:href="pii:S0167-8396(00)00009-1#fig1">
    <ce:intra-ref-title>Fig. 1</ce:intra-ref-title>
  </ce:intra-ref-end>
  <ce:intra-ref-end xlink:href="pii:S0167-8396(00)00009-1#fig2">
    <ce:intra-ref-title>Fig. 2</ce:intra-ref-title>
  </ce:intra-ref-end>
</ce:intra-refs>
```
XLink aspects

`ce:intra-refs` has an attribute `xlink:type` with the fixed value `extended`. This makes it into a extended link according to the XLink standard. Its child elements also have several fixed `xlink` attributes, which determine their XLink meaning, in compliance with the XLink standard. Thus `ce:intra-refs` can be processed by general XLink software. Please refer to `ce:inter-refs`, where a more detailed illustration is given.

Linking services

The same considerations regarding linking services apply as for `ce:intra-ref`, q.v. The `ce:intra-ref-title` has a required ID attribute, since it is the local resource, which can be the link end of third-party links.

Version history

The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

Rendering notes

The text contained `ce:inter-refs-text` appears in any rendering. The destinations contained in `ce:inter-ref-title` can be used to obtain a selection list.

See also

`ce:cross-ref, ce:cross-refs, ce:inter-ref, ce:inter-refs, ce:intra-ref`
ce:intra-ref-sk-link

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:intra-ref-sk-link EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-ref-sk-link>
  xlink:type arc #FIXED "arc"
  xlink:from "intra-ref-sk-start" #FIXED "intra-ref-sk-start"
  xlink:to "intra-ref-sk-end" #FIXED "intra-ref-sk-end">

Description

The ce:intra-ref-sk-link element is empty. Its presence in ce:intra-ref is required by the XLink standard.

Usage

See ce:intra-ref.
ce:intra-refs-text

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-refs-text ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-refs-text
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( resource ) #FIXED "resource"
  xlink:label ( intra-refs-start ) #FIXED "intra-refs-start">
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:intra-refs-text ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:intra-refs-text
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xlink:type ( resource ) #FIXED "resource"
  xlink:label ( intra-refs-start ) #FIXED "intra-refs-start">
```

Description

The ce:intra-refs-text element contains the text that is popularly seen as “text to click on” within a ce:intra-refs element. Clicking on this text may lead to more than one destination.

Usage

See ce:intra-refs.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
ce:intro

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

`<!ELEMENT ce:intro ( ce:para+ )>`

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

`<!ELEMENT ce:intro ( ce:para+ )>`

`<!ATTLIST ce:intro`

- `id` ID #IMPLIED
- `role` CDATA #IMPLIED
- `view` %view; 'all'>

Description

The element `ce:intro` contains a brief introduction.

Usage

The element `ce:intro` consists of one or more paragraphs, `ce:para`. It is used for short introductory paragraphs, e.g. in a book chapter, a book volume, a bibliography, an index, a glossary or a textbox.

Version history

The `id`, `role` and `view` attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:isbn

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:isbn ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:isbn is available to uniquely identify a book project.

Usage

The element ce:isbn is used in the identification portions of books DTDs to identify the book project. It contains the ISBN or ISBN-13 in its formatted form.

XML

<ce:isbn>0-13-065567-8</ce:isbn>
<ce:isbn>978-0-13-065567-7</ce:isbn>

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.0.
ce:issn

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:issn ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:issn is available to uniquely identify a serial publication, e.g. a journal.

Usage

The element ce:issn is used in the identification portions of serial publications, and contains an ISSN in its formatted form.

XML

<ce:issn>0369-8114</ce:issn>

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.0.
**ce:italic**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:italic ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:italic` is a font changing element (p. 184). It is used to obtain italic.

**Usage**

**XML**

```xml
<ce:italic>This text is in italic</ce:italic>
```

**Presentation**

This text is in italic

Formulae should be captured in MathML. This is not enforced for very simple formulae — these can be structured with text effect elements.

**XML**

```xml
<mml:math>
  <mml:mrow>
    <mml:mi>p</mml:mi>
    <mml:mo>+</mml:mo>
    <mml:mi>q</mml:mi>
    <mml:mo>=</mml:mo>
    <mml:mi>r</mml:mi>
  </mml:mrow>
</mml:math>
```

**Presentation**

\[ p + q = r \]

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `it`.

**See also**

For more information see the section on text effects (p. 184). See also the font changing elements `ce:bold`, `ce:cross-out`, `ce:monospace`, `ce:sans-serif`, `ce:small-caps` and `ce:underline`. 
**ce:keyword**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keyword ( ce:text, ce:keyword* )>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keyword ( ce:text, ce:keyword* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:keyword id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:keyword` is used to capture a keyword or classification code.

**Usage**

Keywords and classification codes can be captured with element `ce:keyword` as plain text (`ce:text`), as a link to a database (`ce:inter-ref`), or both. Note that `ce:text` is `%text.data;` and/or `ce:inter-ref` while `ce:inter-ref` is `%text.data;`.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:keywords id="kwds0010">
  <ce:keyword id="kwd0020">
    <ce:text><ce:inter-ref id="ir0010" xlink:type="simple"
xlink:href="ascl:1201.001">1201.001</ce:inter-ref></ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
  ...
</ce:keywords>
```

**Presentation**

*Keywords: 1201.001; ...*

**XML**

```xml
<ce:keywords id="kwds0030">
  <ce:keyword id="kwd0040">
    <ce:text>Clinical trial <ce:inter-ref id="interref20"
xlink:href="ctgov:NCT00222573">NCT00222573</ce:inter-ref>NCT00222573</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
  ...
</ce:keywords>
```

**Presentation**

*Keywords: Clinical trial NCT00222573; ...*

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `kwd`. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.4.0 the model of `ce:text` was changed, enabling the use of element `ce:inter-ref`.

**See also**

`ce:keywords`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:keywords

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keywords (ce:section-title?, ce:keyword+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:keywords
    class CDATA "keyword" #IMPLIED
    xml:lang %language; #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keywords (ce:section-title?, ce:keyword+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:keywords
    class CDATA "keyword" #IMPLIED
    xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keywords (ce:section-title?, ce:keyword+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:keywords
    view %view; 'all'
    class CDATA "keyword" #IMPLIED
    xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:keywords (ce:section-title?, ce:keyword+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:keywords
    id ID #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'
    class CDATA "keyword" #IMPLIED
    xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Sets of keywords form a keyword group, ce:keywords, which may occur in various classes in an article.

Usage

A keyword group consists of a sequence of keywords or classification codes, ce:keyword. Keywords can be nested one level deep.

The element ce:keywords has four attributes. The language of the keywords (if applicable), if different from the language of the article, should be specified in the xml:lang attribute. See ISO 639 set of entities (p. 192) for an overview of the allowed language codes.

The id can be used to uniquely identify the keyword group. The attribute view is used to indicate in which views the keyword group must appear. Its default is to appear in all views. See also the section Views (p. 193).

The type of keywords or classification scheme is given by the attribute class. This attribute is of type CDATA so that additional values can be added without a DTD update. The only values allowed for class are described below.
• **keyword** is the default. It is used for ordinary keywords. Second-order keywords can be captured using a nested keyword.

  **XML**

  ```xml
  <ce:keywords id="kws01">
    <ce:section-title id="st01">Keywords</ce:section-title>
    <ce:keyword id="k01">
      <ce:text>Electroplating</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k02">
      <ce:text>Electrodeposited photoresist</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k03">
      <ce:text>3D fabrication</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
  </ce:keywords>

  **Presentation**

  **Keywords:** Electroplating; Electrodeposited photoresist; 3D fabrication

• **abbr** is used for abbreviations in an abbreviation list. Similar to **ce:nomenclature**, these are the abbreviations used in a document. They are printed at the bottom of the first page of the article like a footnote.

  **XML**

  ```xml
  <ce:keywords id="kws02" class="abr">
    <ce:section-title id="st02">Abbreviations</ce:section-title>
    <ce:keyword id="k04">
      <ce:text>mtDNA</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k05">
      <ce:text>mitochondrial DNA</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k06">
      <ce:text>WT</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k07">
      <ce:text>wildtype</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k08">
      <ce:text>GFP</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k09">
      <ce:text>green fluorescent protein</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
  </ce:keywords>

  **Presentation**

  **Abbreviations:** mtDNA, mitochondrial DNA; WT, wildtype; GFP, green fluorescent protein.

• **astronomy** is used for controlled astronomical keywords, taken from the astronomical thesaurus, used, e.g., in *New Astronomy*. This class replaces the default class **keyword**, which therefore may not be used.

  **XML**

  ```xml
  <ce:keywords id="kws03" class="astronomy">
    <ce:section-title id="st03">Keywords</ce:section-title>
    <ce:keyword id="k10">
      <ce:text>Cosmic microwave background</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
    <ce:keyword id="k11">
      <ce:text>Cosmology: theory</ce:text>
    </ce:keyword>
  </ce:keywords>
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Presentation

Keywords: Cosmic microwave background; Cosmology: theory

- cell is to be used for a forthcoming classification scheme used in Cell.
- cras-terre is used for the subject classification used in the journals of the Comptes Rendues de l'Académie des Sciences collection. Each consists of a keyword, or a keyword and a subkeyword.

XML

```xml
<ce:keywords id="kws04" class="cras-terre">
  <ce:keyword id="k12">
    <ce:text>Géochimie</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k13">
    <ce:text>Géosciences de surface</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

<ce:keywords id="kws05" class="cras-terre" xml:lang="en">
  <ce:keyword id="k14">
    <ce:text>Geochemistry</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k15">
    <ce:text>Surface Geosciences</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation

Géochimie / Géosciences de surface
Geochemistry / Surface Geosciences

- ctsnet is used for the CTSNet classifications (Cardiothoracic Surgery Network, www.ctsnet.org). These keywords may not be nested and are not necessarily presented in a rendering application.

XML

```xml
<ce:keywords id="kws06" class="ctsnet">
  <ce:section-title id="st04">CTSNet classification</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k16">22</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k17">23</ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation

CTSNet classification: 22; 23

- emtree is used for controlled keywords from the EMTREE thesaurus.
- geo is used for controlled keywords from the geo thesaurus as used in EPSL Online. This class replaces the default class keyword, which therefore may not be used.

XML

```xml
<ce:keywords id="kws07" class="geo">
  <ce:section-title id="st055">Keywords</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k18">
    <ce:text>fission-track dating</ce:text>
  </ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>
```
Presentation

Keywords: fission-track dating; uranium disequilibrium

- idt (index terms) is used for entries in a subject index. These keywords may not be nested and are not presented in a rendering of the item itself. By combining the idt keywords of various items, e.g., the items in a particular issue, a subject index is created.

- inchikey is used for InChIKeys. An InChIKey is a hashed version of an InChI, an IUPAC International Chemical Identifier. InChIKeys are not shown in print nor in PDF files.

XML

<ce:keywords id="kws08" class="inchikey">
<ce:section-title id="st06">InChIKeys</ce:section-title>
<ce:keyword id="k20">
<ce:text>WHUUTDBJXJKRMK-MYXYCAHRSA-O</ce:text>
</ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

- inspec-cc is used for INSPEC classification codes (www.iee.org.uk). Keywords in this class may not be nested.

XML

<ce:keywords id="kws09" class="inspec-cc">
<ce:section-title id="st07">Classification codes</ce:section-title>
<ce:keyword id="k21"><ce:text>A0470</ce:text></ce:keyword>
<ce:keyword id="k22"><ce:text>A9760L</ce:text></ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation

Classification codes: A0470; A9760L

- inspec-ct is used for INSPEC classification terms (www.iee.org.uk). Keywords in this class may not be nested.

XML

<ce:keywords id="kws10" class="inspec-ct">
<ce:section-title id="st08">Thesaurus terms</ce:section-title>
<ce:keyword id="k23"><ce:text>accelerator-based transmutation</ce:text></ce:keyword>
<ce:keyword id="k24">
<ce:text>haptic interfaces</ce:text></ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation

Thesaurus terms: accelerator-based transmutation; haptic interfaces

- inspec-chi is used for INSPEC chemical index terms. Keywords in this class may not be nested.

XML

<ce:keywords id="kws11" class="inspec-chi">
<ce:section-title id="st09">Chemical index</ce:section-title>
<ce:keyword id="k25"><ce:text>LaMnO3/ss</ce:text></ce:keyword>
<ce:keyword id="k26"><ce:text>La/ss</ce:text></ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Chemical index: LaMnO₃; La; Mn; O₃; O

• jel is a subject classification used in Economics, based on the classification used by the Journal of Economics Literature (www.aeaweb.org). These keywords may not be nested.

XML
<ce:keywords id="kws12" class="jel">
  <ce:section-title id="st10">JEL classification</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k30">C1</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k31">D11</ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation
JEL classification: C1; D11

• mat is used for entries in a “Materials” index. These keywords may not be nested and are not necessarily presented in a rendering application.

• mesh is used for controlled keywords taken from the Medical Subject Headings (MeSH, www.nlm.nih.gov/mesh) vocabulary created and updated by the US National Library of Medicine (NLM).

XML
<ce:keywords id="kws13" class="mesh">
  <ce:section-title id="st11">MeSH</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k32">Asthma</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k33">Motor activity</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k34">Exercise</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k35">Incidence</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k36">Epidemiology</ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>

Presentation
MeSH
Asthma; Motor activity; Exercise; Incidence; Epidemiology

• msc is used for the MSC classification, which evolved from the American Mathematical Society’s subject classification (see www.ams.org/msc). A document can have “primary” classifications and additional “secondary” classifications.

XML
<ce:keywords id="kws14" class="msc">
  <ce:section-title id="st12">MSC</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k37">primary</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k38">60K37</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k39">secondary</ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k40">60F17</ce:keyword>
</ce:keywords>
neurosci is used to assign “themes” and “topics” (evolved from the Society of Neuroscience, www.elsevier.nl/locate/bres). Topics (such as “Blood–brain barrier”) are second-order keywords belonging to the theme (“Cellular and Molecular Biology”).

ocis is used for OCIS (Optics Classification and Indexing Scheme) classification codes. OCIS is a categorization scheme used by the Optical Society of America to encode the topic of an article or presentation in a 7-digit code.
• pacs is used for the PACS classification scheme (www.aip.org/pacs). Keywords in this class may not be nested.

    XML
    <ce:keywords id="kws19" class="pacs">
        <ce:section-title id="st16">PACS</ce:section-title>
        <ce:keyword id="k53"><ce:text>85.25.Cp</ce:text></ce:keyword>
        <ce:keyword id="k54"><ce:text>74.50.+r</ce:text></ce:keyword>
        <ce:keyword id="k55"><ce:text>75.80</ce:text></ce:keyword>
    </ce:keywords>

Presentation

PACS: 85.25.Cp; 74.50.+r; 75.80

• psycinfo is used for PsycINFO classifications (www.apa.org/psycinfo). These keywords may not be nested.

    XML
    <ce:keywords id="kws20" class="psycinfo">
        <ce:section-title id="st17">PsycINFO classification</ce:section-title>
        <ce:keyword id="k56"><ce:text>2360</ce:text></ce:keyword>
        <ce:keyword id="k57"><ce:text>3313</ce:text></ce:keyword>
    </ce:keywords>

Presentation

PsycINFO classification: 2360; 3313

• pubchem is used for chemical compounds from the PubChem data repository. These keywords may not be nested. The National Center for Biotechnology Information uses the type "NCBI:pubchem-compound" for these keywords.

    XML
    <ce:keywords id="kws21" class="pubchem">
        <ce:section-title id="st18">Chemical compounds studied in this article</ce:section-title>
        <ce:keyword id="k58"><ce:text>Nifedipine</ce:text></ce:keyword>
        <ce:keyword id="k59"><ce:text>Nitric oxide</ce:text></ce:keyword>
        <ce:keyword id="k60"><ce:text>Peroxynitrite</ce:text></ce:keyword>
    </ce:keywords>

Presentation

Chemical compounds studied in this article: Nifedipine; Nitric oxide; Peroxynitrite

• ranking is used for Year Books. It is not necessarily represented in a rendering representation.

    XML
    <ce:keywords id="kws22" class="ranking">
        <ce:section-title id="st19">Evidence Ranking</ce:section-title>
        <ce:keyword id="k61"><ce:text>C</ce:text></ce:keyword>
    </ce:keywords>
ce:keywords

Presentation

Evidence Ranking: C

- **rating** is used for Year Books. It is not necessarily represented in a rendering representation.

  XML

  `<ce:keywords id="kws23" class="rating">
  <ce:section-title id="st20">Expert Rating</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k62"><ce:text>1</ce:text></ce:keyword>
  </ce:keywords>

Presentation

Expert Rating: 1

- **src** is used for entries in a “Sources” index. These keywords may not be nested and are not necessarily presented in a rendering application.

- **stma** is used for STMA (Statistical Theory & Methods Abstracts, www.cbs.nl/isi) classification codes. These keywords may not be nested.

  XML

  `<ce:keywords id="kws24" class="stma">
  <ce:section-title id="st21">Statistical Theory and Method Abstracts</ce:section-title>
  <ce:keyword id="k63"><ce:text>00:050</ce:text></ce:keyword>
  <ce:keyword id="k64"><ce:text>06:900</ce:text></ce:keyword>
  </ce:keywords>

Presentation

Statistical Theory and Method Abstracts: 00:050; 06:900

- **thelancet** is to be used for a forthcoming classification scheme used in *The Lancet*.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called **kwdg**. In CEP 1.1.1 the value it was added to parameter entity `%language%;`. As of CEP 1.1.5, all languages contained in `%iso639%;` are allowed. The **view** attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6, while the **id** attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

ce:keyword
ce:label

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:label ( %text.data; )*>
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:label ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The designation (number, name, label) of various elements is contained in the ce:label element.

Usage

The ce:label element is used to contain the designation of the parent element, e.g. “2.1.6”, “Fig. 2”, “Plate VII” or “Lemma 1.6”.

XML
<ce:affiliation id="aff2"><ce:label>b</ce:label> ... 
<ce:footnote id="fn4"><ce:label>4</ce:label> ... 
<ce:section id="sec2"><ce:label>2</ce:label> ... 
<ce:section id="sec3.1"><ce:label>3.1</ce:label> ... 
<ce:enunciation id="lem1.6"><ce:label>Lemma 1.6</ce:label> ... 

Presentation

b Affiliation...
4 Footnote...
2. Section...
3.1. Section...
Lemma 1.6....

Explanation

Note that ce:label generates some presentation: the closing full stops and the superscript position of the footnote number are generated by the ce:label, whereas they would have to be inserted explicitly in a ce:cross-ref. This allows the application to build cross-reference destination lists directly from the content of ce:label.

For explanation of the precise usage of ce:label, refer to the parents.

The element ce:label plays an important role in cross-referencing, especially for one-to-many links.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called no. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

For more information, see the parent elements, the section Cross-references and the label element (p. 180), ce:cross-ref.
ce:last-page

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:last-page ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The last page of an item called by a hub file is captured using ce:last-page.

Usage

See ce:pages.

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

ce:include-item, ce:first-page
ce:legend

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

`<!ELEMENT ce:legend ( ce:simple-para+ )>`

Description

A `ce:legend` contains explanatory text belonging to a table or textbox.

Usage

A legend appears at the bottom of a table or a textbox. It contains one or more simple paragraphs, `ce:simple-para`.

The addition of a legend to a table is an extension to the CALS table model. For more information about tables, see `ce:table`.

See also

`ce:table-footnote`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:link**

### Declaration

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.2.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:link EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:link
  id ID #IMPLIED
  locator ENTITY #REQUIRED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:link EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:link
  id ID #IMPLIED
  locator ENTITY #REQUIRED
  xlink:type ( simple ) #IMPLIED
  xlink:role CDATA #IMPLIED
  xlink:href CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

### Description

For the purpose of referring to files external to the XML file, the general element `ce:link` is provided.

### Usage

The element `ce:link` instructs the rendering application to pull in a file external to the XML file, an *external object*, e.g. artwork, video, audio or supplementary material. What needs to be done with the file depends on the parent element.

`ce:link` has one mandatory attribute `locator` which is an entity declared in the document’s declaration subset as an external file. The three xlink attributes are optional for backward compatibility reasons but are required to be present. Element `ce:link` can be identified by the optional `id` attribute.

**XML**

```xml
<!ENTITY fx22 SYSTEM "fx22" NDATA IMAGE>...
<ce:inline-figure>
  <ce:link id="lk12" locator="fx22" xlink:type="simple"
    xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
    xlink:href="pii:S0012365X15000898/fx22"/>
</ce:inline-figure>
```

There are two ways for a rendering application to pull in the external object.

#### The classical way

The `locator` attribute contains an entity and the application resolves the entity to a file, e.g. `fx22.tif`. Note that the entity name is the same as the file name. The application also retrieves the type of external object from the entity declaration: APPLICATION, AUDIO, IMAGE, TEXT, VIDEO or XML.
Note that unless a customer explicitly requested otherwise these files are always delivered together with the XML file. The classical way can then be used.

**The modern way**

The `xlink:href` attribute contains the Elsevier Resource Name (or ERN) of the content object in Elsevier’s Virtual Total Warehouse (VTW). In the VTW the ERN is also known as the `ecm:identifier`. PIIs are one example of ERNs.

The ERN is an identification scheme followed by an ID. In current workflows, the ERN of the object is itself a PII, constructed from the unformatted PII used in the XML file, followed by a slash, followed by the locator of the object. (Note that there is exactly one locator. See `ce:figure` for examples with subfigures.) In future workflows this ID might be another identifier, for instance an Elsevier Generic Identifier (EGI).

The application can use the ERN in the `xlink:href` attribute to access the content object in the VTW using VTW’s APIs.

Attribute `xlink:type` has the fixed value `simple`. Attribute `xlink:role` is used to indicate what kind of object is to be expected at the other end of the link. Its value is the VTW content type of the content object. It is a URI of the form `http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/<content-type>`

The following content types can be used. For more information see [29] and [30].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Content type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image</td>
<td>23.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interactive image</td>
<td>23.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cover</td>
<td>23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gigapixel image</td>
<td>23.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multimedia composite</td>
<td>23.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary material</td>
<td>46.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**XML**

```xml
<!ENTITY gr3 SYSTEM "gr3" NDATA IMAGE>
...
<ce:inline-figure>
  <ce:link id="gr3" locator="gr3" xlink:type="simple"
    xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
    xlink:href="pii:S1050464813006360/gr3"/>
</ce:inline-figure>
...

<!ENTITY gr1 SYSTEM "gr1" NDATA IMAGE>
...
<ce:inline-figure>
  <ce:link id="gr1" locator="gr1" xlink:type="simple"
    xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
    xlink:href="egi:10PS4Z63Q8Q"/>
</ce:inline-figure>
...
```
The modern way can also be applied to legacy material not containing the three xlink attributes. The ERN is constructed as mentioned above, unformatted PII plus slash plus locator, and can then be used in the VTW APIs.

**Version history**

As from CEP 1.1.2 the attribute list no longer contains file-size information. The three XLink attributes were introduced in CEP 1.4.0.

**See also**

`ce:figure, ce:inter-ref`, Entities and the DOCTYPE declaration (p. 14).
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:list

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

<!ELEMENT ce:list ( ce:label?, ce:section-title?,
ce:list-item+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:list
id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:list ( ce:label?, ce:section-title?,
ce:list-item+)>
<!ATTLIST ce:list
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

The element ce:list is used to capture free-format lists.

Usage

The element ce:list provides a way to capture lists, where the labels are left entirely to the user.

A ce:list has an optional number or label (ce:label) and an optional section title (ce:section-title). It has an optional id attribute so that it can become the target of a cross-reference. Attribute role can be used to assign a specific role. No roles are currently defined.

A list consists of one or more list items, ce:list-item. Each list item can have a ce:label, containing the list item’s label, and consists of one or more paragraphs, ce:para. If the ce:label element is absent, then the item is indented, and the result is a “tab list”.

A ce:list-item can have an id so that it can become the target of a cross-reference.

XML

<ce:list id="lst003">
  <ce:list-item id="lsti007">
    <ce:label>(iii)</ce:label>
    <ce:para id="p056">Item 3...</ce:para>
  </ce:list-item>
  <ce:list-item id="lsti008">
    <ce:label>(iv)</ce:label>
    <ce:para id="p057">Item 4...</ce:para>
  </ce:list-item>
</ce:list>

XML

<ce:list id="lst004">
  <ce:list-item id="lsti009">
    <ce:label>&rtrif;</ce:label>
    <ce:para id="p058">Item ...</ce:para>
  </ce:list-item>
</ce:list>
Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, lists with auto-generated labels could be obtained with the `l` element. The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.

See also

`ce:def-list`
**ce:list-item**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:list-item ( ce:label?, ce:para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:list-item
id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:list-item` is used to capture list items within `ce:list`.

**Usage**

See `ce:list`. 
ce:marker

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0.1, 1.1.4–1.5.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:marker EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:marker
  name CDATA #REQUIRED
  alt CDATA #REQUIRED
  altimg CDATA #REQUIRED
  altimg-small CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT ce:marker EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:marker
  name CDATA #REQUIRED
  alt CDATA #REQUIRED
  altimg CDATA #REQUIRED
  altimg-small CDATA #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

A marker is a small icon which marks a special property of an article. Examples are: ‘Fast track article’, ‘Continuous Medical Education (CME) article’. The marker is usually shown in the Table of Contents of an issue, before or after the title, and on the first page of an article.

Usage

The marker icons are pixel perfect gif files, similarly to all other altimages.

The **name** attribute contains a name for the marker, which allows one to categorize articles with such markers. Applications should ignore marker names unknown to them.

The **alt** attribute contains an alternative text for the marker icon. The text should be a short indication of the category of articles marked by this marker.

The **altimg** attribute contains the name of the marker icon.

The **altimg-small** attribute contains the name of a smaller-sized version of the marker icon. This version should be used when the marker is printed inline, especially with the article title in the Table of Contents.

For the **role** attribute the value `seal-of-replicability` is defined. A “Seal of Replicability” indicates that the published research conforms to a high standard of reproducibility. No other values are defined.

```
<ce:markers>
  <ce:marker name="cme"
    alt="Continuous Medical Education"
    altimg-small="cme_s.gif" altimg="cme_o.gif"/>
  <ce:marker name="swift"/>
</ce:markers>
```

XML
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Examination

This article has two markers, one indicating that it contains Continuous Medical Education material, the other indicating that it is a fast-track article. The alt texts show these meanings as a tool-tip if the icons are not displayed. The icons are delivered in two sizes, called “online” and “small”. There is no indication of the actual sizes.

The normal-sized icon is to be shown on the first page of the article. The small icon is to be used inline in the Table of Contents.

Light reading

A marker should not be used for article features which can be derived from the article’s content, such as the presence of e-extra material. If web platforms wish to show a marker for such features, they should generate it based on programmatic inspection of the article.

Version history

This element was added in CEPs 1.1.0.1 and 1.1.4. The role attribute was added in CEP 1.6.0.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:markers**

**Declaration**

*Model (CEPs 1.1.0.1, 1.1.4–1.6.0)*

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:markers ( ce:marker+ )>
```

**Description**

An article may contain multiple `ce:marker` elements. These are contained in the element `ce:markers`.

**Usage**

See `ce:marker`.

**Version history**

This element was added in CEPs 1.1.0.1 and 1.1.4.

**See also**

`ce:marker`
ce:math

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:math EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:math
  altimg CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The element `ce:math` is used to add an image of a mathematical formula without corresponding MathML.

Usage

The empty element `ce:math` can be used to add an image of a mathematical formula without capturing the corresponding MathML. The image can be a regular (CAP) image or a strip-in image. The attribute `altimg` contains the name of the image, it is a file name inclusive extension.

This element will only be used very early in the production process.

Version history

Element `ce:math` was introduced in CEP 1.5.0.

See also

`ce:formula`, `strip-in images` (p. 23)
ce:miscellaneous

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:miscellaneous ( %text.data; )*>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:miscellaneous ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:miscellaneous role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:miscellaneous ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:miscellaneous id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:miscellaneous ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:miscellaneous id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The `ce:miscellaneous` element is used to capture miscellaneous history information of the article. It is an optional element within the frontmatter.

Usage

Miscellaneous history information is contained in `ce:miscellaneous`. The most common information captured using this element is the communicating editor. In principle, each journal can have its own convention.

XML

```xml
<ce:miscellaneous id="m1">Communicated by M. Nivat</ce:miscellaneous>
```

Presentation

Communicated by M. Nivat

Rendering notes

`ce:miscellaneous` does not generate any text.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `misc`. The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6, while the `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

408 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
ce:monospace

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:monospace ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

Description

The element `ce:monospace` is a font changing element (p. 184). It is used to obtain a monospaced typewriter font.

Usage

To obtain a monospaced “typewriter” font, the element `ce:monospace` is used.

```xml
<ce:monospace>&lt;ce:monospace&gt;Monospace font&lt;/ce:monospace&gt;</ce:monospace>
```

Presentation

```xml
<ce:monospace>Monospace font</ce:monospace>
```

In combination with text tables or tab lists `ce:monospace` is popular for capturing computer code fragments; this is also known as verbatim text. To obtain multiple spaces use sequences of nonbreakable spaces `&amp;#x00A0;`.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called ty.

See also

For more information see the section on text effects (p. 184). See also `ce:bold, ce:cross-out, ce:italic, ce:sans-serif, ce:small-caps, ce:underline`. 
ce:nomenclature

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:nomenclature ( ce:section-title?, ce:def-list+ )>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:nomenclature ( ce:section-title?, ce:def-list+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:nomenclature
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  view %view; 'all'>
```

Description

Nomenclature, a listing of the terms used in a document, is captured with `ce:nomenclature`.

Usage

Nomenclature contains one or more listings of terms and definitions used in the document. Each such listing is a `ce:def-list` within `ce:nomenclature`.

The title of the nomenclature, mostly “Nomenclature”, is captured with the optional subelement `ce:section-title`.

XML

```xml
<ce:nomenclature id="nom1">
  <ce:section-title id="st1">Nomenclature</ce:section-title>
  <ce:def-list id="dl1">
    <ce:def-term id="dt1">
      <ce:italic>A<ce:inf>n</ce:inf></ce:italic>
    </ce:def-term>
    <ce:def-description id="dd1">
      <ce:para id="p75">area of nozzle, m<ce:sup>2</ce:sup></ce:para>
    </ce:def-description>
  </ce:def-list>
  <ce:def-list id="dl2">
    <ce:def-term id="dt2">
      <ce:italic>C<ce:inf>A</ce:inf></ce:italic>
    </ce:def-term>
    <ce:def-description id="dd2">
      <ce:para id="p76">concentration of CO<ce:inf>2</ce:inf> in solution, mol/m<ce:sup>3</ce:sup></ce:para>
    </ce:def-description>
  </ce:def-list>
  <ce:def-list id="dl3">
    <ce:def-term id="dt3">
      <ce:italic>C<ce:inf>AG</ce:inf></ce:italic>
    </ce:def-term>
    <ce:def-description id="dd3">
      <ce:para id="p77">concentration of CO<ce:inf>2</ce:inf> in gas phase, mol/m<ce:sup>3</ce:sup></ce:para>
    </ce:def-description>
  </ce:def-list>
</ce:nomenclature>
```
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

Presentation

Nomenclature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$A_n$</td>
<td>area of nozzle, m$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$v^*$</td>
<td>friction velocity, m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_A$</td>
<td>concentration of CO$_2$ in solution, mol/m$^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{AG}$</td>
<td>concentration of CO$_2$ in gas phase, mol/m$^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Phi$</td>
<td>empirical constant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Greek letters

Version history

The id, role and view attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6.

See also

Similar constructs to capture this information are ce:keywords with class equal to abr and ce:glossary.
ce:note

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:note (ce:simple-para+)>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, ce:note contains descriptive paragraphs about the reference. It can also contain an endnote.

Usage

A ce:note contains one or more paragraphs, ce:simple-para. In a structured reference, it can occur on its own or after a bibliographic reference. On its own, it is effectively an “endnote”, which may coexist beside footnotes and are listed between bibliographic references. After a bibliographic reference, it contains descriptive text about the reference, not to be confused with an sb:comment.

XML

<ce:bib-reference id="bib49">
  <ce:label>[49]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr62">
    <sb:comment>See the references in</sb:comment>
    <sb:contribution>...</sb:contribution>
    <sb:comment>first published in</sb:comment>
    <sb:host>...</sb:host>
    <sb:comment>also available electronically as</sb:comment>
    <sb:host>...</sb:host>
    <sb:comment>(in Japanese)</sb:comment>
  </sb:reference>
  <ce:note>
    <ce:simple-para id="sp82">This reference explains the usage of the comment and note elements. Comments and the other components of the sb:reference together form one text. The note may contain details about the reference.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:note>
</ce:bib-reference>

<ce:bib-reference id="bib50">
  <ce:label>[50]</ce:label>
  <ce:note>
    <ce:simple-para id="ssp83">This is a note in between the references, an endnote.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:note>
</ce:bib-reference>

Presentation

[49] See the references in ... first published in ... also available electronically as ... (in Japanese).

This reference explains the usage of the comment and note elements. Comments and the other components of the sb:reference together form one text. The note may contain details about the reference.

[50] This is a note in between the references, an endnote.
See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
ce:note-para

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)
<!ELEMENT ce:note-para ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:note-para
 id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEP 1.1.5)
<!ELEMENT ce:note-para ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:note-para
 id ID #IMPLIED>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:note-para ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:note-para
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:note-para ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:note-para
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>

Description

Paragraphs of text within footnotes and notes, are captured using the element ce:note-para.

Usage

A note paragraph, ce:note-para, belongs to the lowest-level structuring elements. It contains text and objects structured with the elements in %note.data;, and differs from a full paragraph, ce:para, in that footnotes and floating objects are not allowed.

Version history

In CEP 1.1.5 it became possible to use elements ce:grant-sponsor and ce:grant-number in the content of ce:note-para. The role and view attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6. In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %note.data;.

See also

ce:para, ce:simple-para.
ce:other-ref

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:other-ref ( ce:label?, ce:textref )>
<!ATTLIST ce:other-ref
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element ce:other-ref is used to capture bibliographic references that cannot be structured.

Usage

If structuring a bibliographic reference in an sb:reference is not possible, then ce:other-ref can be used. Known examples are maps and patents, but also incomplete references can be tagged this way. However, the content of ce:other-ref must be a bibliographic reference; to create reference lists that also contain endnotes the element ce:note can be used.

A bibliographic reference, when tagged using ce:other-ref, needs to be marked up according to the journal style, e.g., if a title should be italics, it should explicitly be marked up.

The element ce:other-ref has an optional ce:label subelement and an id attribute. These are used when the ce:other-ref is part of a multiple reference.

Copy edit considerations

As noted above, a bibliographic reference tagged with ce:other-ref can still contain tagged information. In particular URLs can be tagged (with ce:inter-ref).

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="bib15">
  <ce:label>[15]</ce:label>
  <ce:other-ref id="or15">
    <ce:textref>S. Barrett, QuackWatch, Allentown, PA, USA,
      xlink:href="http://www.quackwatch.org/">
      http://www.quackwatch.org/</ce:inter-ref>
    [accessed March 2003].</ce:textref>
  </ce:other-ref>
</ce:bib-reference>
```

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
ce:pages

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:pages ( ce:first-page, ce:last-page? )>

Description

The pages of an item called by a hub file are captured using ce:pages.

Usage

The element ce:pages contains a mandatory ce:first-page and an optional ce:last-page.

XML

<ce:pages>
  <ce:first-page>37</ce:first-page>
  <ce:last-page>51</ce:last-page>
</ce:pages>

XML

<ce:pages>
  <ce:first-page>L1</ce:first-page>
  <ce:last-page>L13</ce:last-page>
</ce:pages>

XML

<ce:pages>
  <ce:first-page>iv</ce:first-page>
</ce:pages>

The element ce:last-page is not used when the page range spans a single page.

If the document style is to render a page range as 127–9, then the element ce:last-page must contain 129.

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

ce:include-item
ce:para

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)

<!ELEMENT ce:para (%par.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:para  
id ID #IMPLIED  
role CDATA #IMPLIED  
view %view; 'all'>

Model (CEPs 1.1.5–1.4.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:para (%par.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:para  
id ID #IMPLIED  
role CDATA #IMPLIED  
view %view; 'all'>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:para (%par.data; )*>  
<!ATTLIST ce:para  
id ID #IMPLIED  
role CDATA #IMPLIED  
view %view; 'all'>

Description

Paragraphs of text are captured using the element ce:para.

Usage

A paragraph, ce:para, belongs to the lowest-level structuring elements. It contains text and objects structured with the elements in %par.data;.

The attribute id can be used to cross-reference to the paragraph.

The attribute role allows one to categorize paragraphs, and attach a special meaning to them. For instance, it makes it possible to mark a paragraph as a “motto”, and handle it in a different way than an ordinary paragraph. Applications should treat roles unknown to them as ordinary paragraphs. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. At the time of writing, the following roles exist.

- acknowledgement is used to mark acknowledgement-like paragraphs, such as ‘Contributors’, ‘Conflicts of Interest’, etc.
- author is used to identify a paragraph which consists of an author’s name. It is only used in book items where the author of a ce:section needs to be indicated.
- background is used to identify a paragraph that contains background information.
- case-study is used to identify a paragraph containing a case study.
- conclusion is used to identify a paragraph that contains conclusions.
- correct-answer is used to indicate that the paragraph contains a correct answer.
- discussion is used to identify a paragraph that contains a discussion.
• **exam-questions** is used to identify the paragraph which contains the actual exam questions. It should only be used for a paragraph in the element `ce:exam-questions`.

• **introduction** is used to mark the introductory paragraphs of an article. Introductory paragraphs are distinguished by some publications, which may print them, e.g., in boldface.

• **motto** is used to turn a paragraph into a motto.

  XML
  ```xml
  <ce:para id="p01" role="motto">Everything has a version number</ce:para>
  ```

• **question** is used to mark a paragraph with a single question and will enforce a special layout.

• **results** is used to identify a paragraph that contains results.

Items can appear in compact, standard and extended views. The attribute `view` is used to indicate in which views the paragraph must appear. Its default is to appear in all views. See also the section Views (p. 193).

**Version history**

In CEP 1.1.5 entity `%text-objects;` was added to `%par.data;`. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%par.data;`.

**See also**

`ce:note-para, ce:simple-para`
ce:pii

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:pii ( %string.data; )*>
```

Description

The element ce:pii contains the PII of the item.

Usage

Each item must have a PII, a publisher item identifier. To identify the document, ce:pii is populated with the PII of the document. The full PII with formatting characters (e.g. parentheses, hyphens) must be used. The different types of PII are described in [27].

For journal articles, an alternative means of identification is the combination of journal code, jid, and article number, aid.

See also

aid, ce:doi, jid
**ce:preprint**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:preprint (ce:inter-ref)>  
```

**Description**

The element `ce:preprint` is used to create a link between a document and an associated preprint version.

**Usage**

Many articles have an associated preprint version, which is stored in a preprint archive. In order to create a link between the article and its associated preprint version, the element `ce:preprint` is provided. It contains one subelement, `ce:inter-ref`, which is the actual link. The content of `ce:inter-ref` is empty in this context.

Only preprints in a pre-defined list of repositories may be referenced, so that correct links can be created. Therefore, only a limited number of values for the scheme in `xlink:href` are allowed. Presently only `arxiv` is used.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:preprint>
  <ce:inter-ref id="interref8"
    xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/preprint"
    xlink:href="arxiv:1606.04017"></ce:inter-ref>
</ce:preprint>
```

**Explanation**

This generates a link between the article and the associated preprint within the Los Alamos archive, whose URL is `http://arxiv.org/abs/1606.04017`.

**Rendering notes**

The element `ce:preprint` generates no output on paper, but in other media, a link with the preprint database may be created.

**See also**

`ce:inter-ref`
ce:presented

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:presented ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:presented
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:presented ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:presented
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

In the head of an item, it is sometimes stated that the article was presented at a certain conference or by a certain person (mostly one of the authors). The `ce:presented` is provided for this purpose.

Usage

The element `ce:presented` is an optional subelement of the head. It contains the complete statement identifying the presenter of the article and/or the place where the article was presented.

```xml
<ce:presented id="pr1">Presented by P. Walmsey</ce:presented>
```

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `prs`. The `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textfn.data;`.

Rendering notes

The text “Presented by” is not generated.
ce:ranking

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:ranking ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

The element ce:ranking provides a way to mark “important” authors.

Usage

In some scientific disciplines, especially Chemistry, it is common to mark the more important authors. Often, the same symbol is used as the one for corresponding author. If not, or if the particular author is not a corresponding author, ce:ranking can be used to capture the symbol. Conversely, it is not required to mark an author using ce:ranking if the importance is already signalled in other means. Indeed, it is possible that two authors are “important” but one has ce:ranking and the other has a corresponding author footnote (ce:correspondence).

XML

<ce:author id="au1"
    author-id="S0090429516900852-f8534793b60adb72922f16de76a69a5d">
    <ce:given-name>Jitendra</ce:given-name>
    <ce:surname>Sharma</ce:surname>
    <ce:ranking>*</ce:ranking>
</ce:author>

<ce:author id="au2"
    author-id="S0090429516900852-dcbe44473bf24b8ffda14b7d03d14f5d">
    <ce:given-name>A.</ce:given-name>
    <ce:surname>Angelucci</ce:surname>
    <ce:ranking>*</ce:ranking>
</ce:author>

Presentation

Jitendra Sharma*, A. Angelucci*

See also

ce:author, ce:correspondence
**ce:reader-see**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.3–1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:reader-see ( %text.data; )*>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:reader-see ( %text.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:reader-see` is used to capture general references.

**Usage**

In indexes that are created by professional indexers, “see” or “see also” entries can appear that do not explicitly point to terms in the index, but instead require the reader’s expertise. In the first example below, taken from the *Encyclopedia of Food Sciences and Nutrition* (Academic Press, San Diego, 2003), the indexer has added an entry “absorption of nutrients” with reference “see specific nutrients”. A human reader can interpret this link, but it is not possible or viable to create a link in the XML file. With the element `ce:reader-see` such references without a link can be captured.

Unlike the elements `ce:see` and `ce:see-also`, no text is generated by `ce:reader-see`.

**XML**

```
<ce:index-entry id="idx012">
  <ce:index-heading>absorption of nutrients</ce:index-heading>
  <ce:reader-see>see <ce:italic>specific nutrients</ce:italic></ce:reader-see>
</ce:index-entry>
```

```
<ce:index-entry id="idx037">
  <ce:index-heading>amines</ce:index-heading>
  ... 
  <ce:index-entry id="idx038">
    <ce:index-heading>biogenic</ce:index-heading>
    <ce:reader-see>see <ce:italic>individual amines</ce:italic></ce:reader-see>
  </ce:index-entry>
</ce:index-entry>
```

**Version history**

This element was added in CEP 1.1.3. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`. 
ce:refers-to-document

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:refers-to-document ( ce:doi | ( ce:pii, ce:doi? ) )>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:refers-to-document ( ce:doi | ( ce:pii, ce:doi? ) )>
<!ATTLIST ce:refers-to-document
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:refers-to-document ( ce:doi | ( ce:pii, ce:doi? ) )>
<!ATTLIST ce:refers-to-document
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:refers-to-document` is used to refer to another document.

Usage

The element `ce:refers-to-document` consists of a `ce:pii` and/or a `ce:doi`, alternative identifications of one and the same document, which must not be the document in which `ce:refers-to-document` itself occurs. Although `ce:pii` is declared optional in the DTD, it must always be present. If both PII and DOI are known, then both elements `ce:pii` and `ce:doi` will be present.

It is used to associate the two documents, e.g., to link an erratum with the article that it is an erratum to.

XML

```xml
<ce:refers-to-document id="rt3">
  <ce:pii>S0031-9201(03)00274-7</ce:pii>
</ce:refers-to-document>
```

Presentation


The attribute `role` allows one to categorize the associations and handle them differently. Currently only the role `predecessor` is defined. It is used to indicate the previous version of an updated item in cases where the original item still exists.

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.1.0 and replaced `ce:refers-to-article`. The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6, while the `id` attribute was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

`ce:document-thread`
ce:roles

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:roles (%richstring.data; )*>
```

Description

A sequence of named roles or job titles appearing after the author name is tagged with ce:roles.

Usage

Roles or job titles of the author may appear after an author name. These are captured using the ce:roles element. Roles or job titles are different from academic titles or degrees, which are part of ce:degrees.

```xml
<ce:roles>Chairman</ce:roles>
<ce:roles>Past Treasurer of the ACGIH</ce:roles>
<ce:roles>Editor-in-Chief</ce:roles>
<ce:roles>CEO, Reed&ndash;Elsevier</ce:roles>
```

See also

ce:author, ce:degrees, ce:suffix
ce:salutation

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:salutation ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:salutation ( %text.data; )*>

Description

If an article begins with a salutation, this can be captured using ce:salutation.

Usage

A salutation may appear at the beginning of the body of an article. It is tagged with ce:salutation.

XML

<body>
  <ce:salutation>Sir</ce:salutation>
  <ce:sections>
    <ce:section id="s03">
      <ce:para id="p02">David Brenner and Eric Hall make the assumption that our statement regarding ...</ce:para>
    </ce:section>
  </ce:sections>
</body>

Presentation

Sir—David Brenner and Eric Hall make the assumption that our statement regarding ...

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

Rendering notes

Punctuation is generated. Note that the above presentation is a possible one. Instead of an em-dash a comma could be used, or the “Sir” could be typeset in small capitals.
ce:sans-serif

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:sans-serif (%richstring.data;)>*

Description

The element ce:sans-serif is a font changing element (p. 184). It is used to obtain a sans-serif font.

Usage

XML

Here is some &lt;ce:sans-serif&gt;sans-serif text&lt;/ce:sans-serif&gt;

Presentation

Here is some sans-serif text

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called ssf.

See also

For more information see the section on text effects (p. 184). See also ce:bold, ce:cross-out, ce:italic, ce:monospace, ce:small-caps, ce:underline.


**ce:section**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:section ( ( ( ce:section-title | ( ce:label,
    ce:section-title? ) ), %parsec; ) |
    ce:section+ )>

<!ATTLIST ce:section
    id ID #IMPLIED
    role CDATA #IMPLIED
    view %view; 'all'>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:section` is used to create sections and subsections.

**Usage**

Sections and subsections are created using the element `ce:section`. Nested `ce:section` elements are used to create subsections. The nesting level determines the level of the section and hence the presentation of the section’s number (`ce:label`) and title (`ce:section-title`).

A `ce:section` must have a `ce:label` and/or a `ce:section-title`, or it should be the parent of only `ce:sections`.

The optional section number is contained within `ce:label` without closing punctuation.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:section id="sec2">
  <ce:label>2</ce:label>
  <ce:section-title id="sect2">Asia</ce:section-title>
  <ce:section id="sec2.1">
    <ce:section-title id="sect2.1">Japan</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p12">...</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
  <ce:section id="sec2.2">
    <ce:section-title id="sect2.2">Indonesia</ce:section-title>
    <ce:para id="p13">...</ce:para>
  </ce:section>
</ce:section>
```

**Presentation**

2. Asia
   2.1. Japan
   ...
   2.2. Indonesia
   ...

A section which contains only `ce:sections` is invisible in the rendering. Therefore it can be used to ‘jump’ or ‘skip’ section levels. There can be no text at the skipped level, not even after the contained sections.
The attribute **id** is used to cross-reference to the section.

The attribute **role** allows one to categorize sections. For instance, it makes it possible to mark “Materials and Methods” sections, and handle these in different ways than ordinary sections. Applications should treat sections with roles unknown to them as ordinary sections, i.e., unknown roles must be ignored. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. The following values for **role** have been defined:

- **acknowledgement**. This role is used to mark acknowledgement-like sections, such as ‘Contributors’, ‘Conflicts of Interest’, etc.
- **anatomy**
- **author-disclosure**
- **background**
- **bio-sciences**
- **case-report**. This role is used to identify a case report as is common in medical contexts.
- **case-study**
- **collaborations**
- **conclusion**
- **discussion**
- **diseases**
- **glossary**
- **introduction**
- **materials-methods**. This role is used to identify a materials and methods section.
- **methods**
- **note-added-in-proof**. This role is used to identify a note added in proof section, which is added at proof stage and sometimes appears at the very end of the document.
- **results**. This role is used to identify a results section.
- **SeeAlso**. This role is used in books (encyclopedia) only and indicates a section with cross-references to other parts of the book.
sharp. This role is used in books only and indicates an additional level of heading above level 1 or 2 (a level “1A”). The name is based on the “sharp” (#) in musical notes, which also lifts up the level.

source-article
step

XML

<ce:section id="sec3.5" role="materials-methods">
  <ce:label>3.5</ce:label>
  <ce:section-title id="st3.5">Materials and Methods</ce:section-title>
  ...
</ce:section>

Explanation
The section has become a “materials and methods” section. The presentation of such a section is style dependent; it is usually displayed in a somewhat smaller font size, but otherwise equal to an ordinary section.

For the Methods Navigator project the following roles were introduced:

- document
- equipment
- materials
- molecular-functions
- molecular-roles
- organisms
- pathways
- phenotypes
- process
- protocol
- purpose
- theory
- video

Articles can appear in compact, standard and extended views. The attribute view is used to indicate in which views the section must appear. Its default is to appear in all views. See also the section Views (p. 193).

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called sec.
ce:sections

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:sections ( %parsec; )>

Description

The element ce:sections is a container for sections and paragraphs (%parsec;).
ce:section-title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:section-title ( %nondisplay.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:section-title
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:section-title ( %nondisplay.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:section-title
  id ID #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element **ce:section-title** is used to capture section titles.

Usage

Element **ce:section-title** is used to capture the (section) title of the parent element.

The following elements can have **ce:section-title** as subelement: **ce:abstract, ce:abstract-sec, ce:acknowledgment, ce:bibliography, ce:bibliography-sec, ce:def-list, ce:enunciation, ce:exam-answers, ce:exam-questions, ce:further-reading, ce:further-reading-sec, ce:glossary, ce:glossary-sec, ce:index, ce:index-sec, ce:keywords, ce:list, ce:nomenclature, ce:section, objectives** in the Elsevier Book DTD, and **issue-sec** in the Serials Issue DTD.

The attribute **role** allows one to handle section titles differently. Currently only the role **etoc-only** is defined. It is used to indicate that the title is meant only for the electronic version of the item. For instance, an introduction without a title in print can have a bookmark in the PDF or eBook version. The current document contains bookmarks of the form “a...” in the PDF version, which add a useful layer to the navigation.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called **st**. Attribute **role** was added in CEP 1.5.0. Also, entity **%math;** was added to **%nondisplay.data;**.
ce:see

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:see ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:see refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:see ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:see refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Description

Within indexes, cross-references of the “see” type are captured with the `ce:see` element.

Usage

In indexes one is often referred to another, preferred, term. This is common in subject indexes. It is done with the `ce:see` element which is a specialized version of the `ce:cross-ref` element. Note that the content of `ce:see` need not be the same as the content of the heading in the referred `ce:index-entry`.

XML

```xml
<ce:index-entry id="idx197">
  <ce:index-heading>Peyrone's salt</ce:index-heading>
  <ce:index-entry id="idx198">
    <ce:index-heading>configuration</ce:index-heading>
    <ce:intra-ref id="intraref246" xlink:href="pii:B008043076701001">17</ce:intra-ref>
  </ce:index-entry>
  <ce:index-entry id="idx199">
    <ce:index-heading>history</ce:index-heading>
    <ce:intra-ref id="intraref247" xlink:href="pii:B008043076701001">3</ce:intra-ref>
  </ce:index-entry>
</ce:index-entry>
```

Presentation

Peyrone's salt
configuration, 17
history, 3

Platosemidiammine chloride — see Peyrone's salt

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
See also

See also
ce:see-also

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:see-also ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:see-also
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:see-also ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:see-also
  refid IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

Description

Within indexes, cross-references of the “see also” type are captured with the `ce:see-also` element.

Usage

In indexes one is often referred to another, related, term. This is common in subject indexes. It is done with the `ce:see-also` element which is a specialized version of the `ce:cross-ref` element. Note that the content of `ce:see-also` need not be the same as the content of the heading in the referred `ce:index-entry`.

```xml
<ce:index-entry id="idx14">
  <ce:index-heading>axiomatizability</ce:index-heading>
  <ce:intra-ref id="intraref19"
    xlink:href="pii:B0444880747002016">1021</ce:intra-ref>
  <ce:see-also refid="idx68">deductive systems</ce:see-also>
</ce:index-entry>
...
<ce:index-entry id="idx68">
  <ce:index-heading>deductive system</ce:index-heading>
  <ce:intra-ref id="intraref174"
    xlink:href="pii:B0444880747002016">891</ce:intra-ref>
  <ce:intra-ref id="intraref175"
    xlink:href="pii:B0444880747002016">820</ce:intra-ref>
  <ce:index-entry id="idx69">
    <ce:index-heading>for `<ce:italic>DL</ce:italic>`</ce:index-heading>
    <ce:intra-ref id="intraref176"
      xlink:href="pii:B0444880747002016">1040</ce:intra-ref>
  </ce:index-entry>
</ce:index-entry>
```
Presentation

axiomatizability (see also deductive systems) 1021
equational 261

... 
deductive system 891
for DL 820
for Temporal Logic 1040

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

c:see
ce:short-title

Declaration

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:short-title ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:short-title
    id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:short-title` contains a shortened title of an article.

Usage

The element `ce:short-title` is used to capture a short version of the title. The short version can for instance be used in the table of contents of an issue.

```xml
<head>
    <ce:title id="title0010">
        Efficacy and safety of sirukumab in patients with active rheumatoid arthritis refractory to anti-TNF therapy (SIRROUND-T): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group, multinational, phase 3 study
    </ce:title>
</head>

<ce:short-title id="stitle0010">
    Efficacy and safety of sirukumab in patients with active rheumatoid arthritis
</ce:short-title>

...
```

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.6.0.
ce:simple-para

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.4)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:simple-para ( %spar.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:simple-para
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.1.5–1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:simple-para ( %spar.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:simple-para
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:simple-para ( %spar.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:simple-para
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED
 view %view; 'all'>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:simple-para` is used to capture paragraphs without floats.

**Usage**

A simple paragraph, `ce:simple-para`, belongs to the lowest-level structuring elements. It contains text and objects structured with the elements in `%spar.data`; and differs from the full paragraph `ce:para` in that it cannot contain any floating objects, i.e. no `ce:float-anchor`.

The attribute `id` can be used to cross-reference to the paragraph.

The attribute `role` allows one to categorize simple paragraphs, and attach a special meaning to them. For instance, it makes it possible to mark a simple paragraph as a “caption”, and handle it in a different way than an ordinary paragraph. Applications should treat roles unknown to them as ordinary simple paragraphs. The role must belong to a list validated by the XML validation tools. The following roles are defined.

- **caption** is used to mark paragraphs of a caption that make up the caption proper and provide a description of the figure or table. It should only be used for simple paragraphs in the element `ce:caption`. Some publications distinguish the paragraphs with this `role` value from those with `role=key`, and may print them, e.g., in boldface.
- **key** is used to mark paragraphs of a caption that contain information about the keys and symbols used in the figure or table. It should only be used for simple paragraphs in the element `ce:caption`. Some publications distinguish the paragraphs with this `role` value from those with `role=caption`.

438 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
• **link-pane** is used in paragraphs of a figure caption and enables special treatment of the figure.
• **no-licence** is used in paragraphs of a figure caption and indicates that rights were not granted to include the figure in electronic media. This is used mainly in books.
• **source** is used to mark the last paragraph of a **ce:displayed-quote** as the source.
• **title** is used to mark the first paragraph of a caption (of a figure, table or textbox) as the title.

Items can appear in compact, standard and extended **views**. The attribute **view** is used to indicate in which views the paragraph must appear. Its default is to appear in all views. See also the section **Views** (p. 193).

The fact that simple paragraphs cannot contain floating objects, does not mean that they cannot contain cross-references to floating objects. For instance, if the only place where “Fig. 3” is referenced is in the caption of Fig. 2 — a simple paragraph context — then that caption contains the cross-references but the float anchor of Fig. 3 appears next to the float anchor of Fig. 2.

**Version history**

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %spar.data;.

**See also**

*ce:note-para*, *ce:para*
ce:small-caps

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:small-caps (%richstring.data; )>>

Description

The element ce:small-caps is a font changing element (p. 184). It is used to obtain small caps.

Usage

To obtain small caps, use lowercase letters within ce:small-caps. Uppercase letters in this font may or may not be identical to uppercase letters of the surrounding font.

XML
<ce:small-caps>This text is in Small Caps</ce:small-caps>.

Presentation
THIS TEXT IS IN SMALL CAPS.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called scp.

See also

For more information see the section on text effects (p. 184). See also ce:bold, ce:cross-out, ce:italic, ce:monospace, ce:sans-serif, ce:underline.
ce:source

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.3, 1.1.4)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:source ( %note.data; )*>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:source ( %note.data; )*>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:source ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:source
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:source ( %note.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:source
 id ID #IMPLIED
 role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:source` is available to capture the source of an item.

Usage

The element `ce:source` is used to describe the source of a `ce:e-component`, a `ce:figure`, a `ce:table`, or a `ce:textbox`.

```xml
<ce:textbox id="tb4-6">
  <ce:label>Box 4-6</ce:label>
  <ce:textbox-body>
    ...
  </ce:textbox-body>
</ce:textbox>
```

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.1.3. In CEP 1.1.5 elements `ce:anchor`, `ce:grant-sponsor` and `ce:grant-number` were added to parameter entity `%note.data;`. The `id` and `role` attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%note.data;`. 
ce:source-text

Declaration

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:source-text ( %string.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:source-text
  id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Description

The element `ce:source-text` contains the original text for an element.

Usage

The element `ce:source-text` is used to capture the original text. It is used in the models of `ce:affiliation` and `ce:bib-reference`.

Version history

This element was introduced in CEP 1.6.0.

See also

`ce:affiliation, ce:bib-reference`
ce:stereochem

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

<!ELEMENT ce:stereochem (ce:compound-struct, (ce:compound-formula | (ce:compound-name, ce:compound-formula?)), ce:compound-info)>

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:stereochem (ce:compound-struct, (ce:compound-formula | (ce:compound-name, ce:compound-formula?)), ce:compound-info)>

<!ATTLIST ce:stereochem id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
view %view; 'all'>

Description

A stereochemistry abstract contains the following details of a chemical compound: structure, name, formula, and all available stereochemical information. For each important chemical compound mentioned in a document, the element ce:stereochem provides a way to capture it.

Usage

The element ce:stereochem contains four subelements, corresponding to each of the parts of a stereochemistry abstract.

The first is ce:compound-struct, which contains a ce:link to a picture showing the chemical structure. The second is the optional ce:compound-name, which contains the compound’s name. The third is the optional ce:compound-formula, giving the formula. At least one of these latter two elements should be present. The fourth is ce:compound-info, containing one or more ce:list-item elements with additional stereochemical information.

XML

```xml
<ce:stereochem id="sc1">
  <ce:compound-struct>
    <ce:link locator="fx7" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4"
      xlink:href="pii:S2214181215000312/fx1"/>
    </ce:compound-struct>
    <ce:compound-name><ce:italic>S</ce:italic>-2-⌣⌣<ce:italic>t</ce:italic>-Butyldimethylsilylpent-4-enal
    </ce:compound-name>
    <ce:compound-formula>C<ce:inf>12</ce:inf>H<ce:inf>22</ce:inf>OSi
    </ce:compound-formula>
    <ce:compound-info>
    </ce:compound-info>
</ce:stereochem>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family

443
E.e. $\geq$ 95%

Source of chirality: Sharpless AE

Absolute configuration: [Italic]S[/Italic]

Rendering notes

The stereochemistry abstracts, whose nature is much like keywords, are part of the front-matter, even though they may appear elsewhere in the paper publication. For online applications, the intended usage is to collect the stereochemistry abstracts (e.g., per publication) from the articles and to display them together.
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**Version history**

The `id`, `role` and `view` attributes were added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:subtitle

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:subtitle id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:subtitle ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:subtitle id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:subtitle` contains the subtitle of an article, chapter, or other item.

Usage

The element `ce:subtitle` is used to capture the subtitle of an item, e.g. a journal article or book chapter. Parts of the title that form an integral part of the title, e.g. separated from the first part by a colon or an em-dash, are not subtitles. Tables of content tend not to contain subtitles.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:title id="t1">The monadic second-order logic of graphs, Part IX: Hierarchical decompositions of directed graphs</ce:title>
```

**Explanation**

Here it is not appropriate to make a division in title and subtitle, because the name of part IX is an integral part of the title.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:title id="t1">Hierarchical decompositions of directed graphs</ce:title>
<ce:subtitle id="st1">Part IX in a series of papers devoted to monadic second-order logic of graphs</ce:subtitle>
```

Version history

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, the element `sbt` fulfilled the function of both `ce:subtitle` and `ce:alt-subtitle`; the language was specified in the parent `atl` element. Attribute `id` was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textfn.data;`.

See also

`ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle, ce:title`
**ce:suffix**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:suffix ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

A suffix of the author name, e.g. junior or senior, is captured using `ce:suffix`.

**Usage**

A name suffix, mostly denoting a generation, such as “Junior” or “Senior”, is tagged with `ce:suffix`.

```xml
<ce:given-name>Sammy</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Davis</ce:surname>
<ce:suffix>Sr.</ce:suffix>
```

```xml
<ce:given-name>Henry</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Ford</ce:surname>
<ce:suffix>III</ce:suffix>
```

**Version history**

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called `jr`.

**See also**

`ce:author, ce:degrees, ce:given-name, ce:roles, ce:surname`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

**ce:sup**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:sup ( %richstring.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:sup
  loc %loc; "post">
```

**Description**

Superscripts are captured using `ce:sup`.

**Usage**

Superscripts (superior text) are captured using `ce:sup`.

The optional attribute `loc` can have the values `pre` and `post`, the latter is equivalent to omitting the attribute altogether. If `loc` is equal to `pre` this is to signify that the element belongs to the subsequent object.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:sup loc="pre">238</ce:sup><ce:inf loc="pre">92</ce:inf>U
```

**Presentation**

\[238{\text{sup}}92{\text{inf}}U\]

By default, a super- and subscript appearing at one object will be displayed stacked, i.e. above each other. Staggered super- and subscripts (for example, \(R_{i,j}^{k}\)) can only be used in **math mode**.

**See also**

`ce:inf`
ce:surname

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:surname ( %text.data; )*>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:surname ( %text.data; )*>
```

Description

The surname of an author or editor is captured using `ce:surname`.

Usage

Together with the element `ce:given-name`, `ce:surname` forms the name of authors or editors.

```xml
<ce:given-name>Franklin D.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Roosevelt</ce:surname>
```

Especially for non-Western persons, it is not always clear or known what the given name and the surname is. In some regions of the world, it is even not uncommon to have just one name. In such cases, `ce:surname` may contain the full name of the person.

```xml
<ce:author id="au3"
  author-id="S9999999416903246-93228764e09de259f1702a7bf42cff26"
  ><ce:surname>Ho Chi Minh</ce:surname></ce:author>
```

If the author or editor (especially of a work in the bibliographic reference list) is not a person but an institution or corporation, the name is also tagged using `ce:surname`. (This should not be confused with a collaboration, `ce:collaboration`.)

```xml
<ce:surname>National Board of Safety</ce:surname>
```

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

See also

`ce:author`
Chapter 8 – The Elements of the CEP

ce:table

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:table
  frame ( top|bottom|topbot|all|sides|none ) #IMPLIED
  colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  rovsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %CALS.xmlns;
  xmlns:tb CDATA #FIXED %ESTB.xmlns;>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:table ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ( %copyright; )?, ( tgroup | ce:link )+, ce:legend?, ce:table-footnote* )>
<!ATTLIST ce:table
  frame ( top|bottom|topbot|all|sides|none ) #IMPLIED
  colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  rovsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %CALS.xmlns;
  xmlns:tb CDATA #FIXED %ESTB.xmlns;>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.3–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:table
  frame ( top|bottom|topbot|all|sides|none ) #IMPLIED
  colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  rovsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  id ID #IMPLIED
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED %CALS.xmlns;
  xmlns:tb CDATA #FIXED %ESTB.xmlns;>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.6)

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:table
  frame ( top|bottom|topbot|all|sides|none ) #IMPLIED
  colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  rovsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
  id ID #IMPLIED
```

450 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
A table is captured with `<ce:table>`.

**Usage**

Aligning text in rows and columns is done using tables. The element `<ce:table>` is used to capture a table. Two kinds of tables are distinguished: displayed tables and floating tables.

Displayed tables are contained within the container element `<ce:display>`. They appear, surrounded by some white space, where they are mentioned in the text.

Floating tables are grouped, together with the other floating objects such as figures, in a `<ce:floats>` container at the beginning of the document. Floating tables must be referred to from within the text using a `<ce:cross-ref>` or a `<ce:cross-refs>` and a `<ce:float-anchor>` is used to indicated the position near to which the floating table must appear. So, each floating table is referenced by at least one cross-reference and exactly one float anchor.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:cross-ref id="crs11" refid="tbl1 tbl2 tbl3">Tables 1–3</ce:cross-ref>
<ce:float-anchor refid="tbl1"/>
<ce:float-anchor refid="tbl2"/>
<ce:float-anchor refid="tbl3"/>
```
A table begins with a `ce:label` (mandatory for floating tables) and an optional `ce:caption` with a description of the table. There can be multiple captions for different languages and/or roles; each caption must have a different role or language.

Optional subelements `ce:alt-text` can be used to capture alternative descriptions of the table. Possible values for the `role` attribute are `short` for a short description (30 words or less) and `long` for a long description. Different alternative texts must have a different role.

The optional `ce:source` element is used to describe the source of the table. The optional `ce:copyright` element is used if the copyright owner of the table differs from the copyright owner of the document.

The optional `ce:keywords` subelements are used to capture keywords for the table. They can be different from the keywords of the item. Normally these are not rendered but are used to improve searching and annotation. The same constraints as for the item keywords apply (e.g., allowed class values, nesting).

The actual table is contained in `tgroup` elements, and/or is delivered as images, `ce:link`. The `tgroup` contains an extended CALS table, described in more detail in Chapter 12.

Below the tabular content the legend, `ce:legend`, and table footnotes, `ce:table-footnote`, are found.

**Version history**

The subelement `ce:copyright` was introduced in CEP 1.1.2. At the same time, the caption was made repeatable. Subelement `ce:source` was introduced in CEP 1.1.3.

The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6, and subelement `ce:keywords` in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.4.0 the subelement `ce:alt-text` was introduced.

**See also**

For more information, see Chapter 12.
ce:table-footnote

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.5)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:table-footnote ( ce:label, ce:note-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:table-footnote
  id ID #REQUIRED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.6–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:table-footnote ( ce:label, ce:note-para+ )>
<!ATTLIST ce:table-footnote
  id ID #REQUIRED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

A table footnote is a footnote referenced and displayed within a table, and coded with `ce:table-footnote`.

Usage

The element `ce:table-footnote` occurs zero or more times at the end of `ce:table`, after the optional `ce:legend` and contains the table footnotes.

The first subelement of `ce:table-footnote` is a mandatory `ce:label` element. It contains the symbol of the table footnote with implied presentation style, i.e., if the style of the footnote symbol is a superior letter, the `ce:label` contains only the letter.

The text of the table footnote is contained in one or more note paragraphs, `ce:note-para`.

There must always be a cross-reference to a table footnote. Note that it is not allowed to cross-reference to a table footnote from outside the table in which the table footnote appears.

A table footnote should not be confused with a `ce:legend`.

Version history

The `role` attribute was added in CEP 1.1.6.
ce:text

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:text ( %text.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:text
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:text ( %textlink.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:text
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:text ( %textlink.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:text
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:text` is a container element for text.

Usage

Various elements contain `ce:text` as a general container for text with content model `%textlink.data;`. The exact content of `%textlink.data;` is described in the section on Parameter entities (p. 187).

Version history

In CEP 1.4.0 the model of `ce:text` was changed to `%textlink.data;`. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textlink.data;`.

See also

`ce:textfn, ce:textref`
ce:textbox

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.1)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption?, ce:copyright?,
                     ce:textbox-head?, ce:textbox-body,
                     ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.1.2)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ( %copyright; )?,
                     ce:textbox-head?,
                     ce:textbox-body, ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.1.3–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
                     ( %copyright; )?, ce:textbox-head?,
                     ce:textbox-body, ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.2.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
                     ( %copyright; )?, ce:keywords*,
                     ce:textbox-head?,
                     ce:textbox-body, ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.4.0, 1.5.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:alt-text*,
                     ce:source?, ( %copyright; )?,
                     ce:keywords*, ce:textbox-head?,
                     ce:textbox-body, ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEP 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:alt-text*,
                     ce:source?, ( %copyright; )?,
                     ce:keywords*, ce:legend?, ce:textbox-head?,
                     ce:textbox-body, ce:textbox-tail? )>
<!ATTLIST ce:textbox
  id ID    #IMPLIED
  role CDATA #IMPLIED>
```
Description

A textbox (in this context written as one word) is an object similar to a figure, but rather than a graphic it contains typeset material, which could be regarded as a small document in its own right, sometimes displayed with a coloured background. The element \texttt{ce:textbox} is provided for this purpose.

Usage

The element \texttt{ce:textbox} can be used in a variety of ways. Similar to \texttt{ce:figure} it is embedded within \texttt{ce:display} or \texttt{ce:floats}. A displayed textbox appears in the text at the position where it is used, separated from the surrounding text with white space. A floating textbox, collected among the floats in \texttt{ce:floats} appears in the text near the point where a \texttt{ce:float-anchor}, pointing to the textbox, is placed.

The name of the textbox, e.g. “Box II”, is contained in the subelement \texttt{ce:label}. The \texttt{ce:caption} contains one or more paragraphs, \texttt{ce:paragraph} of descriptive text. There can be multiple captions, for different languages and/or roles; each caption must have a different role or language.

Optional subelements \texttt{ce:alt-text} can be used to capture alternative descriptions of the textbox. Possible values for the \texttt{role} attribute are \texttt{short} for a short description (30 words or less) and \texttt{long} for a long description. Different alternative texts must have a different role.

The optional subelement \texttt{ce:source} is used to describe the source of the figure. The optional subelement \texttt{ce:copyright} can be used if the copyright of the textbox differs from the copyright of the document in which it is embedded.

The optional \texttt{ce:keywords} subelements are used to capture keywords for the textbox. They can be different from the keywords of the item. Normally these are not rendered but are used to improve searching and annotation. The same constraints as for the item keywords apply (e.g., allowed class values, nesting).

An optional \texttt{ce:legend} can contain a legend for the textbox.

A \texttt{ce:textbox} has an \texttt{id} attribute, so that it can be (but does not have to be) referred to using \texttt{ce:cross-ref} or \texttt{ce:cross-refs} (or from a foreign document). A floating textbox must have exactly one \texttt{ce:float-anchor} referring to it. (With one exception, see the description of \texttt{ce:float-anchor}.)

The structure of a textbox is an optional head (\texttt{ce:textbox-head}), a body (\texttt{ce:textbox-body}) and an optional tail (\texttt{ce:textbox-tail}). Simple textboxes will typically only have a body, but more elaborate textboxes with their own author names and bibliographic references exist also. Since the variety in textboxes is large, it contains many optional subelements.

The head, \texttt{ce:textbox-head}, begins with a titles sequence containing a title, \texttt{ce:title} and a subtitle, \texttt{ce:subtitle}, followed by possible combinations of titles and subtitles in an alternative language (\texttt{ce:alt-title}, \texttt{ce:alt-subtitle}). A sequence of author groups, \texttt{ce:author-group}, and an introductory section, \texttt{ce:intro}, complete the head.

The body of a textbox may contain paragraphs and sections within a \texttt{ce:sections} container and an acknowledgment (\texttt{ce:acknowledgment}), and ends with \texttt{ce:appendices}. 
The tail of a textbox may contain a bibliography (ce:bibliography), a further-reading section (ce:further-reading), a glossary (ce:glossary), and biographies of the authors (ce:biography).

Note that an elaborate textbox itself resembles a small article. It may well contain its own figures and tables.

The following values for ce:textbox’s attribute role are defined:

- alt0, alt1, ..., alt25 are “anonymous” roles which are defined externally.
- altm0, altm1, ..., altm25 are “anonymous” roles meant for textboxes that appear in the margin.
- cme is used to mark a textbox with CME (Continuing Medical Education) information enabling special rendering.
- e-extra is used to mark a textbox as “electronic extra”.
- pull-quote, for capturing pull quotes, i.e., sentences or phrases excerpted from the main text, often set in large type, used to break up running text and draw the reader’s attention.

Furthermore, the following semantic values are defined for use in books:

- alert
- case-study
- coding
- definition
- drugs
- ethics
- evidence-based
- exercise
- focus
- guideline
- health-care
- key-term
- medical-topic
- note
- pearl
- practice
- procedure
- q-and-a
- review
- safety
- skill
- teaching
- technical
- tip
- web

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, elaborate textboxes were separate SGML instances, declared as SUBDOC in the main file. Such textboxes were called linked textboxes.

As from CEP 1.1.2, the caption is repeatable. Parameter entity %copyright; was introduced as well. Subelement ce:source was introduced in CEP 1.1.3, while ce:keywords
was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.4.0 the subelement `<ce:alt-text>` was introduced. In CEP 1.6.0 the subelement `<ce:legend>` was added.

**Light reading**

No floating textboxes may be used in CONTENTS-ENTRY-ONLY, HEAD-ONLY or HEAD-AND-TAIL files.

**See also**

`<ce:display>, <ce:float-anchor>, <ce:floats>, <ce:textbox-body>, <ce:textbox-head>, <ce:textbox-tail>`
ce:textbox-body

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT ce:textbox-body ( ce:sections, ce:acknowledgment?,
                           ce:appendices? )>

Description

The element ce:textbox-body contains the body of a textbox, with a number of sections, an acknowledgment and appendices.

Usage

See ce:textbox.
ce:textbox-head

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
```

Description

The element ce:textbox-head contains the head of a textbox. It may contain titles and author names, and an introduction.

Usage

See ce:textbox.
**ce:textbox-tail**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textbox-tail ( ce:bibliography?, ce:further-reading?,
                          ce:glossary?, ce:biography* )>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:textbox-tail` contains the tail of a textbox, with a bibliography, a further-reading section, a glossary and biographies.

**Usage**

See `ce:textbox`.

**Version history**

Optional subelements `ce:glossary` and `ce:biography` were introduced in CEP 1.1.1.
ce:textfn

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textfn ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:textfn
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textfn ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:textfn
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

Description

The element `ce:textfn` is a container element for text.

Usage

Various elements contain `ce:textfn` as a general container for text with content model `%textfn.data;`. The exact content of `%textfn.data;` is described in the section on Parameter entities (p. 187).

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textfn.data;`.

See also

`ce:text, ce:textref`
### ce:textref

#### Declaration

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textref ( %textref.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:textref
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:textref ( %textref.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:textref
  id ID #IMPLIED>
```

#### Description

The element `ce:textref` is a container element for text.

#### Usage

Various elements contain `ce:textref` as a general container for text with content model `%textref.data;`. The exact content of `%textref.data;` is described in the section on Parameter entities (p. 187).

#### Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textref.data;`.

#### See also

`ce:text, ce:textfn`
**ce:title**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:title ( %textfn.data; )*>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:title ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:title
id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:title ( %textfn.data; )*>
<!ATTLIST ce:title
id ID #IMPLIED>
```

**Description**

The element `ce:title` contains the title of an article, chapter, or other item.

**Usage**

The element `ce:title` is used to capture the title of an item, e.g. a journal article or book chapter.

```xml
<ce:title id="t1">Tag by Tag</ce:title>
```

**Version history**

In DTDs prior to DTD 5.0, the element `atl` fulfilled the function of both `ce:title` and `ce:alt-title`; moreover, it contained the subtitle within it. Attribute `id` was added in CEP 1.2.0. In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%textfn.data;`.

**See also**

`ce:alt-title, ce:alt-subtitle, ce:subtitle`
ce:underline

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT ce:underline (%richstring.data; )>

Description

The element ce:underline is related to the font changing elements (p. 184). It is used to obtain underlined text.

Usage

To obtain underlined text, use ce:underline.

XML
   <ce:underline>This text is underlined</ce:underline>.

Presentation
   This text is underlined.

See also

For more information see the section on text effects (p. 184). See also ce:bold, ce:cross-out, ce:italic, ce:monospace, ce:sans-serif.
ce:vsp

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:vsp EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ce:vsp
  sp NMTOKEN "1.0">
```

Description

The element `ce:vsp` is used to create explicit vertical space.

Usage

If the need arises to indicate explicit vertical spacing, `ce:vsp` can be used. It has one attribute, `sp`, which determines the amount of vertical space is to be inserted, measured as a multiple of the baseline-to-baseline distance, default `1.0`. It is a non-negative floating number.

If `<ce:vsp sp="1.5">` occurs in the running text, this should be displayed as follows: move down by 1.5 “baseline skip” and do not start a new line. However, if it is immediately followed by a `<ce:para>`, `<ce:note-para>` or `<ce:simple-para>` tag, the next paragraph is not indented.

**XML**

```xml
Text1<ce:vsp/>Text2
```

**Presentation**

Text1

Text2

**XML**

```xml
Text1<ce:vsp sp="2.0"/><ce:para id="p2">Text2
```

**Presentation**

Text1


Text2

**XML**

```xml
Text1<ce:para id="p3"><ce:vsp sp="2.0"/>Text2
```

**Presentation**

Text1


Text2

It is not allowed to use `ce:vsp` for creating built-up structures.
Structured affiliations

This chapter contains a listing of the DTD fragment for structured affiliations. This fragment also belongs to the common element pool (CEP 1.2), but its elements have been assigned to a separate namespace, http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/struct-aff/dtd.

**sa:affiliation**

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ATTLIST sa:affiliation xmlns:sa CDATA #FIXED %ESSA.xmlns;>
```

The main element is **sa:affiliation**. It contains the affiliation of an author or collaboration (**ce:affiliation/ce:textfn**), broken down into parts. It is also used to structure (part of) the correspondence information. The element may not have empty content even though all its subelements are optional.

**sa:organization**

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sa:organization (%richstring.data; )*> 
```

**sa:organization** contains the name of the organization that is part of the affiliation. It can appear multiple times.

**sa:address-line**

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sa:address-line (%text.data; )*> 
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sa:address-line (%text.data; )*> 
```

The **sa:address-line** elements contain the address parts of an affiliation, a city district, a street, P.O. Box, etc.

**sa:city**

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sa:city (%text.data; )*> 
```
Chapter 9 – Structured affiliations

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:city ( %text.data; )*>  
Within the affiliation, the city name is contained within sa:city. The word “city” is used here in a “postal” sense, in that it can also mean a village, an air force base, a ship, etc.

sa:state

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:state ( %text.data; )*>  
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:state ( %text.data; )*>  

sa:state contains the state name within an affiliation. This can be an American state, but also a Canadian province, an English county, etc.

sa:postal-code

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:postal-code ( %string.data; )*>  

sa:postal-code contains the postal code of the address. To find out where the postal code must be displayed with respect to city and/or country other sources must be consulted.

sa:country

Model (CEPs 1.2.0, 1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:country ( %text.data; )*>  
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sa:country ( %text.data; )*>  

Within the affiliation, the country name is contained within sa:country.

XML
<ce:affiliation id="aff1">
<ce:textfn>University of Exeter Business School, Streatham Court, Streatham Campus, University of Exeter, Exeter EX4 4ST, Devon, UK</ce:textfn>
<sa:affiliation>
<sa:organization>University of Exeter Business School</sa:organization>
<sa:address-line>Streatham Court</sa:address-line>
<sa:address-line>Streatham Campus</sa:address-line>
<sa:address-line>University of Exeter</sa:address-line>
<sa:city>Exeter</sa:city>
<sa:state>Devon</sa:state>
<sa:postal-code>EX4 4ST</sa:postal-code>
<sa:country>UK</sa:country>
</sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>

XML
Chapter 9 – Structured affiliations

<ce:affiliation id="aff2">
  <ce:textfn>NCTS (Taipei Office), 6th Floor, Astronomy Mathematics Building, No. 1, Roosevelt Rd. Sec. 4, Taipei, 10617, Taiwan</ce:textfn>
  <sa:affiliation>
    <sa:organization>NCTS (Taipei Office)</sa:organization>
    <sa:address-line>6th Floor</sa:address-line>
    <sa:address-line>Astronomy Mathematics Building, No. 1</sa:address-line>
    <sa:address-line>Roosevelt Rd. Sec. 4</sa:address-line>
    <sa:city>Taipei</sa:city>
    <sa:postal-code>10617</sa:postal-code>
    <sa:country>Taiwan</sa:country>
  </sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>

<ce:affiliation id="aff3">
  <ce:textfn>Dip. di Matematica "F. Enriques" - Università degli Studi di Milano, Via Saldini 50 - 20133 Milano, Italy</ce:textfn>
  <sa:affiliation>
    <sa:organization>Dip. di Matematica "F. Enriques"</sa:organization>
    <sa:organization>Università degli Studi di Milano</sa:organization>
    <sa:address-line>Via Saldini 50</sa:address-line>
    <sa:city>Milano</sa:city>
    <sa:postal-code>20133</sa:postal-code>
    <sa:country>Italy</sa:country>
  </sa:affiliation>
</ce:affiliation>

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.
Chapter 10

Structured bibliographic references

This chapter contains an alphabetic listing of the DTD fragment for structured bibliographic references. This fragment also belongs to the common element pool (CEP 1.2), but its elements have been assigned to a separate namespace. This makes it possible, for instance, that the structure of an author name in a bibliographic reference differs from that in the head of an article: The elements \texttt{ce:author} and \texttt{sb:author} both exist.

The first section of this chapter contains extensive examples of various types of references and their XML coding. It is followed by detailed descriptions of each of the elements.
Bibliographic references — Examples

The fragment of the DTD related to bibliographic references is quite extensive. In this section, structured references are illustrated in the form of examples. The rendering given in the examples does not necessarily follow one of the standard presentations for bibliographic references.

The top-level element for a structured bibliographic reference is `sb:reference`. It uses concepts of “contributions” that appear in one or more “hosts”. Four types of hosts exist: issue, book, edited book and electronic host.

Examples of structured references

The examples in this section are ordered by the type of host.

1. `sb:issue` as `sb:host`
2. `sb:book` as `sb:host`
3. `sb:edited-book` as `sb:host`
4. `sb:e-host` as `sb:host`, and other hosts on the web
Some examples demonstrate additional features.

- Non-English journal article, with an English `sb:translated-title` (Example 4)
- Book originally published in another language, with a translator (Example 7)
- Multiple hosts (Example 9, Example 14, Example 16)
- `sb:book-series` element (Example 12, Example 13)
- A book series published over a period of several years (Example 13)
- Publications on the web other than preprints (Example 15)
- `sb:comment` element (Example 3, Example 7, Example 16)
- `ce:note` element (Example 16)
- A data citation (Example 17)

1. `sb:issue` as `sb:host`


1. Simple journal article, two authors et al., paginated by issue.

Presentation


XML

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref1">
  <ce:label>[1]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr01">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>A.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Paivio</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>L.J.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Becker</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:author>
    </sb:contribution>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

Bibliographic references — Examples

2. An article in a journal supplement, only first page given. The fact that it is a supplement can in this example be seen from the `sb:issue-nr`. Otherwise, there is no difference with an article in a normal issue.

*Presentation*


*XML*

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref2">
  <sb:reference id="sbr02">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>S.</ce:given-name> <ce:surname>Koczkas</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>G.</ce:given-name> <ce:surname>Holmberg</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>L.</ce:given-name> <ce:surname>Wedin</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>
        <sb:maintitle>Comparisons through the mind's eye</sb:maintitle>
      </sb:title>
      <sb:host>
        <sb:issue>
          <sb:series>
            <sb:title>Cognition</sb:title>
          </sb:series>
          <sb:volume-nr>37</sb:volume-nr>
          <sb:issue-nr>2</sb:issue-nr>
          <sb:date>1975</sb:date>
        </sb:issue>
        <sb:pages>
          <sb:first-page>635</sb:first-page>
          <sb:last-page>647</sb:last-page>
        </sb:pages>
      </sb:host>
    </sb:reference>
  </ce:bib-reference>
```
3. Entire issue of a journal. In addition to the \textit{sb:title} in the \textit{sb:series} (the journal title), the issue of this example has a title and (guest) editors of its own. The additional text '(special issue)' is tagged as a comment.

This example is typical for special issues.

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:bib-reference id="ref3">
  <ce:label>[3]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr03">
    <sb:host>
      <sb:issue>
        <sb:editors>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>R.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Glaser</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>L.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Bond</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
        </sb:editors>
        <sb:title>Testing: concepts and research</sb:title>
      </sb:issue>
      <sb:title>Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica</sb:title>
      <sb:volume-nr>63</sb:volume-nr>
      <sb:issue-nr>Suppl. 290</sb:issue-nr>
      <sb:date>1981</sb:date>
      <sb:pages><sb:first-page>328</sb:first-page></sb:pages>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
\end{verbatim}
4. Non-English journal article, with an English \textit{sb:translated-title}. In this example, the language of the article is known and is specified in the xml:lang attribute of the \textit{sb:contribution}.

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

<ce:bib-reference id="ref4">
<sb:reference id="sbr04">
<sb:contribution lang-type="iso" xml:lang="nl">
<sb:authors>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>E.M.H.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Assink</ce:surname>
</sb:author>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>N.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Verloop</ce:surname>
</sb:author>
</sb:authors>
<sb:title>Het aanleren van deel–geheel relaties</sb:title>
<sb:translated-title>Teaching part–whole relations</sb:translated-title>
</sb:contribution>
<sb:host>
<sb:issue>
<sb:series>
<sb:title>Pedagogische Studiën</sb:title>
</sb:series>
<sb:volume-nr>54</sb:volume-nr>
</sb:issue>
<sb:date>1977</sb:date>
</sb:host>
<sb:pages>
<sb:first-page>130</sb:first-page>
<sb:last-page>142</sb:last-page>
</sb:pages>
</sb:reference>
2. \textit{sb:book} as \textit{sb:host}

An \textit{sb:book} element contains at least an \textit{sb:date}. The author names and the title can in virtually all cases be found in the \textit{sb:contribution}. Only when no author is given, is the \textit{sb:title} element in the \textit{sb:host} used.

5. Monograph. In this example, the \textit{sb:book} element contains, in addition to the \textit{sb:date}, the \textit{sb:edition} and the \textit{sb:publisher}.

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<cbib-reference id="ref5">
  <label>[5]</label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr05">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <given-name>W.</given-name><surname>Strunk</surname><suffix>Jr.</suffix>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <given-name>E.B.</given-name><surname>White</surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>The elements of style</sb:title>
    </sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:book>
        <edition>3rd ed.</edition><date>1979</date><publisher>
          <name>MacMillan</name><location>New York</location>
        </publisher>
      </sb:book>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</cbib-reference>
\end{verbatim}

6. Book without authors. The title is in the \textit{sb:host}.

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<cbib-reference id="ref6">
  <label>[6]</label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr06">
    <sb:host>
    </sb:host>
</cbib-reference>
\end{verbatim}
7. Book originally published in another language, with a translator. In this example the original title and the original language are not given.

**Presentation**


**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref7">
  <ce:label>[7]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr07">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>A.R.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Luria</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>
        <sb:maintitle>The mind of a mnemonist</sb:maintitle>
      </sb:title>
      <sb:comment>(L. Solotarof, Trans.)</sb:comment>
    </sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:book>
        <sb:date>1969</sb:date>
        <sb:publisher>
          <sb:name>Avon books</sb:name>
          <sb:location>New York</sb:location>
        </sb:publisher>
      </sb:book>
      <sb:comment>(Original work published 1965)</sb:comment>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```

3. **sb:edited-book as sb:host**

An **sb:edited-book** contains at least an **sb:date**. When the **sb:host** is an **sb:edited-book**, the **sb:contribution** usually is an article or a chapter in that book. In that case there is an **sb:title** in both the **sb:contribution** and the **sb:host**, much like an article in an **sb:issue**.

3. There is no separate element for translator.
8. Article or chapter in edited book.

*Presentation*


**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref8">
  <ce:label>[8]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr08">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>A.S.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Gurman</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>D.P.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Kniskern</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title><sb:maintitle>Family therapy outcome research: knowns and unknowns</sb:maintitle></sb:title>
      <sb:host><sb:edited-book>
        <sb:editors>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>A.S.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Gurman</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>D.P.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Kniskern</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
        </sb:editors>
        <sb:title><sb:maintitle>Handbook of family therapy</sb:maintitle></sb:title>
        <sb:date>1981</sb:date>
        <sb:publisher>Brunner/Mazel</sb:publisher>
        <sb:location>New York</sb:location>
      </sb:edited-book>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

Bibliographic references — Examples


Presentation


XML

<ce:bib-reference id="ref9">
  <ce:label>[9]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr09">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>C.E.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Sluzki</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>J.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Beavin</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>
        <sb:maintitle>Symmetry and complementarity</sb:maintitle>
      </sb:title>
    </sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:edited-book>
        <sb:editors>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>P.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Watzlawick</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>J.H.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Weakland</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
        </sb:editors>
        <sb:title>
          <sb:maintitle>The interactional view</sb:maintitle>
        </sb:title>
        <sb:date>1977</sb:date>
        <sb:publisher>
          <sb:name>Norton</sb:name>
          <sb:location>New York</sb:location>
        </sb:publisher>
      </sb:edited-book>
      <sb:pages>
        <sb:first-page>71</sb:first-page>
        <sb:last-page>87</sb:last-page>
      </sb:pages>
    </sb:host>
    <sb:comment>Reprinted from:</sb:comment>
  </sb:host>
</sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>

Presentation

XML
<ce:bib-reference id="ref10">
  <ce:label>[10]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr10">
    <sb:contribution>
      <sb:authors>
        <sb:author>
          <ce:given-name>T.E.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Chaddock</ce:surname>
        </sb:author>
      </sb:authors>
      <sb:title>Gastric emptying of a nutritionally balanced diet</sb:title>
    </sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:edited-book>
        <sb:editors>
          <ce:given-name>E.E.</ce:given-name>
          <ce:surname>Daniel</ce:surname>
        </sb:editors>
        <sb:title>Proceedings of the Fourth International Symposium on Gastrointestinal Motility</sb:title>
      </sb:edited-book>
      <sb:conference>ISGM4, 4–8 September 1973, Seattle, WA</sb:conference>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
11. Edited book. In this example the whole edited book is cited and therefore the element \texttt{sb:contribution} is absent.

\textit{Presentation}


\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:bib-reference id="ref11">
  <sb:reference id="sbr11">
    <sb:host>
      <sb:edited-book>
        <sb:editors>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>S.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Letheridge</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
          <sb:editor>
            <ce:given-name>C.R.</ce:given-name>
            <ce:surname>Cannon</ce:surname>
          </sb:editor>
        </sb:editors>
        <sb:title>Bilingual education</sb:title>
        <sb:date>1980</sb:date>
        <sb:publisher>Praeger</sb:publisher>
      </sb:edited-book>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
\end{verbatim}

12. A volume in a multi-volume edited work. The difference with a single-volume edited work, is the presence of an \texttt{sb:book-series} element. The \texttt{sb:book-series} contains an \texttt{sb:series} element and optionally the editors of the series. The \texttt{sb:series} element contains the series title and optionally the \texttt{sb:volume-nr}. The volume may have its own editors and title, as shown in this example.

13. A multi-volume edited work, publication over more than one year. In this example the whole series is cited; therefore the $sb$:contribution element is absent, and the $sb$:edited-book contains only elements that belong to the series: $sb$:book-series, $sb$:dates and an $sb$:publisher. The fact that the series was published over a period of several years, is expressed by the presence of multiple $sb$:dates.

Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

Bibliographic references — Examples


XML

<ce:bib-reference id="ref13">
<sb:reference id="sbr13">
<sb:host>
<sb:edited-book>
<sb:book-series>
<sb:editors>
<sb:editor>
<ce:given-name>J.G.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Wilson</ce:surname>
</sb:editor>
<sb:editor>
<ce:given-name>F.C.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Fraser</ce:surname>
</sb:editor>
</sb:editors>
</sb:series>
<sb:title>
<sb:maintitle>Handbook of teratology</sb:maintitle>
</sb:title>
<sb:volume-nr>Vols. 1&ndash;4</sb:volume-nr>
</sb:series>
</sb:book-series>
<sb:date>1977</sb:date>
<sb:date>1978</sb:date>
<sb:publisher>
<sb:name>Plenum Press</sb:name>
<sb:location>New York</sb:location>
</sb:publisher>
</sb:host>
</sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>

4. **sb:e-host as sb:host, and other hosts on the web**

An **sb:e-host** cannot at the same time be an **sb:issue**, **sb:book** or **sb:edited-book**. Therefore it is mainly used for articles on the web that do not belong to any of the other types of host, mostly for preprints. However, one of the examples below shows how a book can have an **sb:e-host** as one of its hosts.

**sb:e-host** is also used when the bibliographic reference is a data citation, see the last example.

14. An electronic host, **sb:e-host**, consists of a **ce:inter-ref** element and an optional **sb:date**. Formally, the **ce:inter-ref** is optional too, but in practice it is not.

In this example the **sb:e-host** contains the preprint, and the **sb:issue** contains the printed article. It also often occurs that the **sb:e-host** is the only host.

**Presentation**


XML
15. Article in proceedings, published on the web. In this example the host is a proceedings, hence an **sb:edited-book**, even though it is published solely on the web (or that is the only publication given). The **sb:title** of the **sb:contribution** contains a **ce:inter-ref** element with a link leading to a file for this specific article. In addition, the URL of the proceedings is tagged as an **ce:inter-ref** element in the **sb:title** of the **sb:host**.

**Presentation**


**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref15">
<ce:label>[15]</ce:label>
<sb:reference id="sbr15">
<sb:contribution>
<sb:authors>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>F.</ce:given-name>
</sb:author>
</sb:authors>
</sb:contribution>
</sb:host>
</ce:bib-reference>
```
16. Article with maximum usage of comments: an \texttt{sb:comment} before the \texttt{sb:contribution}, an \texttt{sb:comment} before each of the \texttt{sb:host}s, and an \texttt{sb:comment} after the last \texttt{sb:host}. It also has a \texttt{ce:note}.

\textit{Presentation}

[16] See the references in H.A. Buchdahl, The Concepts of Classical Thermodynamics, first published by Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1966, also available electronically as: The Concepts of Classical Thermodynamics (last updated 1999). This reference discusses the basic concepts in a very thorough manner. Its literature list is a main entry point into the discipline.

\textit{XML}

\begin{verbatim}
<ce:reference id="ref16"><ce:label>[16]</ce:label>
<sb:comment>See the references in</sb:comment>
<sb:contribution>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>H.A.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Buchdahl</ce:surname>
</sb:author>
</sb:authors>
<sb:title>
</sb:title>
</sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
\end{verbatim}
17. A data citation. Note the use of the linking role “research-data”.

**Presentation**


**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="ref17"><ce:label>[17]</ce:label>
<sb:reference id="sbr17">
<sb:contribution>
<sb:author>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>T.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Irino</ce:surname>
</sb:author>
<sb:author>
<ce:given-name>R.</ce:given-name>
<ce:surname>Tada</ce:surname>
</sb:author>
<sb:authors>
<ce:simple-para id="sp64">This reference discusses the basic concepts in a very thorough manner.</ce:simple-para>
<ce:simple-para id="sp65">Its literature list is a main entry point into the discipline.</ce:simple-para>
</sb:note>
</ce:bib-reference>
```
ODP Site 127-797
</sb:mainTitle>
</sb:title>
</sb:contribution>
</sb:host>
<sb:e-host>
<sb:publisher>
<sb:name>Geological Institute, University of Tokyo</sb:name>
</sb:publisher>
<ce:inter-ref id="interref1"
xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/research-data"
xlink:href="doi:10.1594/PANGAEA.726855">
https://doi.org/10.1594/PANGAEA.726855</ce:inter-ref>
</sb:date>2009</sb:date>
</sb:e-host>
</sb:host>
</sb:reference>
**sb:article-number**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:article-number ( %string.data; )*>
```

**Description**

The element `sb:article-number` is used to capture an “article number”.

**Usage**

An article number or ID that is mentioned in a reference can be captured with `sb:article-number`.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="br0120">
  <ce:label>[12]</ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbr13">
    <sb:contribution>...</sb:contribution>
    <sb:host>
      <sb:issue>
        <sb:series>
          <sb:volume-nr>90</sb:volume-nr>
        </sb:series>
        <sb:date>2003</sb:date>
      </sb:issue>
      <sb:article-number>194101</sb:article-number>
    </sb:host>
  </sb:reference>
</ce:bib-reference>
```

**Presentation**


**Version history**

This element was added in CEP 1.4.0.

**See also**

`ce:article-number`, `aid`
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

sb:author

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT sb:author (%name; )>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:author (%name; )>
<!ATTLIST sb:author orcid CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, author names are tagged using sb:author.

Usage

The element sb:author has %name; as its content model. That means that it contains a ce:surname and optionally a ce:given-name in any order, possibly followed by a ce:suffix and one or more ce:alt-names. For more details, see those elements.

Attribute orcid contains a unique identification of the author coming from a global author database: the ORCID (Open Research & Contributor ID).

XML

<sb:author>
  <ce:given-name>D.E.</ce:given-name>
  <ce:surname>Knuth</ce:surname>
</sb:author>

XML

<sb:author>
  <ce:surname>Liszt</ce:surname>
  <ce:given-name>Ferenc</ce:given-name>
</sb:author>

XML

<sb:author>
  <ce:surname>National Institute of Health</ce:surname>
</sb:author>

Version history

In CEP 1.2.0 the attribute orcid was added, while element ce:alt-name was added to parameter entity %name;.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:authors

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.2.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:authors ( ( sb:collaboration | ( sb:author, sb:et-al? ) )+ )>

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:authors ( ( sb:collaboration | ( ( sb:author, sb:et-al? ) | sb:ellipsis ) )+ )>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, sb:authors is a container element for the authors of the reference.

Usage

The element sb:authors consists of a non-empty sequence of collaborations (sb:collaboration) and authors (sb:author) possibly followed by an sb:et-al element. For more information, see these elements.

XML

```xml
<sb:authors>
  <sb:author>
    <ce:given-name>D.C.</ce:given-name>
    <ce:surname>Coleman</ce:surname>
  </sb:author>
  <sb:et-al/>
</sb:authors>
```

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472). Element sb:ellipsis was added in CEP 1.4.0.
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

sb:book

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:book ( ( %sb.titles; )?, sb:edition?,
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:book ( ( %sb.titles; )?, sb:edition?,
<!ATTLIST sb:book
  class CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Within bibliographic references, the structure of a book is captured using `sb:book`.

Usage

One of the four types of “hosts” is `sb:book`, used when structuring references to (non-edited) books.

Such simple books, or monographs, are considered as a single “contribution” occurring in the host. Consequently, the author names and the title of the work can in virtually all cases be found in the `sb:contribution`. The optional titles within the `sb:book` are used when no author is given. An average book, therefore, only contains the following subelements.

The optional subelement `sb:edition` contains information about the edition of the book. The date of publication of the book — or, more accurately, the host, for a book may well appear in different hosts — is captured using `sb:date`. A book can have more than one date. The name and place of the publisher are contained within `sb:publisher`. Finally, the element `sb:isbn` can be used to capture the ISBN number of the referenced book, if required.

```xml
<sb:contribution>
  <sb:authors>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>B.M.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Travis</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>D.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Waldt</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
  </sb:authors>
  <sb:title>
    <sb:maintitle>The SGML Implementation Guide</sb:maintitle>
    <sb:subtitle>A Blueprint for SGML Migration</sb:subtitle>
  </sb:title>
</sb:contribution>
```

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
PRESENTATION


XML

<sb:host>
  <sb:book>
  </sb:book>
</sb:host>

EXPLANATION

This book has no mention of authors or editors. The title within the sb:book is used.

Reports, Ph.D. theses and the like often contain the same components as a book. These references should be captured with sb:book. To distinguish them from books and to be able to treat them differently the class attribute should be used with value report. Thus far this is the only defined value for class.

XML

<sb:contribution>
  <sb:authors>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>E.</ce:given-name> <ce:surname>Chabanat</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
  </sb:authors>
  <sb:title>
    <sb:maintitle>Interactions effectives pour des conditions extremes d’isospin</sb:maintitle>
  </sb:title>
</sb:contribution>
<sb:host>
  <sb:comment>PhD. thesis</sb:comment>
  <sb:book class="report">
    <sb:date>1995</sb:date>
  </sb:book>
</sb:host>
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

Presentation


XML

<sb:contribution>
  <sb:authors>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>HJ</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Gough</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>HV</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Pollard</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>WJ</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Clenshaw</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
  </sb:authors>
  <sb:title>
    Some experiments on the resistance of metals to fatigue under combined stresses
  </sb:title>
</sb:contribution>

Presentation

Version history

The parameter entity \%sb.titles; was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. Attribute class was added in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:book-series

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:book-series ( sb:editors?, sb:series )>

Description

Within bibliographic references, the name of a book series and the volume number of the work within that series are captured using sb:book-series.

Usage


XML

<sb:book-series>
  <sb:series>
    <sb:title>
      <sb:maintitle>Lecture Notes in Mathematics</sb:maintitle>
      <sb:title>
        <sb:volume-nr>Vol. 1201</sb:volume-nr>
    </sb:title>
  </sb:series>
</sb:book-series>

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:collaboration

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:collaboration (%text.data; )*> 
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:collaboration (%text.data; )*> 

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the name of a collaboration is tagged using sb:collaboration.

Usage

A collaboration denotes a group of authors who present themselves under a common name: the collaboration name. In a structured bibliographic reference, it can appear at the same place as where an sb:author can appear.

If the author is not a person but a government body or another organization, then this is not a collaboration.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

sb:author, ce:collaboration. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:comment

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:comment ( %nondisplay.data; )*>
Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:comment ( %nondisplay.data; )*>

Description

Comments within structured bibliographic references are captured using sb:comment.

Usage

The element sb:comment is used to insert text between the highly structured bibliographic references.

The element sb:comment can occur before the contribution, between the contribution and the host, and after each host. It holds text which, when rendered, can appear between the highly structured contribution and hosts. Whether the sb:comment belongs to the host or contribution before or after it cannot be signified.

sb:comment should not be confused with ce:note.

XML

<bib-reference id="bib49">
  <ce:label>[49]/ce:label>
  <sb:reference id="sbref056">
    <sb:comment>See the references in</sb:comment>
    <sb:contribution>...</sb:contribution>
    <sb:comment>First published in</sb:comment>
    <sb:host>...</sb:host>
    <sb:comment>also available electronically as</sb:comment>
    <sb:host>...</sb:host>
    <sb:comment>(in Japanese)</sb:comment>
  </sb:reference>
</bib-reference>

Version history

In CEP 1.1.1 the content model was changed to allow for more content (elements ce:footnote and ce:anchor). In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %nondisplay.data;.

See also

ce:note. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:conference

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:conference ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:conference ( %text.data; )*>

Description

Within bibliographic references, it may happen that conference information (such as the location or the date) is present for the proceedings of a conference, appearing as an sb:issue or an sb:edited-book. This information, seldom present in actual bibliographic references, can be captured using sb:conference.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

sb:contribution

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:contribution ( sb:authors?, ( %sb.titles; )? )>
<!ATTLIST sb:contribution
    langtype %language-type; "en"
    xml:lang %iso639; #IMPLIED>
```

Description

Each structured bibliographic reference is divided into an “sb:contribution” and one or more “sb:host”s.

Usage

Bibliographic references are structurally split into a “contribution” and one or more “hosts”. Contribution is the abstract term used for the referenced object separated from its physical appearance. An sb:contribution can be a scientific article or book, but also a map, audiotape, Internet page, etc.—any object referred to in a reference list. Some examples: In a reference to an article in a journal issue or in an edited volume, the sb:contribution contains the author names and title of the article. A monograph (simple book) is seen as one contribution within a host.

It is possible to specify the language of the contribution using the attributes langtype and xml:lang, which takes its values in %iso639, i.e., the ISO 639 list of language codes (p. 192). The language type (%language-type;) gives an indication about the language in which the contribution is written. It can take the following values: en (English); non-en (an unspecified non-English language); iso (a language specified in the xml:lang attribute). The value unknown is used when the reference gives no indication whatsoever about the language.

The attribute xml:lang is mandatory when langtype has the value iso and may not be present for other values of langtype.

A contribution consists of an optional author group (sb:authors), and optional title and/or translated title.

Version history

The parameter entity %sb.titles; was introduced in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:date

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:date ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, dates of publication are tagged using sb:date.

Usage

The element sb:date contains the date of publication of a structured bibliographic reference. This may contain merely a year or a full date, depending on the author’s manuscript. For books or edited books multiple dates can be given — these must be captured in different sb:date elements.

XML

<sb:date>1999</sb:date>

XML

<sb:date>12 December 1999</sb:date>

XML

<sb:date>1975</sb:date><sb:date>1997</sb:date>

In name/date references, references that share the same author names and year are listed as “(Böhm, 1999a)”. The “a” is not part of the sb:date; it is found in the ce:label subelement of ce:bib-reference, q.v.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
\textbf{sb:date-accessed}

\textbf{Declaration}

\textbf{Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)}

\begin{verbatim}
<!ELEMENT sb:date-accessed EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST sb:date-accessed
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Description}

The element \texttt{sb:date-accessed} is used to capture dates on which the bibliographic reference was accessed.

\textbf{Usage}

In case the reference is to electronic media (\texttt{sb:e-host}), \texttt{sb:date-accessed} captures the date on which these were accessed. It is mainly used for data citations.

Three attributes, day, month, year are used to store the day, month and year respectively. The latter two attributes are mandatory. The values are numbers, not padded with zero.

\textbf{Version history}

This element was added in CEP 1.5.0.

\textbf{See also}

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:edited-book

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:edited-book ( sb:editors?, ( %sb.titles; )?,
 sb:isbn? )>
```

Description

Within bibliographic references, element `sb:edited-book` is used to capture the structure of book which contains contributions from several authors, edited by an editor.

Usage

One of the four type of “hosts” is `sb:edited-book`, used when structuring references to edited books, i.e., books that contain contributions from several authors.

The first subelement, the optional editor group (`sb:editors`) contains the names of the editors of the work. This is followed by the `sb:title` and/or the `sb:translated-title`.

The edited book can be the proceedings of a conference, and if conference details, such as place and date of the conference, are present these can be captured with `sb:conference`. In practice, bibliographic references rarely contain such detailed information.

Information about the edition can be captured with `sb:edition`. If the edited book is itself a member of a book series, this can be recorded using `sb:book-series`. The publication date(s) are tagged with `sb:date`.

The name and place of the publisher are contained in `sb:publisher`.

Finally, the element `sb:isbn` can be used to capture the ISBN number of the referenced book, if required.

Version history

The parameter entity `%sb.titles;` was introduced in CEP 1.1.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

**sb:edition**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:edition ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

Within structured bibliographic references, information about the edition of a book is captured using **sb:edition**.

**Usage**


```xml
```

**See also**

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section **Bibliographic references** (p. 472).
sb:editor

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

<!ELEMENT sb:editor ( %name; )>

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:editor ( %name; )>
<!ATTLIST sb:editor
orcid CDATA #IMPLIED>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, editor names are tagged using sb:editor.

Usage

The element sb:editor has %name; as its content model, which means that it contains a ce:surname and an optional ce:given-name in any order, possibly followed by a ce:suffix and one or more ce:alt-names. For more details, see those elements.

Attribute orcid contains a unique identification of the author coming from a global author database: the ORCID (Open Research & Contributor ID).

Version history

In CEP 1.2.0 the attribute orcid was added, while element ce:alt-name was added to parameter entity %name;.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:editors

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.5.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:editors ( sb:editor+, sb:et-al? )>

Model (CEP 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:editors ( ( ( sb:editor, sb:et-al? ) | sb:ellipsis )+ )>

Description

Within bibliographic references, the element sb:editors contains one or more editor names and possibly an “et al.” indicator. The element is referred to as editor group.

Usage

An sb:book-series, an sb:edited-book and an sb:issue can have (guest) editors. The element sb:editors is a container element for one or more sb:editors and optionally an sb:et-al.

Version history

The element sb:ellipsis was added to the model in CEP 1.6.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
**sb:e-host**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)**

\[
\text{<!ELEMENT sb:e-host ( ce:inter-ref?, sb:date? )>}
\]

**Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)**

\[
\text{<!ELEMENT sb:e-host ( sb:publisher?, ce:inter-ref?, sb:version?, sb:date?, sb:date-accessed* )>}
\]

**Description**

The element **sb:e-host** is used to capture references to electronic media.

**Usage**

If one of the hosts of a bibliographic reference is a preprint in an electronic preprint archive or another document on an electronic platform, the element **sb:e-host** is used. The element is also used when the bibliographic reference is a data citation.

It may contain several elements, but it is only useful when it contains **ce:inter-ref**.

Subelement **sb:publisher** contains the publisher of the document or data. The hyperlink to the electronic platform is established using **ce:inter-ref**. For detailed information, see that element. **sb:version** captures the version or edition of the document or data. The date of publication can be captured with the **sb:date** subelement while the date(s) the document or data was accessed can be captured with subelement(s) **sb:date-accessed**.

**XML**

```xml
<sb:e-host>
  <ce:inter-ref id="interref37"
xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/preprint"
xlink:href="arxiv:/hep-th/9112009">hep-th/9112009</ce:inter-ref>
</sb:e-host>
```

**XML**

```xml
<sb:e-host>
  <sb:publisher>
    <sb:name>Geological Institute, University of Tokyo</sb:name>
  </sb:publisher>
  <ce:inter-ref id="interref1"
xlink:role="http://www.elsevier.com/xml/linking-roles/research-data"
xlink:href="doi:10.1594/PANGAEA.726855">
    https://doi.org/10.1594/PANGAEA.726855
  </ce:inter-ref>
  <sb:date>2009</sb:date>
</sb:e-host>
```

**Version history**

Subelements **sb:publisher**, **sb:version** and **sb:date-accessed** were added in CEP 1.5.0.

**See also**

Bibliographic references are explained in more detail in the section **Bibliographic references** (p. 472).
sb:ellipsis

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:ellipsis EMPTY>
```

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, occurrences of an ellipsis can be captured with `sb:ellipsis`.

Usage

In the American Psychological Association (APA) style, 6th edition, a reference has at most seven authors mentioned. In case of more than seven authors, the first six and the last one are mentioned, while the remaining authors are represented by an ellipsis. The ellipsis in such a reference is captured with element `sb:ellipsis`. This element is only to be used in case of this particular reference style. Note that in the rendering there is no comma after the ellipsis.

```xml
<ce:bib-reference id="br0120">
  ...
  <sb:authors>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>C.P.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Black</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
    ...
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>A.L.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Bee</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
    <sb:ellipsis/>
    <sb:author>
      <ce:given-name>S.P.</ce:given-name>
      <ce:surname>Clark</ce:surname>
    </sb:author>
  </sb:authors>
  ...
</ce:bib-reference>
```

Presentation


Version history

The element `sb:ellipsis` was added in CEP 1.4.0.
sb:et-al

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:et-al EMPTY>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, occurrences of the phrase “et al.” are structured with sb:et-al.

Usage

The element sb:et-al is used when the bibliographic reference only lists part of the authors or editors.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:first-page

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:first-page ( %richstring.data; )>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the number of the first page of a publication is tagged using sb:first-page.

Usage

The element sb:first-page contains the first page of a bibliographic reference. If the reference has a page range, the number of the last page is to be captured using sb:last-page. The element may not contain an en-dash.

XML
<sb:first-page>121</sb:first-page>
XML
<sb:first-page>A-12</sb:first-page>
XML
<sb:first-page>37v</sb:first-page>

See also

sb:last-page. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:host

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:host ( ( ( sb:issue, sb:pages? ) | sb:book
```

Model (CEP 1.2.0)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:host ( ( ( ( sb:issue | sb:book | sb:edited-
```

Model (CEPs 1.4.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:host ( ( ( ( sb:issue | sb:book | sb:edited-
book ), sb:pages? ) | sb:e-host ),
sb:article-number?, ce:doi? )>
```

Description

Within bibliographic references, the structure of a host is captured using sb:host.

Usage

A bibliographic reference is structurally split into a “contribution” and one or more “hosts”. The host is the physical appearance that “contains” the reference. There can be more than one host: a version of an article on the author’s homepage, a version in a journal issue, a version in a spin-off book, a version on ScienceDirect®.

A host can be one of four varieties: sb:issue, sb:book, sb:edited-book or sb:e-host. For more information, see these elements.

In order to locate the contribution within an issue, a book or an edited book, an optional sb:pages is added to the sb:host.

Each host can have a DOI, captured using the ce:doi element.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, the pages element was contained within elements issue and edited-book. Adding sb:pages to a sb:book was made possible in CEP 1.2.0. Element sb:article-number was added in CEP 1.4.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:isbn

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:isbn ( %string.data; )*>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the ISBN of a book is tagged using sb:isbn.

Usage

If in structured references the ISBN of a book needs to be captured, this can be done by the element sb:isbn.

In practice, bibliographic references rarely contain ISBNs. The element is very useful, however, in the frontmatter of a book review.

XML

<sb:isbn>0-13-065567-8</sb:isbn>

See also

book-review. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:issn

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:issn ( %string.data; )*>
```

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the ISSN of a serial publication is captured using `sb:issn`.

Usage

Although this happens rarely in practice, an ISSN of a serial publication can be tagged with `sb:issn`. This element is an optional element within `sb:series`.

```
<sb:issn>0167-8396</sb:issn>
```

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:issue

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:issue ( sb:editors?, ( %sb.titles; )?,
                      sb:conference?, sb:series, sb:issue-nr?, sb:date )>

Description

Within bibliographic references, the structure of a journal issue is captured using sb:issue.

Usage

One of the four type of “hosts” is sb:issue, used when structuring references to articles in journal issues or to whole journal issues. The article is the “contribution”; the journal issue is the “host”.

The first three subelements of sb:issue are an editor group (sb:editors), sb:title and/or sb:translated-title, and conference information (sb:conference). These are used when the bibliographic reference contains special issue information.

The titles mentioned above should not be confused with the titles appearing within the subelement sb:series, which contains the journal name and optionally the volume number. Each reference to an issue must have a title within sb:series (the journal name) but much fewer references will have a title on the sb:issue level.

If available, the issue identification can be captured with sb:issue-nr.

The last subelement, the mandatory sb:date, contains the publication date of the issue. (Most references only have the year.)

The page range on which the article appears is captured within the sb:pages element on the sb:host level.

XML

<sb:host>
  <sb:issue>
    <sb:series>
      <sb:volume-nr>193</sb:volume-nr>
    </sb:series>
    <sb:issue-nr>1-2</sb:issue-nr>
    <date>1998</date>
  </sb:issue>
  <sb:pages>
    <first-page>97</first-page>
    <last-page>112</last-page>
  </sb:pages>
</sb:host>
See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
**sb:issue-nr**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:issue-nr ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

Within structured bibliographic references, issue numbers are tagged using `sb:issue-nr`.

**Usage**

The element `sb:issue-nr` may contain an issue number or a range of issue numbers.

```xml
<sb:issue-nr>2–4</sb:issue-nr>
```

```xml
<sb:issue-nr>Suppl. 1</sb:issue-nr>
```

**See also**

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
**sb:last-page**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:last-page ( %richstring.data; )*>```

**Description**

Within structured bibliographic references, the last page of a page range can be captured using `sb:last-page`.

**Usage**

The number of the last page of a bibliographic reference is contained in `sb:last-page`. It should always be greater than `sb:first-page`.

**Copy edit considerations**

The number of the last page should always be given in full. That is, if a page range 147–9 is given, `sb:last-page` should contain 149. Similarly, in case of page range S155–161, `sb:last-page` should contain S161.

**See also**

`sb:first-page`. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:location

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:location ( %richstring.data; )*>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the location of a publisher can be captured using the element sb:location.

Usage

See sb:publisher.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:maintitle

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:maintitle (%text.data; )*>  
```

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:maintitle (%text.data; )*>  
```

Description

The main title of a structured bibliographic reference is captured using `sb:maintitle`.

Usage

See `sb:title`.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity `%math;` was added to `%text.data;`.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
**sb:name**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT sb:name ( %richstring.data; )*>  
```

**Description**

Within structured bibliographic references, the name of the publisher is captured using `sb:name`.

**Usage**

See `sb:publisher`.

**See also**

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:pages

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:pages ( sb:first-page, sb:last-page? )>
```

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, pages or page ranges of a publication are contained in `sb:pages`.

Usage

The element `sb:pages` contains a mandatory `sb:first-page` and an optional `sb:last-page`.

```
<sb:pages>
  <sb:first-page>37</sb:first-page>
  <sb:last-page>51</sb:last-page>
</sb:pages>
```

Presentation

37–51

Some layout styles abbreviate 121–127 to 121–7. This should be solved by the style sheet: the last page is always captured as “127”.

Version history

The element has been moved to the `sb:host` level and out of the `sb:issue` and `sb:edited-book` level.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
Chapter 10 – Structured bibliographic references

sb:publisher

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:publisher ( sb:name, sb:location? )>

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the name and place of the publisher of the publication or the data are captured using sb:publisher.

Usage

The element sb:publisher contains a mandatory sb:name, the name of the publisher or the imprint, and an optional sb:location, the place or places where the publisher is located.

XML

```xml
<sb:publisher>
  <sb:name>North-Holland</sb:name>
  <sb:location>Amsterdam</sb:location>
</sb:publisher>
```

XML

```xml
<sb:publisher>
  <sb:name>American Mathematical Society</sb:name>
  <sb:location>Providence, RI</sb:location>
</sb:publisher>
```

XML

```xml
<sb:publisher>
  <sb:name>Springer-Verlag</sb:name>
  <sb:location>Heidelberg, Berlin</sb:location>
</sb:publisher>
```

XML

```xml
<sb:publisher>
  <sb:name>GeoForschungsZentrum Potsdam (GFZ)</sb:name>
</sb:publisher>
```

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:reference

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ATTLIST sb:reference
id ID #IMPLIED
xmlns:sb CDATA #FIXED %ESSBxmlns;'>

Description

The element sb:reference is used to capture a fully structured reference.

Usage

A structured reference is contained in an sb:reference element. Each sb:reference consists of an optional sb:contribution and one or more sb:hosts. Comments can be inserted between these elements using sb:comment.

An sb:reference may have a ce:label subelement and an id attribute. These are used if the sb:reference is part of a multiple reference.

Version history

Prior to DTD 5.0, this element was called bb.

See also

sb:comment, sb:contribution and sb:host. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:series

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.1.6)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:series ( ( %sb.titles; ), sb:issn?, sb:volume-nr? )>
```

Model (CEPs 1.2.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT sb:series ( ( %sb.titles; )?, sb:issn?, sb:volume-nr? )>
```

Description

Within structured bibliographic references, the element sb:series is used to identify serial publications.

Usage

The element sb:series is used to capture the journal title and the volume number of an issue appearing in that journal, or the title of a book series and the volume number of a book that appears in a book series. It can also contain the ISSN of the serial publication. Although all subelements are optional, at least one should be present.

Version history

The parameter entity %sb.titles; was introduced in CEP 1.1.0. It was made optional in CEP 1.2.0.

See also

sb:book-series and sb:issue. Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:subtitle

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.4.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:subtitle ( %text.data; )*>

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:subtitle ( %text.data; )*>

Description

The subtitle of a structured bibliographic reference is captured using sb:subtitle.

Usage

See sb:title.

Version history

In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %text.data;.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:title ( sb:maintitle, sb:subtitle? )>

Description

Within bibliographic references, titles are tagged using sb:title. Depending on the context, this can be the title of an article or a book, the name of a journal or a book series, etc.

Usage


An sb:title consists of sb:maintitle and optionally sb:subtitle. Please refer to ce:subtitle for a description of what constitutes a subtitle.

XML

<sb:title>
  <sb:maintitle>The SGML Implementation Guide</sb:maintitle>
  <sb:subtitle>A Blueprint for SGML Migration</sb:subtitle>
</sb:title>

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:translated-title

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

<!ELEMENT sb:translated-title ( sb:maintitle, sb:subtitle? )>

Description

Within bibliographic references, translated titles are tagged using sb:translated-title.

Usage

Often, when a contribution is written in a different language, the author has translated the title for the benefit of the reader. A comment “(in Dutch)” or similar is then added to the reference. To this end, sb:book, sb:contribution, sb:edited-book, sb:issue and sb:series can have an sb:translated-title.

The element sb:translated-title consists of a sb:maintitle as well as an optional sb:subtitle. See sb:title for more information.

XML

<sb:contribution>
  <sb:authors>
    <sb:author>
      <sb:given-name>E.M.H.</sb:given-name>
      <sb:surname>Assink</sb:surname>
    </sb:author>
    <sb:author>
      <sb:given-name>N.</sb:given-name>
      <sb:surname>Verloop</sb:surname>
    </sb:author>
  </sb:authors>
  <sb:title>
    <sb:maintitle>Het aanleren van deel-geheel relaties</sb:maintitle>
  </sb:title>
  <sb:translated-title>
    <sb:maintitle>Teaching part-whole relations</sb:maintitle>
  </sb:translated-title>
</sb:contribution>

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
sb:version

Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.5.0, 1.6.0)
<!ELEMENT sb:version ( %string.data; )*>

Description

The element sb:version is used to capture the version of the bibliographic reference.

Usage

In case the reference is to electronic media (sb:e-host), the version or edition is captured with sb:version. It is mainly used for data citations.

Version history

This element was added in CEP 1.5.0.

See also

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section Bibliographic references (p. 472).
**sb:volume-nr**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```
<!ELEMENT sb:volume-nr ( %richstring.data; )*>
```

**Description**

Within structured bibliographic references, volume numbers are tagged using `sb:volume-nr`.

**Usage**

The element `sb:volume-nr` may contain a volume number or a range of volume numbers.

```
<sb:volume-nr>121</sb:volume-nr>
<sb:volume-nr>XL–XLII</sb:volume-nr>
```

**See also**

Structured references are explained in more detail in the section **Bibliographic references** (p. 472).
Chapter 11
MathML

The Elsevier DTD 5 family uses MathML for its mathematical formulae. The element \texttt{mml:math} can be used inline and as subelement of \texttt{ce:formula}.

We refer to specialized MathML documentation for more information about MathML tagging.

MathML exists in two forms known as Presentational MathML and Content MathML. Content MathML captures the meaning of the formula; the presentation of the formula is a derivative thereof. Presentational MathML merely captures the presentation of the formula; mathematical notation is such that the meaning can be derived from the presentation to some extent, but never fully so.

It is expected that Content MathML cannot be written or keyed in by humans; it will always be generated by mathematical software. We do not expect to receive much material in Content MathML from authors. Conversions from mathematical typesetting formats such as \TeX will produce Presentation MathML. Therefore our articles will almost always contain Presentational MathML when they follow the regular workflow.

We do not exclude Content MathML. Applications downstream should in principle be prepared to receive and process both types of MathML.

CEP 1.6 introduces MathML3 (v3.0, 2nd edition) with a few modifications by Elsevier. For backwards compatibility reasons these contain the change to the \texttt{mml:mtext} element (allowing, for instance, to make cross-references within a displayed formula) and the inclusion of a file \texttt{htmlmathml-f.ent} with entities like \texttt{&Atilde;} (defined as \texttt{&#x00C3;}). Use of both functionalities is deprecated and disallowed by Elsevier's validation tool.

MathML Plane One characters may not be used, \texttt{mathvariant} should be used instead.
Usage of MathML elements and attributes

For backwards compatibility, version 3 of the MathML standard [24] contains a number of deprecated attributes, which were present in earlier versions. These attributes must not be used in Elsevier articles and books. They are listed in the following pages. There is one exception: The font* attributes may be used in exceptional cases, see the subsection on ‘Style, fonts and mathvariants’.

The MathML standard covers many publication contexts, from articles in scientific journals to distant learning courses on the web. Consequently, some elements and attributes are more applicable to one publication context than to another. In the following pages we list the elements and attributes which are currently considered not to be applicable in the context of Elsevier articles and books. Such elements and attributes may not be used. It should be noted that understanding of this issue may evolve with time. For example, we do not see a role for the mml:maction element in current publications. With increasing understanding of the possibilities of MathML by both authors and web publishing platforms, suitable forms of usage of the mml:maction element may be identified in the years to come.

The following listing indicates which attributes are deprecated in MathML 3, and which elements and attributes may not be used in the context of Elsevier articles and books.

Style, fonts and mathvariants

The MathML specification [24] allows the CSS attribute style on all elements. In addition it allows the attributes fontfamily, fontweight, fontstyle and mathvariant on all token elements. Each of these attributes can be used to specify a different style for a variable. But these attributes convey different information about the variable, and therefore they cannot be used interchangeably.

The CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) attribute style indicates a style that is imposed by features that are external to the formula, and which has no influence on the interpretation of the formula. An example is the boldening of an inline formula in a bold header. Because such presentational markup may not be used in our articles, the attribute style must not be used.

It is a characteristic of mathematical notation that a style change for a single variable indicates a different meaning of the variable: a boldface A is a different variable than A. Such a style change may be achieved by the attribute mathvariant. The list of values of mathvariant is constrained, and the symbol in the desired style must exist as a mathematical styled character in Unicode, usually in Plane One.

If a symbol is desired in a style that is not an allowed value of the mathvariant attribute, or if a symbol in a desired style does not exist as a mathematical styled character in Unicode, it can currently not be used in that style. For example, it is not possible to have italic double-struck (open-face) characters, because italic double-struck is not an allowed value of the mathvariant attribute, and also because italic double-struck characters do not exist as mathematical styled characters in Unicode.

In the future we may allow the possibility to mark a symbol up using the attributes font-family, fontweight and fontstyle. The value of the attribute fontfamily should be one of a list of recognized font families. Currently there are no recognized font families,
and therefore this feature is not available. We will add fonts to the list when they are re-
quired in publications. The main candidates seem to be open-face (double-struck) fonts,
for which DTD 4.x allowed more styles than MathML. It should be noted, however, that
such symbols may not easily be rendered on each reader’s computer; therefore this feature
should be used only in exceptional cases.

The MathML specification [24, section 3.2.2.1] excludes the combined usage of the font*
attributes and the mathvariant attribute.

It is not allowed to use the font changing elements from the CEP to mark up a variable in
MathML, not even in the mml:mtext element. Of course, font changing elements from the
CEP are allowed to mark up an in-line formula that is tagged without MathML.

All elements
The attribute other is deprecated, and must not be used. The attributes xlink:href,
xlink:type, style must not be used.

Token elements
The attributes color and fontsize are deprecated, and must not be used. The attributes
mathsize, mathcolor, and mathbackground must not be used.

The attributes fontfamily, fontweight and fontstyle should only be used in exceptional
cases, see the subsection on ‘Style, fonts and mathvariants’.

Individual elements
mml:math
The attribute mode is deprecated and must not be used. The attributes macros, overflow,
xsi:schemaLocation, height and width must not be used.

mml:mo
The true values of the attributes fence, separator, accent and largeop are mutually
exclusive.

When the attribute fence has the value true, the form attribute may only have the values
prefix or postfix.

When the attribute accent has the value true, the form attribute may only have the value
postfix.

When the attribute largeop has the value true, the form attribute may only have the value
prefix.

The attributes symmetric, maxsize and minsize only make sense when the attribute
stretchy has the value true.

mml:mglyph
The element mml:mglyph should only be used in exceptional cases. The value of the at-
ttribute fontfamily must be taken from a list of allowed values; currently that list is empty.

mml:mstyle
The mml:mstyle element is used to make style changes that affect the rendering of its
contents. mml:mstyle can be given any attribute accepted by any MathML presentation
element provided that the attribute value is inherited, computed or has a default value (MathML specification [24, section 3.3.4.1]). For such attributes the rules apply that are mentioned with the individual elements.

In addition, there are a number of attributes which may only be specified on the mml:mstyle element: background, scriptsizemultiplier, scriptminsize, veryverythinmathspace, verythinmathspace, thinmathspace, mediummathspace, thickmathspace, verythickmathspace, veryverythickmathspace. None of these attributes is allowed to be used.

mml:mtext

The attributes mathvariant, fontweight, fontstyle, fontfamily must not be used.

mml:merror

The mml:merror element must not be used.

mml:maction

The mml:maction element must not be used.
mml:math

Declaration

Model

```
<!ELEMENT math ( mi | mn | mo | mtext | mspace | ms
   | maligngroup.qname | malignmark
   | mrow | mfrac | msqrt | mroot
   | mstyle | merror | mpadded
   | mphantom | mfenced | menclose
   | msub | msup | msubsup | munder
   | mover | munderover | mmultiscripts
   | mtable | mstack | mlongdiv | maction
   | maligngroup | malignmark | maction
   | %ContInPres; )>
```

```
<!ATTLIST math
   xmlns:mml CDATA #FIXED
http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML
xlink:href CDATA #IMPLIED
xlink:type CDATA #IMPLIED
class CDATA #IMPLIED
style CDATA #IMPLIED
id ID #IMPLIED
xref IDREF #IMPLIED
other CDATA #IMPLIED
macros CDATA #IMPLIED
mode CDATA #IMPLIED
display (block|inline) #IMPLIED
height CDATA #IMPLIED
width CDATA #IMPLIED
overflow (linebreak|scroll|elide|truncate|scale)
   'scroll'
altimg CDATA #IMPLIED
alttext CDATA #IMPLIED ... >
```

Description

The element mml:math contains a MathML formula.

Usage

The mml:math element, which can be used inline and within ce:formula, is used to capture mathematical formulae. It is an element belonging to MathML, and we refer to MathML documentation for details. It is well-known that parsing MathML is not sufficient for a file to conform to the MathML specifications.

mml:math must never be nested within mml:math.

Each mml:math is delivered together with a graphical representation for rendering applications that cannot handle MathML. Such an image is called a strip-in. The attribute altimg contains the name of the strip-in image, it is a file name inclusive extension, see the section on strip-in images (p. 23).

The attribute mode is deprecated, and should not be used. The attributes style, macros and overflow should not be used.
See also

c:enunciation, c:formula, c:italic
Chapter 12

(Extended) CALS tables

Over the course of the years contractors of the US Department of Defense converged to a single table model, the so-called CALS Table Model (Computer-Aided Logistics Support). It became a de facto standard, which was used by many and supported by many software packages. OASIS published documentation of the full CALS table elements and attributes [13], in order to promote a shared interpretation. It has also critically reviewed the CALS table model and the software support for it. The result is the OASIS Exchange Model [15].

In the DTD 5.0 family, Elsevier has adopted CALS tables according to this OASIS Exchange Model. The parametrization was exploited to make %cell.data; the content of a table cell and to furnish the tables with a label, a caption, a legend and table footnotes. However, as became apparent, even with the extensive parametrization options, the CALS table model was not sufficient for our needs. This is why we extended the CALS tables with the border elements from earlier Elsevier DTDs and with a modified element for column specifications. These additional elements are placed in their own namespace, http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/table/dtd, which can be recognized by the tb: prefix.

A CALS table is not necessarily valid if it satisfies the DTD. The description of entry in the CALS specification [15] summarizes conditions which make a CALS table invalid. These error conditions translate into the following requirements:

- A column name used in a colname, namest or nameend attribute must be a colname declared in a colspec or a tb:colspec in the containing tgroup.
- The names declared in different colspecs and tb:colspecs of a tgroup must be different.
- It is an error if portions of different entries overlap each other.
- It is an error if an entry’s morerows attribute specifies more additional rows than the number of remaining rows defined for the containing thead or tbody.
- It is an error if the number of columns filled by the entries in a row, taking column spanning by entries in that row, and row spanning by entries in previous rows into account, exceeds the value of the cols attribute of the containing tgroup.
- The column specified by the nameend attribute of an entry must be to the right of (i.e. have a higher column number than) the column specified by the namest attribute of the entry.

Note. The morerows attribute denotes the number of additional rows spanned. In this respect it differs from the attribute rspan of DTD 4 and the attribute rowspan of HTML: morerows = rspan – 1.

Note. entry elements which span more rows require special attention. They fill columns in their own row and in one or more following rows. The following rows have no entry.
elements for those columns. It is not necessary nor allowed to place empty entry elements in those rows as placeholders.

The CALS table specification allows some fairly complicated constructions using column names. Elsevier wants to avoid such complications. Elsevier wants to ensure that its CALS tables have a regular and straightforward structure, and are easily transformed into display formats. This can be summarized in the following requirements. These requirements are additional to the standard CALS requirements listed above.

- An entry may not have both a namest attribute and a colname attribute.
- If an entry has a nameend attribute, it must also have a namest attribute.
- The cols and tb:cols elements must be listed in column order.
- There must be a cols or tb:cols for every column, up to the number of columns declared in the cols attribute of the containing tgroup.
- It is an error if there is a cols or tb:cols for a column whose number is higher than the number of columns declared in the cols attribute of the containing tgroup.
- The column names declared in the cols or tb:cols elements must adhere to the pattern: “col” followed by the column number, i.e. “colN”.
- The entries in a row must be listed in column order, taking into account that entries which are straddled by row spanning entries in previous rows, should be skipped.
- All entries in a row must be listed, taking into account that entries which are straddled by row spanning entries in previous rows, should be skipped.

The latter two rules are almost identical to the requirements for cells in DTD 4. The difference is that no entries are listed which are spanned by other entries.

This chapter contains a listing of the elements of the extended CALS table model. We first give a number of examples of CALS tables. After a brief overview of the native CALS elements (for more information, we refer to [1] and [15]) we list the CALS table extensions. A table containing at least one element from the tb namespace is called an extended CALS table. Tables without these extensions are called native CALS tables.

It is only allowed to create an extended CALS table if a native CALS table cannot be used to represent the table. The examples in the next section show and explain the cases when this is appropriate. In the following cases an extended CALS table is inevitable:

- when the alignment in cells requires vertical alignmarks, tb:alignmark;
- when the border style is an “ornament” (see the ornament tables, p. 555), other than a single vertical or horizontal line;
- when the cell borders at the outer extremities of the table require a different border style than the table frame (the frame cannot be overruled);
- when cells need a top border but the cell above spans different columns;
- when cells need a left border but the cell to the left spans different rows.

**Bridge lines**

Spanning lines or bridge lines spanning a number of columns in the head of a table are created by setting the rowsep of the cell above the spanned columns. We define that the rowseps of different cells within the interior of the head never touch. This is similar to the definition in DTD 4.x.
Inheritance of attribute values

The CALS table model does not use default attribute values in the strict sense, that is, default values that are specified in the DTD, and that are reported by a parser. Instead, it uses the absence of an attribute value to signal that the value should be inherited from a specified other element, usually the parent element, or that it has a default value. The CALS specification mentions the possibility to specify default values in style sheets. That possibility is not used in Elsevier’s XML files; the default values are those listed in the CALS specification.

The inheritance paths and default values are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attribute</th>
<th>inheritance path</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>valign</td>
<td>entry → row → {thead, tbody}</td>
<td>bottom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>align</td>
<td>entry → colspec → tgroup</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>entry → colspec → tgroup</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charoff</td>
<td>entry → colspec → tgroup</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rowsep</td>
<td>entry → row → colspec → tgroup → ce:table</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colsep</td>
<td>entry → colspec → tgroup → ce:table</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this scheme, each → means: if the attribute value is not specified for the element on the left, use the value from the element on the right. Each occurrence of colspec should be read as colspec or tb:colspec.
CALS tables — Examples

Example 1

The following table is a standard CALS table except for column 6. Column 6 uses an alignmark, which is not available in standard CALS. The fact that this column uses an extension to the standard CALS table model is signalled by the presence of the tb prefix on the tb:colspec and tb:alignmark elements.

XML

```xml
<ce:table id="tbl001" frame="topbot" colsep="0" rowsep="0">
  <ce:label>Table 1</ce:label>
  <ce:caption id="c4">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp4">Sm-Nd data.</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:caption>
  <tgroup cols="6">
    <colspec colname="col1"/>
    <colspec colname="col2"/>
    <colspec colname="col3"/>
    <colspec colname="col4"/>
    <colspec colname="col5"/>
    <tb:colspec colname="col6"/>
    <thead>
      <row valign="top" rowsep="1">
        <entry namest="col1" nameend="col2">Eclogites</entry>
        <entry>Sm</entry>
        <entry>Nd</entry>
        <entry><ce:sup loc="pre">147</ce:sup>Sm [ce:sup loc="pre">144</ce:sup>Nd</entry>
        <entry>Yield (%)</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row valign="top">
        <entry>162a</entry>
        <entry>Grenat</entry>
        <entry align="char" char=".">0.92</entry>
        <entry align="char" char=".">2.31</entry>
        <entry align="char" char="+">0.240 + 0.005</entry>
        <entry align="char" char="+">10.51 + 10.05 \&minus; 0.05</entry>
      </row>
      <row valign="top">
        <entry>Omphacite</entry>
        <entry align="char" char=".">6.41</entry>
        <entry align="char" char=".">23.60</entry>
        <entry align="char" char="+">0.164 + 0.04</entry>
        <entry align="char" char="+">10.51 + 10.05 \&minus; 0.05</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</ce:table>
```

538 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
**Presentation**

Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eclogites</th>
<th>Sm</th>
<th>Nd</th>
<th>$^{147}$Nd/$^{144}$Nd</th>
<th>$^{148}$Nd/$^{144}$Nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>162a Grenat</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>2.31</td>
<td>0.240 + 0.005</td>
<td>10.512 + 10.000 - 0.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omphacite</td>
<td>6.41</td>
<td>23.60</td>
<td>0.164 + 0.04</td>
<td>10.51 + 10.05 - 0.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation**

The horizontal rules at the top and bottom of the table are specified by the value `topbot` of the `frame` attribute of the `ce:table` element.

The default value of the `colsep` and `rowsep` attributes of the `ce:table` element is implied, which according to the CALS documentation means that there are row and column separators for each row and column unless specified otherwise for a certain row, column or entry. Here we specify the value 0 for these attributes, which means that in this table we have no row and column specifiers unless specified otherwise for a certain row, column or entry.

The table has a single `tgroup` element, with a `thead` containing one row and a `tbody` containing 2 rows.

The `tgroup` starts with five `colspec` elements. They have no `colnum` attribute, and thus are automatically assigned to columns 1 to 5. They do specify a name for the column, in the `colname` attribute. This name is used below to specify column spanning.

The sixth element is a `tb:colspec` element. This indicates automatically that the column uses alignment markers `tb:alignmark`, due to the default value `mark` of its `align` attribute.

In principle the `colspec` elements for columns 3 to 5 could have been omitted, because we do not make use of them, and the `tb:colspec` element for column sixth could have specified that it applies to column 6, by the value of its `colnum` attribute. However, skipping `colspec` elements is less desirable because it is not supported by all CALS table applications.

The first entry of the first row spans two columns. This is indicated by the values of the `namest` and `nameend` attributes, which are the names of the starting and ending columns.

The other entries in this row override the alignment specified for the column by having their own `align` attributes.

The rule between the table head and the table body must be specified explicitly. This is done by the value 1 of the `rowsep` attribute of the `row`.

The fifth entries in the two rows in the `tbody` demonstrate that alignment may be specified on any character: these entries align on the ‘+’ character.

The last entries use two alignment markers `tb:alignmark` to align on the ‘+’ and ‘−’ signs in the entry. Note that an alignment marker may introduce space to its left (see the example in the discussion of the `tb:alignmark` element). An earlier version of this example ignored that fact and was therefore in error.

This column alignment mechanism has a superficial similarity with the alignment mechanism using alignment markers and alignment groups in MathML; see Section 3.5.5 of the
MathML specification. The latter, however, is more complicated and more powerful, due to its usage of alignment groups.

Finally note that *entry* has mixed content. Therefore, if one would insert a linebreak after the start tag, one would insert a space at the start of the entry’s content. Similarly for a line break before the end tag. This would be undesirable.

**Example 2**

The following table demonstrates our requirements for regular tables.

- For each column a *colspec* element is present, and the *colspec* elements are listed in column order.
- All *entry* elements of a row are listed, in column order. Only a series of empty *entry* elements at the end of the row has been omitted.

Rows 4 and 5 demonstrate entries which span more than one row. Entries 1–3 of row 4 extend into row 5 and fill columns 1–3 in that row as well. In row 5 there are no entries for columns 1–3; the first listed (empty) entry automatically falls in column 4.

**XML**

```xml
<ce:table id="tbl1" frame="all">
  <group cols="5">
    <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1"/>
    <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2"/>
    <colspec colnum="3" colname="col3"/>
    <colspec colnum="4" colname="col4"/>
    <colspec colnum="5" colname="col5"/>
  </group>
  <tbody>
    <row>
      <entry>A</entry>
      <entry>B</entry>
      <entry>C</entry>
      <entry>D</entry>
      <entry>E</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <!-- NO ENTRY -->
      <!-- NO ENTRY -->
      <entry name="col2" nameend="col4">BCD</entry>
      <entry>E</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <entry name="col1" nameend="col3" morerows="1">ABCABC</entry>
      <entry>D</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <!-- NO ENTRY -->
      <!-- NO ENTRY -->
      <entry>E</entry>
    </row>
  </tbody>
</ce:table>
```
Example 3

The following table is a standard CALS table except for one row. The cells in this row specify a left border, a top border and a right border, which are not available in standard CALS. The fact that this row uses an extension to the standard CALS table model is signalled by the presence of the \texttt{tb} prefix on the \texttt{tb:left-border}, \texttt{tb:top-border} and \texttt{tb:right-border} elements.

\textbf{XML}
\begin{verbatim}
<ce:table id="tbl1" frame="topbot" colsep="0" rowsep="0">
  <ce:label>Table 1</ce:label>
  <ce:caption id="c5">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp1">Colours</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:caption>
  <ce:link locator="tbl1" xlink:type="simple" xlink:role="http://data.elsevier.com/vocabulary/ElsevierContentTypes/23.4" xlink:href="pii:S2405656115001339/tbl1"/>
  <tgroup cols="3">
    <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1" colwidth="3*"/>
    <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2" colwidth="2*"/>
    <colspec colnum="3" colname="col3" colwidth="4*"/>
    <thead>
      <row rowsep="1">
        <entry><ce:cross-ref id="cr4" refid="tblfn1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref></entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>Red</entry>
        <entry>Green</entry>
        <entry>Blue</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry namest="col1" nameend="col3">White</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colsep="1"><ce:cross-ref id="cr4" refid="tblfn1"><ce:sup>a</ce:sup></ce:cross-ref></entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colsep="1">Blue</entry>
        <entry morerows="1" colsep="1">High Green</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</ce:table>
\end{verbatim}
The colours in this table are shown in various cell entry layouts. These layouts demonstrate the various possibilities of CALS tables and of the extensions to CALS tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour 1</th>
<th>Colour 2</th>
<th>Colour 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>High Green</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* White is obtained by applying an equal mixture of Red, Green and Blue.
**Explanation**

A table may contain a mixture of `tgroup` elements and `ce:link` elements. The `ce:link` elements stand for table groups which have been captured as an image. In this example the table opens with a `ce:link` element. Note that the image should contain the bottom border of that part of the table if there is any.

The `colspec` elements of the `tgroup` specify the relative widths of the columns. A ‘*’ denotes the unit width. The column widths are expressed as multiples of this unit width. Since decimal values are not supported by any software, the proportional width values should be integer. The actual value of the unit width is determined at rendering time. The `colspec` elements also specify names for the columns, to be used to specify column spanning.

The entry in the second row spans three columns, which is indicated by the values of the `namest` and `nameend` attributes, which are the names of the starting and ending columns.

The next row starts with an entry with a left border. Use of the extension element `tb:left-border` is the only way to achieve that.

The same row contains an entry (“High Green”) that spans two rows and is framed. The row spanning is indicated by the value of the `morerows` attribute of the `entry` element. Its left border is specified by the value of the `colsep` attribute of the two entries to the left. Its bottom border coincides with the bottom frame of the table, and need not be specified. Its top border would have been specified by the value of the `rowsep` attribute of the entry above were it not the case that the entry above spans different columns. The border of the cell above would span the same three columns, more than the top of the “High Green” cell. Therefore the only option is to use an extended CALS element, the top-border element.

The same row ends with an entry with a right border. Here using the `rowsep` attribute would not be correct, because the `colsep` and `rowsep` attributes on the outer borders of the table are overruled by the `frame` attribute of the `ce:table`. Use of the extension element `tb:right-border` is the only valid way to specify this right border.

In the last row the second entry is omitted, because its space is occupied by the entry from the row above. The table processing software should know this and move the entry count forward by 1.

**Example 4**

```xml
<ce:table colsep="0" rowsep="0" id="tbl3" frame="topbot">
  <ce:label>Table 3</ce:label>
  <ce:caption id="c74">
    <ce:simple-para id="sp23">Efficacy of Clinical Staging</ce:simple-para>
  </ce:caption>
  <tgroup cols="5">
    <colspec colname="col1"/>
    <colspec colname="col2"/>
    <colspec colname="col3"/>
    <colspec colname="col4"/>
    <colspec colname="col5"/>
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry morerows="1" align="center" rowsep="1">Stage</entry>
        <entry namest="col2" nameend="col3" align="center" rowsep="1">Positive Predictive Value</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry rowsep="1">Stage</entry>
        <entry namest="col2" nameend="col3" align="center" rowsep="1">Positive Predictive Value</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</ce:table>
```
### Presentation

#### Table 3
Efficacy of Clinical Staging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Positive Predictive Value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FDG-PET/CT (%)</td>
<td>CT (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Explanation

The first row of the table head has two entries which each span two columns. Both entries have a rowsep value of 1, that is, they have a row separator at their bottom. Normally, because the entries are in adjacent columns, their row separators would join to create a rule from column 2 up to column 5.

Because Elsevier tables do use spanning lines or bridge lines and do not use row separators in the table head, we use the row separators in the interior of the table head to create bridge lines. Therefore we define that the rowseps of different cells within the interior of the head never touch.

As a consequence, the row separators of the second and third entry in the first row of the table head do not touch each other. This is similar to the definition in DTD 4.x.

The definition does not extend to the rule at the bottom of the table head. The row separators of the entry with the text ‘Stage’ and of the four entries in the second row of the table head join to form a continuous rule across the table.

The value of the rowsep attribute on the row element sets the default value of the rowsep attribute for the entry elements in the row. Setting `<row rowsep="1">` is equivalent to setting `<entry rowsep="1">` for all entries in that row. Therefore the following tagging produces the same result as the above example.

#### XML

```xml
<entry name="col4" nameend="col5" align="center" rowsep="1">Sensitivity</entry>
</row>
<row rowsep="1">
<entry align="center">FDG-PET/CT (%)</entry>
<entry align="center">CT (%)</entry>
<entry align="center">FDG-PET/CT (%)</entry>
<entry align="center">CT (%)</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody valign="top">
<tr>
<entry>I</entry>
<entry>58</entry>
<entry>62</entry>
<entry>44</entry>
<entry>49</entry>
</tr>
</tbody>
</cetable>
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Positive Predictive Value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FDG-PET/CT (%)</td>
<td>CT (%)</td>
<td>FDG-PET/CT (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDG-PET/CT (%)</td>
<td>CT (%)</td>
<td>FDG-PET/CT (%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CALS table elements

This section lists the table elements from the OASIS Exchange Table Model DTD [15]. For precise descriptions about these elements and their extensive attribute lists, we refer to the literature about the CALS tables, e.g. [1].

These elements have no namespace prefix. They belong to the CALS namespace, http://www.elsevier.com/xml/common/cals/dtd, due to the xmlns attribute of the element ce:table. The element entry is an exception: it belongs to the common element pool’s namespace.

colspec

Model

```
<!ELEMENT colspec EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST colspec
colnum NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
colname NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
colwidth CDATA #IMPLIED
colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
rowsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
align (left|right|center|justify|char) #IMPLIED
char CDATA #IMPLIED
charoff NMTOKEN #IMPLIED>
```

The element colspec defines a column specification, in which each column can be given a name, width, alignment, and a right-hand separator. The element tb:colspec is provided as an alternative, which then results in an extended CALS table.

entry

Model

```
<!ELEMENT entry ( %cell.data; )>
<!ATTLIST entry
colname NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
namest NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
nameend NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
morerows NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
rowsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
align (left|right|center|justify|char) #IMPLIED
char CDATA #IMPLIED
charoff NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
valign (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED
xmlns CDATA #FIXED %ESCE.xmlns; >
```

The element entry defines a cell in the table, which may or may not span more than one row or column. The default alignment and separator below and to the right, defined in
the column specification, on the row or on the table, can be overridden. The content of this element is %cell.data%; i.e. contains elements from the common element pool, as well as the border elements tb:bottom-border, tb:left-border, tb:right-border, tb:top-border, and the vertical mark tb:alignmark. When these elements from the extended table namespace are present in the cell, the table becomes an extended CALS table.

The role value rowhead can be used to indicate that a cell is a rowhead. For instance, the XML for the table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the 1st Grade</th>
<th>In the 2nd Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td># of Boys</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Girls</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

could contain <entry role="rowhead"># of Boys</entry>.

entry is the only element in the namespace of the common element pool that has no prefix.

Version history

In CEP 1.1.2 element ce:br was added to %cell.data%; In CEP 1.5.0 entity %math; was added to %cell.data;.

row

Model

```xml
<!ELEMENT row ( entry+ )>
<!ATTLIST row
rowsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
valign (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED
id ID #IMPLIED
role CDATA #IMPLIED>```

The element row defines a row in the table, consisting of table entries. It has attributes to define the alignment and separator below the row.

To be able to indicate that rows are to be treated differently, either as headings or subheadings, the following values for attribute role are defined: thead1, thead2, thead3, tcolhead1, tcolhead2.

tbody

Model

```xml
<!ELEMENT tbody ( row+ )>
<!ATTLIST tbody
valign (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED>```

The element tbody contains the body of the table, i.e. the rectangular structure of rows and columns.

tgroup
The element \texttt{tgroup} contains the structure of the table: a column specification, an optional head and a body. Note that a table foot, while present in some CALS table models, is not available in the OASIS Exchange Table Model DTD.

The \texttt{tgroup} has an additional \texttt{altimg} attribute. This attribute contains a reference to a graphic file containing an image of the \texttt{tgroup}. It is present for extended CALS tables. Such a graphic representation of the table is called a \textit{strip-in}. See the section on strip-in images (p. 23).

**thead**

The element \texttt{thead} contains the header rows of the table. These rows are repeated when the table is split over several pages. Prior to DTD 5.0, header rows were defined as "stubs".
**tb:alignmark**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT tb:alignmark EMPTY>
```

**Description**

The element `tb:alignmark` is a vertical mark. It can be used to obtain complicated alignments within table cells. However, using this element takes the table outside of the scope of CALS tables.

**Usage**

A vertical alignment mark, `tb:alignmark`, is an empty element which can occur within a table cell, `entry`. If any border elements are present within the cell, they must precede the `tb:alignmark`.

If the alignment of a column is not specified by a `tb:colspec` element, then the vertical alignment mark is forbidden in the cells of that column. Otherwise, the $i$th `tb:alignmark` of the $n$th cell in a row, must be left-aligned with the $i$th `tb:alignmark` in all $n$th cells of the rows in the same `tbody`. This rule is independent of the span of a cell, i.e., in a spanned cell it is only possible to align with alignment points in the leftmost spanned column.

In a column the numbers of `tb:alignmarks` per cell need not be equal. The rules still apply when this is the case.

**XML**

```xml
<group cols="1">
    <tb:colspec/>
    <tbody>
        <row>
            <entry>a<tb:alignmark/>bcd<tb:alignmark/>e</entry>
        </row>
        <row>
            <entry>pq<tb:alignmark/>r<tb:alignmark/>stu</entry>
        </row>
    </tbody>
</group>
```

**Presentation**

```
a  bcde
pq  stu
```

**See also**

`tb:colspec`. More details are given in the examples section (p. 538).
Declaration

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```xml
<!ELEMENT tb:bottom-border EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tb:bottom-border
type %hline; 'bar'
style %style; 's'>
```

Description

The element `tb:bottom-border`, when present in a cell, provides the cell with a bottom border.

Usage

`tb:bottom-border` is an empty element, which may appear within a cell entry of a table. When it is present in a cell, it provides the cell with a bottom border.

Two attributes, `type` (default bar) and `style` (default: single, s), determine what the border will look like. See Tables 7, 9 and 10 (pp. 555–556) for the allowed combinations of values of these attributes.

Border elements must come before any other content of the entry.

See also

More details can be found in the examples section (p. 538).
**tb:colspec**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT tb:colspec EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tb:colspec
colnum NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
colname NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
colwidth CDATA #IMPLIED
colsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
crowsep %yesorno; #IMPLIED
align ( mark ) #FIXED 'mark'>
```

**Description**

A `tb:colspec` element must be used instead of a `colspec` element to specify a column that uses alignment on `tb:alignmark` elements.

**Usage**

A `tb:colspec` element is used in the same way as a `colspec` element, except that its `align` attribute has the fixed value `mark`.

**Version history**

Prior to DTD 5.0, vertical alignment along marks was specified with the value `vmk` of the `ca` attribute of the `c` element.

**See also**

For an example see `tb:alignmark`. More details can be found in the examples section (p. 538).
**tb:left-border**

**Declaration**

Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)

```
<!ELEMENT tb:left-border EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tb:left-border
type %vline; 'vb'
style %style; 's'>
```

**Description**

The element `tb:left-border`, when present in a cell, provides the cell with a left border.

**Usage**

`tb:left-border` is an empty element, which may appear within a cell `entry` of a table. When it is present in a cell, it provides the cell with a left border.

Two attributes, `type` (default vb) and `style` (default: single, s), determine what the border will look like. See Tables 8, 9 and 10 (pp. 555–556) for the allowed combinations of values of these attributes.

Border elements must come before any other content of the `entry`.

**See also**

More details can be found in the examples section (p. 538).
**tb:right-border**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT tb:right-border EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tb:right-border
type %vline; 'vb'
style %style; 's'>
```

**Description**

The element **tb:right-border**, when present in a cell, provides the cell with a right border.

**Usage**

**tb:right-border** is an empty element, which may appear within a cell entry of a table or an array. When it is present in a cell, it provides the cell with a right border.

Two attributes, `type` (default `vb`) and `style` (default: single, `s`), determine what the border will look like. See Tables 8, 9 and 10 (pp. 555–556) for the allowed combinations of values of these attributes.

Border elements must come before any other content of the entry.

**See also**

More details can be found in the examples section (p. 538).
**tb:top-border**

**Declaration**

**Model (CEPs 1.1.0–1.6.0)**

```xml
<!ELEMENT tb:top-border EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tb:top-border
type %hline; 'bar'
style %style; 's'>
```

**Description**

The element `tb:top-border`, when present in a cell, provides the cell with a top border.

**Usage**

`tb:top-border` is an empty element, which may appear within a cell *entry* of a table or an array. When it is present in a cell, it provides the cell with a top border.

Two attributes, `type` (default `bar`) and `style` (default: single, `s`), determine what the border will look like. See Tables 7, 9 and 10 (pp. 555–556) for the allowed combinations of values of these attributes.

Border elements must come before any other content of the *entry*.

**See also**

More details can be found in the *examples section* (p. 538).
Ornament types and styles

Several elements have type and style attributes, defining an ornament. The attribute values and the allowed combinations are described in this section.

Table 7: Valid values (%hline;) of the type attribute of elements that specify a horizontal line or other ornament. These occur in \texttt{tb:bottom-border} and \texttt{tb:top-border}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute value</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Attribute value</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>circ</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tcub</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bcub</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsqb</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>larr</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bsqb</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>harr</td>
<td>←→</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tpar</td>
<td>(</td>
<td>lharu</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bpar</td>
<td>)</td>
<td>rharu</td>
<td>→</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8: Legal values (%vline;) of the type attribute of elements that specify a vertical line or other ornament. These may occur in \texttt{tb:left-border} and \texttt{tb:right-border}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute value</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Attribute value</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpar</td>
<td>(</td>
<td>bsol</td>
<td>\</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpar</td>
<td>)</td>
<td>lceil</td>
<td>[</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lsqb</td>
<td>[</td>
<td>rceil</td>
<td>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rsqb</td>
<td>]</td>
<td>lfloor</td>
<td>[</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lcub</td>
<td>{</td>
<td>rfloor</td>
<td>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rcub</td>
<td>}</td>
<td>dharr</td>
<td>[</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb</td>
<td>\</td>
<td>uharr</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lang</td>
<td>⟨</td>
<td>darr</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang</td>
<td>⟩</td>
<td>uarr</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sol</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>varr</td>
<td>↑↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9: Values (%style;) of the style attribute. It may occur in \texttt{tb:bottom-border}, \texttt{tb:left-border}, \texttt{tb:right-border} and \texttt{tb:top-border}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>single</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>triple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>dashed</td>
<td>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot</td>
<td>dotted</td>
<td>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bl</td>
<td>blank</td>
<td>space between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>no space between</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10: Valid combinations of type (%hline;, %vline;) and style (%style;) attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>s</th>
<th>d</th>
<th>t</th>
<th>da</th>
<th>dot</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>bl</th>
<th>n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpar</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpar</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lsqb</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rsqb</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lang</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other horizontal and vertical types may only occur in combination with s, b or bl.
This appendix gives a guideline about how to read the element models in this documentation.

**Element definitions**

An element definition typically looks like this:

```xml
<!ELEMENT article ( item-info, ce:floats?,
   head, body?, tail? )>
```

Here `article` is the element which is defined.

The second part of the definition is the declaration of the allowed content, i.e. the elements which appear within the element. It states that `article` always starts with `item-info`, and is then followed by a number of elements, some of which are optional.

The *quantifiers*, positioned after the name of the element, are listed below. These indicate how many occurrences of the element are allowed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>occurs precisely once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>optional: 0 or 1 occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>0 or more occurrences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>1 or more occurrences</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following *connectives* indicate how the elements may be combined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>follows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some elements are not allowed to have content. They are called *empty* elements and are declared as follows:

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:link EMPTY>
```

Element `ce:link` can occur as follows, `<ce:link locator="gr2" ...></ce:link>`, although the abbreviated version is strongly preferred, `<ce:link locator="gr2" .../>`.

**XML parse tree**

When following the element definitions, a *parse tree* is built up, whose root is the top element, and whose leaves are either empty elements or #PCDATA.
Appendix A – How to read the DTD

Apart from the regular keyboard characters #PCDATA can contain all the Unicode characters (e.g. ª or º) plus all the general entities declared in the DTDs. In our DTDs, these are character entities that came with the MathML DTD (e.g. &agr; : a small alpha) and glyph entities that are declared in the file ESextra.ent. This file is “included” in the DTD by means of an XML file inclusion.

For the glyph entities see the section Elsevier’s additional glyphs (p. 19).

Parameter entities

Some element or attribute definitions contain a parameter entity such as %font-change;.

These act as abbreviations. Their definition can be looked up elsewhere in the DTD:

```xml
<!ENTITY % font-change “ce:italic|ce:monospace
 |ce:sans-serif|ce:small-caps” >
```

The bit between quotes should be substituted for the parameter entity. Parameter entities can themselves contain parameter entities. If one for instance examines element ce:section-title and expands the entities, one can conclude that it can contain ce:inline-figure in its content.

For more information see the section Parameter entities (p. 187).

The model of element ce:figure uses all the quantifiers and connectives mentioned above as well as a parameter entity:

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:figure ( ce:label?, ce:caption*, ce:source?,
 | %copyright;?),
 | ce:link | ce:figure )+ )>
```

This means that the content of element ce:figure consists of an optional ce:label, optional ce:captions, an optional ce:source, an optional ce:copyright, an optional ce:copyright-line and a list of (at least one) ce:link or ce:figure elements.

Attribute definitions

An attribute definition typically looks like this:

```xml
<!ATTLIST ce:date-received
day NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
month NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
year NMTOKEN #REQUIRED>
```

This means that the element ce:date-received possesses three attributes, day, month and year. Attribute day is optional, the other two attributes are mandatory. All three attributes are numbers.

The middle column defines the type of attribute. The following types are in existence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDATA</td>
<td>ASCII text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTITY</td>
<td>external entity declared at start of document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTITIES</td>
<td>one or more ENTITYs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>XML ID, string of digits, letters, . , , starts with a letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDREF</td>
<td>ID declared elsewhere in the document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDREFS</td>
<td>one or more IDREFs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMTOKEN</td>
<td>string of digits, letters, . and –</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMTOKENS</td>
<td>one or more NMTOKENs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list of values</td>
<td>only one of these values is allowed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

558 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Type ENTITIES is not used in our DTDs, while types IDREFS and NMTOKENS are only used in our 4.x DTDs.

Here is an example of a list of values. Note that the parameter entity %e-address-type; was expanded.

```xml
<!ELEMENT ce:e-address ( %text.data; )* >
<!ATTLIST ce:e-address
type (email|url) "email">
```

The right-hand column can contain the following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#IMPLIED</td>
<td>attribute is optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#REQUIRED</td>
<td>attribute is mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>if omitted, this is the default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#FIXED</td>
<td>the only possible value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**XPath**

XPath is a language for addressing parts of an XML document. Here are three examples of the use of XPath that have started to appear in communications.

The title of a `ce:glossary`:
```
ce:glossary/ce:section-title
```

The title of a `ce:glossary` in a book glossary:
```
glossary/ce:glossary/ce:section-title
```

Attribute role of element `ce:section`:
```
ce:section/@role
```
Bibliography


Bibliography

[27] PIIs, DOIs and other IDs used by Elsevier, https://docs.vtw.elsevier.com/confluence/display/VUD/Identifier+schemas.
[29] Elsevier Content types, https://docs.vtw.elsevier.com/confluence/display/VUD/Content+Types.
Index

APPLICATION, 14, 285, 398
article, element in the JA DTD, 9, 25, 28, 33, 39, 40, 51, 557
artwork, 300
asset, 5
t, obsolete element, 210, 213, 446, 464
tf, obsolete element, 217
au, obsolete element, 223
AUDIO, 14, 285, 398
author
corresponding, 255
author-id
attribute of ce:author, 176, 221, 223
b, obsolete element, 186, 237
b, line style, 555
background, attribute of mml:math, 532
bar, horizontal ornament, 555
baseline
attribute of ce:inline-figure, 349
bb, obsolete element, 522
bcub, horizontal ornament, 555
bib, obsolete element, 235
bibl, obsolete element, 229
bibliography, element in the Book DTD, 99, 102, 136, 144, 147, 152
biographiy
attribute of ce:author, 221, 236
bl, line style, 555
body, element in the JA DTD, 30, 193, 195
body, element in the Book DTD, 104, 107, 108, 112, 117, 144, 151, 155, 163
book, 107
book-review, element in the JA DTD, 9, 25, 29, 32, 34, 40, 51, 511
book-review-head, element in the JA DTD, 32, 34, 35, 42, 53
bpar, horizontal ornament, 555
break, 238
bsol, vertical ornament, 555
bsqb, horizontal ornament, 555

Index

#x00A0, entity, 409
#x02008, entity, 12

, closeup sign (used in this documentation to indicate when whitespace, added for readability, must be ignored), 13

abbr-name, element in the SI DTD, 60, 61
abbreviations, 387
abs, obsolete element, 200
abstract
graphical, 198
stereochemistry, 443
abstract-class, parameter entity, 178, 191, 198
acc, obsolete element, 265
accent, attribute of mml:mo, 531
ack, obsolete element, 203
address
author, 204
correspondence, 255
electronic, 282
affiliation, 204
affiliation-id
attribute of ce:affiliation, 179, 205
agr, entity, 558
aid, element in the JA DTD, 26, 46, 48, 218, 281, 419, 488
align
attribute of entry, 537, 539
attribute of tb:colspec, 539, 551
alt
attribute of ce:marker, 404
altimg
attribute of ce:marker, 404
attribute of ce:math, 407
attribute of mml:math, 533
attribute of tgroup, 548
common attribute, 23
altimg-small
attribute of ce:marker, 404
amp, entity, 12, 282, 364
anchor, 214
appendix, 215
Index

c, obsolete element, 551
CALS table model, 4, 7–9, 17, 23, 175, 197, 397, 452, 535–539, 541–543, 546–549
CALS tables
extended, 536
native, 536
CAP, 5
CAPCAS, 3
CAPLite, 5, 30, 35, 42, 53, 214, 275, 276, 294, 304, 458
CAPLitePlus, 5, 30, 35, 42, 53, 182, 214, 229, 235, 275, 276, 294, 304, 314, 458
catalog, 14, 16
XML, 16
ce:abstract, common element, 42, 53, 112, 114, 155, 156, 176, 181, 193, 198, 201, 301, 304, 432
ce:abstract-sec, common element, 178, 189, 193, 199, 201, 301, 432
ce:acknowledgment, common element, 30, 113, 114, 155, 156, 169, 170, 179, 181, 193, 202, 432, 456
ce:affiliation, common element, 178, 179, 181, 204, 224, 442, 467
ce:alias, common element, 179, 207, 221, 223
ce:alt-e-component, common element, 177, 193, 194, 208, 239, 285–287
ce:alt-name, common element, 178, 188, 191, 207, 209, 221, 223, 489, 504
ce:alt-subtitle, common element, 42, 53, 90, 112, 114, 155, 156, 161, 177, 188, 210, 213, 330, 446, 456, 464
ce:alt-text, common element, 178, 188, 212, 285, 288, 301, 304, 349, 350, 452, 456, 458
ce:alt-title, common element, 35, 42, 53, 90, 112, 114, 155, 156, 161, 188, 211, 213, 330, 446, 456, 464
ce:anchor, common element, 181, 188, 190, 214, 441, 497
ce:appendices, common element, 30, 176, 193, 195, 215, 456
ce:article-footnote, common element, 35, 42, 53, 189, 217, 308
ce:article-number, common element, 26, 46, 47, 178, 179, 188, 218, 330, 332, 488
ce:article-thread, obsolete element, 176, 280
ce:associated-resource, common element, 46, 47, 136, 179, 219, 263
ce:author, common element, 35, 42, 53, 146, 176–179, 181, 207, 209, 221, 222, 224, 236, 244, 251, 255, 272, 283,
290, 316, 337, 348, 422, 425, 447, 449, 471
ce:bib-reference, common element, 179, 181, 182, 229, 232, 234, 235, 313, 442, 500
ce:bibliography, common element, 54, 55, 103, 113, 125, 138, 145, 152, 155, 159, 176, 179, 181, 182, 193, 229, 231, 232, 313, 432, 457
ce:bibliography-sec, common element, 179, 181, 193, 229, 231, 432
ce:biography, common element, 54, 55, 113, 114, 156, 176, 181, 189, 193, 221, 236, 457, 461
ce:bold, common element, 185, 186, 188, 237, 257, 385, 409, 427, 440, 465
ce:br, common element, 99, 177, 184, 185, 190, 238, 547
ce:caption, common element, 13, 177, 189, 239, 285, 301, 438, 452, 456, 558
ce:cealt-title, common element, 177
ce:chem, common element, 188, 240, 309, 311
ce:collab-aff, common element, 188, 241–244
ce:compound-formula, common element, 188, 245, 443
ce:compound-info, common element, 246, 443
ce:compound-name, common element, 188, 247, 443
ce:compound-struct, common element, 248, 443
ce:conflict-of-interest, common element, 30, 113, 114, 155, 156, 159, 160, 179, 249
ce:contribution-role, common element, 250
ce:contributor-role, common element, 179, 221, 223, 250, 251
ce:copyright, common element, 46, 47, 136, 172, 177, 188, 200, 252–254, 285, 302, 452, 456, 558
ce:copyright-line, common element, 46, 47, 161, 176, 178, 188, 191, 253, 254, 558
ce:correspondence, common element, 178, 181, 221, 224, 255, 422
ce:cross-out, common element, 184–186, 188, 237, 257, 385, 409, 427, 440, 465
Index

geo, 387
INSPEC, 387
JEL, 387
MSC, 387
OCIS, 387
PACS, 387
PsycINFO, 387
STMA, 387
CME, 39, 295, 296
collaboration, 242
affiliation, 242
collaboration-id, attribute of ce:collaboration,
179, 244
colname
attribute of colspec, 539
attribute of entry, 535, 536
colnum
attribute of colspec, 539
attribute of tb:colspec, 539
color, attribute of mml:math, 531
cols, attribute of ggroup, 535, 536
colsep
attribute of ce:table, 539
attribute of entry, 537, 543
colspec, common element, 535–537, 539, 540,
543, 546, 551
common element pool, 3, 175, 197, 467, 471
structure, 8
common-altimg.att, parameter entity, 176
common-reqaltimg.att, parameter entity, 176,
177, 190
common-view.att, parameter entity, 176
compact view, 193
compound-f, obsolete element, 245
computer code, 409
conference-info, element in the SI DTD, 60,
61, 67, 90, 93
contents-entry-only, 5, 28, 30, 35, 42, 50, 53,
214, 275, 276, 294, 304, 458
continuous medical education, 39, 295, 296
contribution, 472
copyright, parameter entity, 47, 177, 178, 190,
191, 287, 304, 457
copyright-type, parameter entity, 178, 191, 252,
253
correspondence, 255
corrigendum, 280
cover-date, element in the SI DTD, 62, 73
cover-image, element in the Book DTD, 115,
161, 162
cover-image, element in the SI DTD, 63, 73
cross-ref, obsolete element, 258, 261
cross-ref, parameter entity, 25, 177, 223, 244,
320
cross-reference, 258, 260
cross-refs, parameter entity, 25
d, line style, 555
da, line style, 555
darr, vertical ornament, 555
dataset, 5
date
acceptance, 264
of structured reference, 500
received, 266
revised, 267
date-range, element in the SI DTD, 61, 62, 64,
66, 88
day
attribute of ce:date-accepted, 264
attribute of ce:date-received, 266, 558
attribute of ce:date-revised, 267
dd, obsolete element, 269
ded, obsolete element, 268
dedication, 268
dedication, element in the Book DTD, 116,
161, 162
definition list, 270
degree, attribute of ce:contribution-role, 250
degrees, 272
degs, obsolete element, 272
dharr, vertical ornament, 555
display, attribute of mml:math, 309
dl, obsolete element, 270
docsubtype
attribute of article, 28, 90
attribute of bibliography, 102, 103
attribute of book, 108
attribute of book-review, 32
attribute of chapter, 113, 114, 160
attribute of ehs-book, 117, 118
attribute of enhancement-fragment, 168
attribute of exam, 39, 40
attribute of examination, 121, 122
attribute of fb-non-chapter, 125–127
attribute of glossary, 130
attribute of glossary, 131
attribute of index, 134, 135
attribute of introduction, 139
attribute of simple-article, 50
attribute of simple-chapter, 156
docsubtype, parameter entity, 56, 165
docsubtype-book, parameter entity, 165
dotype, 9
DOCTYPE declaration, 14, 16
document heading, 276
dot, line style, 555
Index

dt, obsolete element, 271
DTD, 3
   family, 8
   input, 4
   output, 4
   version, 10, 16
DTD 4, 3, 11, 258, 261, 363, 375, 531, 535, 536
e-address-type, parameter entity, 179, 191, 282, 283, 559
e-component, 284
ead, obsolete element, 283
ecm:identifier, 399
edited-book, obsolete element, 510
editors, element in the SI DTD, 65, 90, 91
EFFECT date format, 64
EHS books, 117
ehhs-book, obsolete element, 108
ehhs-book, element in the Book DTD, 117
electronic component, 284
e-mail, 282
encoding, UTF-8, 7, 12
end-date, element in the SI DTD, 64, 66
endnote, 412, 415
enhancement-fragment, element in the Enhancement Fragment DTD, 167, 168
entity, 14
e-entry, common element, 9, 188, 535–537, 539, 540, 543, 544, 546, 547, 549, 550, 552–554
enun, obsolete element, 294
enunciation, 291
erratum, 280
exam, element in the JA DTD, 25, 29, 33, 39, 51, 52
exam, element in the Book DTD, 113, 114, 119, 121, 122, 155, 156, 159, 160, 170
exam, element in the Enhancement Fragment DTD, 170
examination, element in the Book DTD, 99, 114, 121, 136, 160
extended view, 193
external-file.att, parameter entity, 177
externalfile.att, parameter entity, 190
fb-non-chapter, element in the Book DTD, 99, 125–127, 136, 147
fd, obsolete element, 240, 311
fence, attribute of mml:mo, 531
fig, obsolete element, 304
figure, 300
font, 184
bold, 237
cross out, 257
italic, 385
sans serif, 427
small caps, 440
typewriter, 409
underline, 465
font changes, 184
font-change, parameter entity, 184, 558
fontfamily, attribute of mml:math, 530, 531
fontfamily, attribute of mml:mglyph, 531
fontfamily, attribute of mml:mtext, 532
fontsize, attribute of mml:math, 530, 531
fontstyle, attribute of mml:math, 530, 531
fontstyle, attribute of mml:mtext, 532
fontweight, attribute of mml:math, 530, 531
fontweight, attribute of mml:mtext, 532
footnote, 308
article, 217
table, 453
form, attribute of mml:mo, 531
fragment-text, element in the Enhancement Fragment DTD, 169, 171
frame
   attribute of ce:table, 539, 543
full-name, element in the SI DTD, 61, 67
gg, obsolete element, 186
glossary, element in the Book DTD, 99, 130, 136, 147
glossary-entry-refs, parameter entity, 177, 190, 321
glyph, 19, 324
glyph-names, parameter entity, 19, 190
grant, 326
group-id, attribute of issue-sec, 77, 78, 90
harr, horizontal ornament, 555
Hawaii 5.0, 4
head, element in the JA DTD, 28, 35, 42, 53, 171
head-only, 5, 30, 35, 42, 53, 214, 275, 276, 294, 304, 458
header row, 548
height, attribute of mml:math, 531
highlights, 198
hline, parameter entity, 555, 556
host, 472
HTML a attribute, 212, 302
hub, 330

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 569
Index

hyperlink, 351, 369, 374, 378

attribute of bibliography, 102
attribute of ce:abstract, 198, 200
attribute of ce:abstract-sec, 201
attribute of ce:affiliation, 204, 205, 224
attribute of ce:alt-e-component, 208
attribute of ce:alt-subtitle, 210
attribute of ce:alt-text, 212
attribute of ce:alt-title, 213, 464
attribute of ce:author, 221
attribute of ce:author-group, 228
attribute of ce:bib-reference, 232
attribute of ce:biography, 236
attribute of ce:caption, 239
attribute of ce:correspondence, 255
attribute of ce:cross-ref, 258
attribute of ce:cross-refs, 261
attribute of ce:dedication, 268
attribute of ce:definition, 269
attribute of ce:definition-list, 270
attribute of ce:definition-term, 270
attribute of ce:doc-head, 276
attribute of ce:doc-topic, 277
attribute of ce:e-address, 283
attribute of ce:enunciation, 286
attribute of ce:enunciation-2, 291
attribute of ce:figure, 301, 303
attribute of ce:footnote, 308
attribute of ce:formula, 310, 311
attribute of ce:glossary-definition, 318
attribute of ce:glossary-entry, 319
attribute of ce:grant-number, 325
attribute of ce:grant-sponsor, 326
attribute of ce:index-flags, 340
attribute of ce:inter-references, 371, 394
attribute of ce:inter-ref, 379
attribute of ce:intro, 382
attribute of ce:keyword, 386
attribute of ce:keywords, 387
attribute of ce:link, 177, 398
attribute of ce:list, 401
attribute of ce:list-item, 401
attribute of ce:miscellaneous, 408
attribute of ce:nomenclature, 411
attribute of ce:other-reference, 415
attribute of ce:para, 417
attribute of ce:presented, 421
attribute of ce:refers-to-document, 424
attribute of ce:reference, 429
attribute of ce:simple-para, 438
attribute of ce:source, 441
attribute of ce:stereochem, 178, 445
attribute of ce:subtitle, 446
attribute of ce:textbox, 456
attribute of ce:title, 178
attribute of chapter, 113
attribute of exam, 119
attribute of examination, 121
attribute of fb-non-chapter, 125
attribute of fragment-text, 171
attribute of glossary, 130
attribute of index, 134
attribute of introduction, 139
attribute of location, 173
attribute of outline, 142
attribute of part, 144
attribute of poem, 146
attribute of re-arrangement, 149
attribute of sb:reference, 234, 522
attribute of section, 152
attribute of simple-chapter, 156
attribute of sponsor, 86
attribute of subchapter, 159
attribute of target, 174
attribute of title-editors-group, 92
attribute of volume, 163
common attribute, 180, 181

IMAGE, 14, 285, 304, 398
include, 330
index, 133, 333
index, obsolete element, 337
index terms, 387
index, element in the Book DTD, 99, 133,
136, 147
index-entry-references, parameter entity, 177, 190,
339
inferior, 347
info, 136
info, element in the Book DTD, 102, 107, 112,
117, 121, 125, 130, 133, 136, 155
info, element in the Enhancement Fragment
DTD, 169, 172
inits, obsolete element, 348
inline-figure, obsolete element, 350
input DTD, 4
inter-reference, obsolete element, 363
intra-reference, obsolete element, 375
introductory, element in the Book DTD, 99,
136, 138, 144, 145, 152
iso639, parameter entity, 176, 177, 190, 192,
200, 210, 213, 394, 499
iss-first, element in the SI DTD, 68, 96
iss-last, element in the SI DTD, 69, 96
issue, obsolete element, 510
issue hub, 59
issue-body, element in the SI DTD, 70, 78

570
issue-data, element in the SI DTD, 73
issue-designation, element in the SI DTD, 73, 75
issue-info, element in the SI DTD, 76
issue-sec, element in the SI DTD, 70, 72, 73, 77, 90, 432
it, obsolete element, 186, 385
item-info, element in the JA DTD, 46, 557
jid, element in the JA DTD, 26, 46, 48, 281, 419
jid, element in the SI DTD, 76, 79
jr, obsolete element, 447
keyword, 387
kwd, obsolete element, 386
kwdg, obsolete element, 394
l, obsolete element, 402
lang, vertical ornament, 555
langtype, attribute of sb:contribution, 499
language, parameter entity, 176, 177, 190, 210, 213, 394
language codes, 192
language-type, parameter entity, 499
largeop, attribute of mml:mo, 531
larr, horizontal ornament, 555
lceil, vertical ornament, 555
lcub, vertical ornament, 555
lfloor, vertical ornament, 555
lhar, horizontal ornament, 555
line break, 238
line feed, 12
line, element in the Book DTD, 140, 146, 157
linked textbox, 457
list
  definition, 270
  free-format, 401
loc
  attribute of cc:inf, 347
  attribute of cc:sup, 448
local.par.data, parameter entity, 99, 187
local.spar.data, parameter entity, 99, 187
location, element in the Enhancement Fragment DTD, 173, 174
locator
  attribute of cc:link, 14, 177, 398
lpar, vertical ornament, 555
lsqb, vertical ornament, 555
lt, entity, 12
macros, attribute of mml:math, 531, 533
materials and methods, 429
math, parameter entity, 179, 191, 210, 213, 240, 241, 245, 247, 258, 261, 268,
  271, 283, 318, 322, 325, 327, 342–345, 365, 368, 373, 375, 377, 381, 395, 408, 414, 418, 421, 423, 426,
  432, 433, 436, 439, 441, 446, 449, 454, 462–464, 469, 496–498, 518, 524, 547
mathbackground, attribute of mml:math, 531
mathcolor, attribute of mml:math, 531
MathML, 4, 7–9, 12, 17, 23, 175, 184–186, 197, 385, 529–533, 539, 540
mathsize, attribute of mml:math, 531
mathvariant, attribute of mml:math, 530, 531
mathvariant, attribute of mml:mo, 532
maxsize, attribute of mml:mo, 531
MDConsult, 3
mediummathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
minsize, attribute of mml:mo, 531
misc, obsolete element, 408
mml:maction, common element, 530, 532
mml:math, common element, 23, 309, 311, 529, 533
mml:mirror, common element, 532
mml:mglyph, common element, 531
mml:mspace, common element, 531
mml:mtext, common element, 188, 529, 531
mode, attribute of mml:math, 531, 533
month
  attribute of cc:date-accepted, 264
  attribute of cc:date-received, 266, 558
  attribute of cc:date-revised, 267
morerows, attribute of entry, 535, 543
n, line style, 555
name
  attribute of cc:glyph, 324
  attribute of cc:marker, 404
name, parameter entity, 178, 188, 191, 223, 489, 504
nameend, attribute of entry, 535, 536, 539, 543
namespace, 8, 18
CALS OASIS Exchange Table Model, 9, 546
common element pool, 9, 18
EHS Books DTD, 9
Elsevier Book DTD, 9
enhancement fragment DTD, 9
extended CALS tables, 9, 535
journal article DTD, 9
MathML, 9
prefix, 9
serials issue DTD, 9
structured affiliations, 9, 467
Index

structured bibliographic references, 9
XLink, 9
namest, attribute of entry, 535, 536, 539, 543
nbsp, entity, 328
NDATA, 14
no, obsolete element, 395
non-Unicode symbols, 324
nondisplay.data, parameter entity, 188, 432, 497
note added in proof, 429
note.data, parameter entity, 177, 188, 190, 318, 414, 441
OASIS Exchange Table Model, 546
objectives, element in the Book DTD, 113, 114, 141, 155, 432
of, obsolete element, 186
ORCID, 221, 489, 504
orcid
attribute of ce:author, 178, 221, 223, 489, 504
ornament, 555
other, attribute of mml:math, 531
outline, element in the Book DTD, 113, 114, 142, 155, 156
output DTD, 4
overflow, attribute of mml:math, 531, 533
pages, obsolete element, 510
par.data, parameter entity, 99, 188, 190, 417, 418
paragraph
full, 417
note, 414
parameter entity, 187
parsec, parameter entity, 188, 431
part, element in the Book DTD, 104, 138, 143, 144, 151, 163, 164
PDF, 5
PIT, 56, 165
placement, attribute of location, 173, 174
Plane One, 529, 530
plate, 300
poem, element in the Book DTD, 113, 114, 140, 146, 155, 157
prefix, namespace, 9
presented by, 421
prs, obsolete element, 421
public identifier, 16
publication item type, 56, 165
PubMed, 3
puncsp, entity, 328
qd, obsolete element, 275
quot, entity, 12
rang, vertical ornament, 555
rarr, horizontal ornament, 555
rceil, vertical ornament, 555
rcub, vertical ornament, 555
re, obsolete element, 266
rear, element in the Book DTD, 107, 108, 112, 117, 147, 155
rearpart, element in the Book DTD, 147, 149
refid
attribute of ce:cross-ref, 258, 260
attribute of ce:float-anchor, 306
attribute of ce:grant-number, 325
attribute of location, 173, 174
rfloor, vertical ornament, 555
rharu, horizontal ornament, 555
richstring.data, parameter entity, 184, 188
role
attribute of bibliography, 103
attribute of body, 105
attribute of ce:abstract-sec, 201
attribute of ce:acknowledgment, 203
attribute of ce:affiliation, 204
attribute of ce:alt-text, 212, 285, 301, 349, 452, 456
attribute of ce:anchor, 214
attribute of ce:article-footnote, 217
attribute of ce:author, 223
attribute of ce:author-group, 178, 228
attribute of ce:bib-reference, 235
attribute of ce:biography, 236
attribute of ce:caption, 177, 239
attribute of ce:contribution-role, 250
attribute of ce:date-accepted, 264, 265
attribute of ce:dedication, 268
attribute of ce:def-list, 270
attribute of ce:displayed-quote, 274
attribute of ce:doctopic, 277, 279
attribute of ce:component, 177, 285, 287
attribute of ce:editors, 290
attribute of ce:figure, 301, 304
attribute of ce:footnote, 308
attribute of ce:include-item, 72, 330, 332
attribute of ce:index, 333
attribute of ce:intro, 382
attribute of ce:list, 401, 402
attribute of ce:marker, 179, 404, 405
attribute of ce:miscellaneous, 408
attribute of ce:nomenclature, 411
attribute of ce:note-para, 414
attribute of ce:para, 417
attribute of ce:refers-to-document, 424

572 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Index

502, 513, 526
sb:version, common element, 179, 506, 527
sb:volume-nr, common element, 188, 472, 481, 528
sbt, obsolete element, 210, 446
sc, obsolete element, 186
schema, 8
scheme, 300
Scopus, 3
scp, obsolete element, 186, 440
scriptminsize, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
scriptsizemultiplier, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
sec, obsolete element, 430
section, 428
case report, 429
materials and methods, 429
note added in proof, 429
results, 429
section, element in the Book DTD, 104, 138, 144, 151, 152, 163
see, parameter entity, 177, 190, 339
separator, attribute of mml:mo, 531
sequence, attribute of location, 173
serial-issue, element in the SI DTD, 59, 81
SGML, 3
SGML First, 5
simple-article, element in the JA DTD, 25, 28, 29, 33, 40, 50, 52
simple-chapter, element in the Book DTD, 99, 114, 136, 155, 156
simple-head, element in the JA DTD, 35, 42, 52, 53
simple-tail, element in the JA DTD, 54, 55
size-info.att, parameter entity, 177, 190
sol, vertical ornament, 555
sp
attribute of ce:hsp, 328
attribute of ce:vsp, 466
space, 12
horizontal, 328
vertical, 466
spar.data, parameter entity, 99, 188, 190, 438, 439
sponsor, 326
sponsor, element in the SI DTD, 86, 87
sponsor-id
attribute of ce:grant-number, 326
sponsors, element in the SI DTD, 86, 87, 90
ssf, obsolete element, 186, 427
st, obsolete element, 432
standard view, 193

stanza, element in the Book DTD, 140, 146, 157
start-date, element in the SI DTD, 64, 88
stereochemistry abstract, 443
stretchy, attribute of mml:mo, 531
string.data, parameter entity, 188
strip-in, 23, 533, 548
subs, 548
style
attribute of mml:math, 530, 531, 533
attribute of tb:bottom-border, 550
attribute of tb:left-border, 552
attribute of tb:right-border, 553
attribute of tb:top-border, 554
style, parameter entity, 555, 556
subchapter, 159
subchapter, element in the Book DTD, 113, 155, 159, 160, 171
SUBDOC, 457
subscript, 347
subsection, 428
superior, 448
superscript, 448
suppl, element in the SI DTD, 89, 96
symmetric, attribute of mml:mo, 531
t, line style, 555
table, 451
table footnote, 453
tail, element in the JA DTD, 39, 54, 55, 195
target, element in the Enhancement Fragment DTD, 169, 173, 174
tb:alignmark, common element, 536, 538, 539, 547, 549, 551
tb:bottom-border, common element, 547, 550, 555
tb:colspec, common element, 535–539, 546, 549, 551
tb:left-border, common element, 541, 543, 547, 549, 555
tb:right-border, common element, 541, 543, 547, 549, 553, 555
tb:top-border, common element, 541, 547, 554, 555
tb:colspec.att, parameter entity, 177
tb:row.att, parameter entity, 177
tb:group.att, parameter entity, 176
tb:titles, parameter entity, 177
tbody, common element, 535, 537, 539, 547, 549
tcub, horizontal ornament, 555
TEXT, 14, 398
text effects, 184
text-effect, parameter entity, 184

574 Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family
Index

text-objects, parameter entity, 177, 190, 418

text.data, parameter entity, 179, 188, 241, 245,
247, 258, 261, 283, 325, 327, 342–
344, 365, 368, 373, 375, 377, 381,
386, 395, 408, 423, 426, 433, 436,
449, 469, 496, 498, 518, 524
textfn.data, parameter entity, 99, 188, 210, 213,
240, 268, 421, 446, 462, 464
textlink.data, parameter entity, 188, 191, 454
textref.data, parameter entity, 188, 271, 322,
345, 463
tgroup, common element, 23, 452, 535–537,
539, 543, 548
thead, common element, 535, 537, 539, 548
theorem, 291
thickmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
thinnmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
tilde, horizontal ornament, 555

title
in alternative language, 213
of an author, 272
of article or chapter, 464
of bibliographic reference, 525
translated, 526
title-editors-group, element in the SI DTD, 65,
73, 77, 90
titles, parameter entity, 176
top, 161
top, element in the Book DTD, 107, 108, 117,
118, 161, 162
topic hierarchy, 277, 278
tpar, horizontal ornament, 555
tsb, horizontal ornament, 555
ty, obsolete element, 186, 409
type
attribute of ce:copyright, 252, 253
attribute of ce:e-address, 282
attribute of tb:bottom-border, 550
attribute of tb:left-border, 552
attribute of tb:right-border, 553
attribute of tb:top-border, 554

uarr, vertical ornament, 555
uharr, vertical ornament, 555
ultralight, 5
Unicode, 4, 12
UTF-8, 7, 12
upi, obsolete element, 287
UTF-8 encoding, 7, 12

valign
attribute of entry, 537
varr, vertical ornament, 555
vb, vertical ornament, 555

venue, element in the SI DTD, 61, 93
verbatim, 409

version, 10, 16
attribute of article, 16, 28
attribute of bibliography, 102
attribute of book, 107
attribute of book-review, 32
attribute of chapter, 113
attribute of ehs-book, 117
attribute of enhancement-fragment, 169
attribute of exam, 39
attribute of examination, 121
attribute of fb-non-chapter, 125
attribute of glossary, 130
attribute of index, 134
attribute of introduction, 139
attribute of serial-issue, 81
attribute of simple-article, 50
attribute of simple-chapter, 156
versiondate
attribute of ce:inter-ref, 179, 363, 365,
367
versionurl
attribute of ce:inter-ref, 179, 363, 365,
367
vertical mark, 549
verythickmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
verythinmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle, 532
veryverythickmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle,
532
veryverythinmathspace, attribute of mml:mstyle,
532
VIDEO, 14, 285, 398
view, 193, 387, 418, 430, 439
attribute of ce:abstract, 200, 315, 346
attribute of ce:abstract-sec, 201
attribute of ce:acknowledgment, 203
attribute of ce:appendices, 176, 216, 229,
236, 295, 296, 299, 314
attribute of ce:bibliography-sec, 231
attribute of ce:glossary-sec, 323
attribute of ce:include-item, 72
attribute of ce:intro, 382
attribute of ce:keywords, 387, 394
attribute of ce:nomenclature, 411
attribute of ce:note-para, 414
attribute of ce:para, 418
attribute of ce:section, 430
attribute of ce:simple-para, 439
attribute of ce:stereochem, 178, 445
attribute of exam, 119
attribute of introductioexam, 119

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 575
Index

attribute of introduction, 159
attribute of outline, 142
attribute of subchapter, 160
common attribute, 193, 287
view, parameter entity, 193
vline, parameter entity, 555, 556
vol-first, element in the SI DTD, 94, 96
vol-last, element in the SI DTD, 95, 96
volume, 163
volume, element in the Book DTD, 104, 144, 151, 163
volume-issue-number, element in the SI DTD, 68, 69, 76, 89, 94–96
vt, obsolete element, 236
weight, 5
width, attribute of mml:math, 531

xlink:from
attribute of ce:inter-references, 370
xlink:href
attribute of ce:address, 179, 283
attribute of ce:grant-sponsor, 326
attribute of ce:inter-reference, 299, 351–365, 420
attribute of ce:inter-reference-end, 369
attribute of ce:intra-reference, 374, 375
attribute of ce:intra-reference-end, 378
attribute of ce:link, 14, 399
attribute of mml:math, 531
xlink:label
attribute of ce:inter-reference-end, 371
attribute of ce:inter-references-text, 370
xlink:role
attribute of ce:inter-reference, 351, 352, 354, 363
attribute of ce:inter-reference-end, 369
attribute of ce:intra-reference, 374, 375
attribute of ce:intra-reference-end, 378
attribute of ce:link, 399
xlink:to
attribute of ce:inter-references, 370
xlink:type
attribute of ce:inter-reference, 363
attribute of ce:inter-reference-end, 370
attribute of ce:inter-reference-title, 371
attribute of ce:inter-references, 370
attribute of ce:inter-references-link, 370
attribute of ce:inter-references-text, 370
attribute of ce:intra-reference, 375
attribute of ce:intra-references, 379

attribute of ce:link, 399
attribute of mml:math, 531

XML, 3, 14, 285, 398
contents-entry-only, 5, 28, 30, 35, 42, 50, 53, 214, 275, 276, 294, 304, 348
head-only, 5, 30, 35, 42, 53, 214, 275, 276, 294, 304, 458
schema, 8

XML comments, 12
XML First, 5
XML processing instructions, 12

xml:lang
attribute of article, 28, 29, 168
attribute of bibliography, 102
attribute of book, 107
attribute of book-review, 32
attribute of ce:abstract, 176, 198, 200
attribute of ce:alt-name, 209
attribute of ce:alt-subtitle, 210
attribute of ce:alt-title, 213
attribute of ce:caption, 177, 239
attribute of ce:keywords, 387
attribute of chapter, 113
attribute of ehs-book, 117
attribute of exam, 39, 40
attribute of examination, 121
attribute of fb-non-chapter, 125
attribute of glossary, 130
attribute of index, 134
attribute of introduction, 139
attribute of sb:contribution, 475, 499
attribute of serial-issue, 81
attribute of simple-article, 50, 51
attribute of simple-chapter, 156
common attribute, 192

xmlns
attribute of article, 28
attribute of bibliography, 102
attribute of book, 107
attribute of book-review, 32
attribute of ce:table, 546
attribute of chapter, 113
attribute of ehs-book, 117
attribute of enhancement-fragment, 168
attribute of exam, 39
attribute of examination, 121
attribute of fb-non-chapter, 125
attribute of glossary, 130
attribute of index, 134
attribute of introduction, 139
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attribute of serial-issue</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of simple-article</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of simple-chapter</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of ce:copyright</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of ce:date-accepted</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of ce:date-received</td>
<td>266, 558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute of ce:date-revised</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of article</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of bibliography</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of book</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of book-review</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of chapter</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of ehs-book</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of enhancement-fragment</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of exam</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of examination</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of fb-non-chapter</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of glossary</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of index</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of introduction</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of serial-issue</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of simple-article</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:ce attribute of simple-chapter</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of article</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of book-review</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of exam</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of simple-article</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of enhancement-fragment</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of exam</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of serial-issue</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of simple-article</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlns:xlink attribute of simple-chapter</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xsi:schemaLocation attribute of mml:math</td>
<td>531</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Elsevier Documentation for the XML DTD 5 Family 577